LITERARY RESEARCH AND THE ANGLO-SAXON AND MEDIEVAL ERAS

STRATEGIES AND SOURCES

DUSTIN BOOHER AND KEVIN B. GUNN

Literary Research and the Anglo-Saxon and Medieval Eras

Literary Research: Strategies and Sources

Series Editors: Peggy Keeran & Jennifer Bowers

Every literary age presents scholars with both predictable and unique research challenges. This series fills a gap in the field of reference literature by featuring research strategies and by recommending the best tools for conducting specialized period and national literary research. Emphasizing research methodology, each series volume takes into account the unique challenges inherent in conducting research of that specific literary period and outlines the best practices for researching within it. Volumes place the research process within the period's historical context and use a narrative structure to analyze and compare print and electronic reference sources. Following an introduction to online searching, chapters will typically cover these types of resources: general literary reference materials; library catalogs; print and online bibliographies, indexes, and annual reviews; scholarly journals; contemporary reviews; period journals and newspapers; microform and digital collections; manuscripts and archives; and Web resources. Additional or alternative chapters might be included to highlight a particular research problem or to examine other pertinent period or national literary resources.

1. *Literary Research and the British Romantic Era* by Peggy Keeran and Jennifer Bowers, 2005.
2. *Literary Research and the Era of American Nationalism and Romanticism* by Angela Courtney, 2008.
3. *Literary Research and American Modernism Era* by Robert N. Matuozzi and Elizabeth B. Lindsay, 2008.
4. *Literary Research and the American Realism and Naturalism Period* by Linda L. Stein and Peter J. Lehu, 2009.
5. *Literary Research and Irish Literature* by J. Greg Matthews, 2009.
6. *Literary Research and the Literatures of Australia and New Zealand* by H. Faye Christenberry and Angela Courtney, 2011.
7. *Literary Research and British Modernism* by Alison M. Lewis, 2010.
8. *Literary Research and the British Renaissance and Early Modern Period* by Jennifer Bowers and Peggy Keeran, 2010.
9. *Literary Research and the Victorian and Edwardian Ages, 1830–1910* by Melissa S. Van Vuuren, 2011.
10. *Literary Research and Canadian Literature* by Gabriella Natasha Reznowski, 2011.
11. *Literary Research and Postcolonial Literatures in English* by H. Faye Christenberry, Angela Courtney, Liorah Golomb, and Melissa S. Van Vuuren, 2012.
12. *Literary Research and the British Eighteenth Century* by Peggy Keeran and Jennifer Bowers, 2013.
13. *Literary Research and British Postmodernism* by Arianne A. Hartsell-Gundy and Bridgit McCafferty, 2015.
14. *Literary Research and American Postmodernism* by Emily Witsell, 2016.
15. *Literary Research and the Anglo-Saxon and Medieval Eras* by Dustin Booher and Kevin B. Gunn, 2020.

Literary Research and the Anglo-Saxon and Medieval Eras

Strategies and Sources

Dustin Booher
Kevin B. Gunn

ROWMAN & LITTLEFIELD
Lanham • Boulder • New York • London

Published by Rowman & Littlefield
An imprint of The Rowman & Littlefield Publishing Group, Inc.
4501 Forbes Boulevard, Suite 200, Lanham, Maryland 20706
www.rowman.com

6 Tinworth Street, London, SE11 5AL, United Kingdom

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Information Available

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Names: Booher, Dustin, author. | Gunn, Kevin B., author.
Title: Literary research and the Anglo-Saxon and medieval eras : strategies and sources / Dustin Booher, Kevin B. Gunn.
Other titles: Literary research ; no. 14.
Description: Lanham : Rowman & Littlefield Publishing Group, 2020. | Series: Literary research: strategies and sources ; 14 | Includes bibliographical references and index. | Summary: "Literary Research and the Anglo-Saxon and Medieval Eras: Strategies and Sources is a guide to scholarly research in the field of medieval English literature covering the period 450 CE to 1500 CE. The volume presents the best practices for building a foundation of sound scholarship practices in the field of medieval English literature"— Provided by publisher.
Identifiers: LCCN 2019046883 (print) | LCCN 2019046884 (ebook) | ISBN 9781538138427 (cloth) | ISBN 9781538138434 (paperback) | ISBN 9781538138441 (epub)
Subjects: LCSH: English literature—Old English, ca. 450–1100—Research—Methodology. | English literature—Middle English, 1100–1500—Research—Methodology. | English literature—Old English, ca. 450–1100—Information resources. | English literature—Middle English, 1100–1500—Information resources.
Classification: LCC PR166 .B64 2020 (print) | LCC PR166 (ebook) | DDC 829—dc23
LC record available at https://lccn.loc.gov/2019046883
LC ebook record available at https://lccn.loc.gov/2019046884

™ The paper used in this publication meets the minimum requirements of American National Standard for Information Sciences—Permanence of Paper for Printed Library Materials, ANSI/NISO Z39.48-1992.

Contents

Acknowledgments vii

Introduction ix

1 The Basics of Online Searching 1

2 General Literary Reference Sources 17

3 Library Catalogs 49

4 Bibliographies, Indexes, and Annual Reviews 69

5 Journals and Series 91

6 Manuscripts 121

7 Genres 137

8 Dictionaries, Lexicons, Thesauri, Etymologies, Paleographies, and Text-Mining Tools 159

9 Web Resources 177

10 Researching a Thorny Problem 201

Appendix 211

Bibliography 225

Index 227

About the Authors 241

Acknowledgments

We would like to thank our wives, Lara Booher and Andrea Erickson, for reading early drafts and making comments. Taras Zvir deserves recognition for compiling lists of potential citations for our early chapters. We appreciate the fine folks in the interlibrary loan department at the John K. Mullen of Denver Memorial Library for acquiring titles.

Last, we would like to express our heartfelt gratitude to our editors Peggy Keeran and Jenny Bowers, whose infinite patience, encouragement, and understanding allowed us to complete the final manuscript.

Introduction

Every literary period has its own set of unique research challenges for scholars, and the medieval era is no different. The first order of business is to clarify the terminology. We must distinguish between the terms used for the historical periods and the terms used for the languages. The *medieval era* (often called the *Middle Ages*) refers to the period from 450 CE to 1500 CE, encompassing the *Anglo-Saxon era* that covers only 450 CE to 1154 CE. The dominant language of the Anglo-Saxon era before the Norman Conquest of 1066 CE was Old English, which gradually became Middle English by the fourteenth century. The distinction is important because it reflects the evolution of the language from Old English to Middle English found in the types and genres of literature written after the Norman Conquest.

Furthermore, other historical factors are brought to bear upon English studies of the Anglo-Saxon era. After the Romans retreated from England in the fifth century, the Anglo-Saxon tribes invaded and their language subsumed the native Celtic languages. In addition, the later reintroduction of Christianity in the seventh century by the Venerable Bede increased the influence of Latin on Old English, and his translations of Latin texts into Old English also served to spread the gospels and other religious texts.[1] This evangelization created a dual track of Old English and Latin languages that continued to be spoken and written simultaneously until the Norman Conquest. In 1066 CE, the Normans brought their specific brand of French—Norman—with Latin influence to England, and this became the official language of the royal court. Over time, the Old English spoken by the commoners melded with the French of the aristocracy and diplomatic realms into what we now call *Middle English*. For the sake of clarity, we will use the concepts *Anglo-Saxon* and *Old English* interchangeably when referring to the earlier language and/or literature. The purpose of this volume

is to describe print and electronic sources and best practices for conducting research in medieval English studies. We point out some of the challenges the researcher will face and strategies for overcoming them.

While the history of the medieval era is well represented by surviving manuscripts, literary sources in Old and Middle English are much less so, until the late fourteenth century. Most of these literary texts are interspersed across a variety of genres: epic and Christian poetry, prose, legal works, chronicles, hagiography, sermons, Bible translations, riddles, and others. While prose was written primarily in Latin, Anglo-Saxon poetry was largely an oral tradition and, consequently, much of it has been lost. Many of these primary texts can be found in runes, parchment, historical documents, and other formats that require the scholar not only to be familiar with literary research but also to have an acquaintance with religious, historical, paleographical, and archaeological methods and sources. For example, the *Anglo-Saxon Chronicle* is a chronology of Anglo-Saxon history beginning with the departure of the Romans. It contains not only documents of a purely historical nature but also poems of literary significance (e.g., "The Battle of Brunanburh" in the 937-year entry). Another example found in the *Anglo-Saxon Chronicle* is *The Peterborough Chronicle* (1154 CE), which is the most important prose historical document written from a non-royal viewpoint. Although a historical artifact, *The Peterborough Chronicle* is significant for literary scholars studying etymology as it records the evolution of the English language from Anglo-Saxon to the budding variations of Middle English.[2]

While the Anglo-Saxon era covers from 450 CE to 1154 CE, the almost four hundred extant manuscripts range over a much shorter period, from 650 CE to 1150 CE, with Ælfric of Eynsham, Aldham, Bede, Wulfstan, Alfred, Æthelwold, Cædmon, and Cynewulf making up a significant portion of the known writers.[3] Aldham and Bede, among others, were also scholars of the era, preserving the literature and teaching Old English to the commoners. King Alfred translated (or had translated) into Old English many theological and philosophical works, which helped to establish the foundations of English prose.[4] As one would expect, more literary texts composed after 1154 CE survive, as well as a longer list of known authors. Understanding the different strategies in researching lesser-known writers such as Eadmer and John Lydgate, alongside familiar authors such as Geoffrey Chaucer, Marie de France, John Gower, Layamon, William Langland, Geoffrey of Monmouth, and St. Julian of Norwich, is important to fully appreciate this era. Furthermore, many authors of works written in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries remain unknown; examples from the Arthurian genre in particular include *La Demoiselle à la Mule*, *Sir Gawain and the Green Knight*, and the *Life of Caradoc*.[5] Last, locating the appropriate scholarly digital edition, as well

as the archival location of their physical counterparts, will be of paramount concern for the scholar.

Language comprehension is another challenge in doing medieval research. Not only must the researcher be aware of the resources available and the successful strategies to be employed, but he must also be able to read Old and Middle English. Furthermore, since Anglo-Norman, Old French, and Latin were the prevailing languages after the Norman Conquest for a couple of centuries, being fluent in them as well will be essential. Anglo-Norman and, to a lesser degree, Latin were the languages of the crown, government, and aristocracy. Also, Latin was the language of the clergy with their ecclesiastical functions and monastic education; a researcher studying hagiographical aspects of a particular work will require a knowledge of ecclesiastical Latin. Old English continued to be the language of the people, primarily through oral transmission, as the written word gradually gave way to Middle English over the centuries. Furthermore, by the middle of the fourteenth century, learned men and women had a solid grasp of more than one language. For example, John Gower, a contemporary poet of William Langland and a friend of Geoffrey Chaucer, wrote his three major works in three different languages: the *Miroir de l'Omme* (Anglo-Norman), *Vox Clamantis* (Latin), and *Confessio Amantis* (English).[6] Studying Gower will involve more extensive language skills. Likewise, those researchers studying medieval romance will need to avail themselves of the intricate roles that Welsh, Scottish, and Irish languages played in the development of the English literary genre.

Another problem that is avoided in studying other eras is the reliability and completeness of secondary and tertiary sources. Understanding the purpose and use of dictionaries, lexicons, etymologies, thesauri, and glosses underscores the greater importance that these resources play in this era of scholarship than of subsequent periods. Yet, many of these research tools are incomplete. For example, the online critical edition of the *Dictionary of Old English* covers only letters *A* to *I*, ten of the twenty-four letters of the Old English Latin alphabet. Where does one go to analyze the rest? Furthermore, what tools does the researcher use in deciphering and understanding the glosses and handwriting found in a manuscript?

In *Literary Research and the Anglo-Saxon and Medieval Eras*, we address the specific challenges to this period for scholars, including the two literary traditions; the multiple languages in which one must perform research; the major emphasis on manuscript research methodologies for finding primary sources in the print and digital realms; the overlap of literature with religious, historical, and political themes; and the lack of contemporary resources available for identifying, organizing, and describing the extant writings.

Chapter 1 will introduce the researcher to the particulars of proper search methodology. Understanding the basic search methodology will benefit the researcher in the chapters that follow. For researchers who want basic background information on their topic, chapter 2 offers a range of general literary reference sources. Guides, companions, encyclopedias, biographies, manuals, histories, and handbooks may cover English literature in general or may focus on a specific genre, topic, time period, or writer. Chapter 3 familiarizes the researcher with a variety of public, academic, union, national, and transnational catalogs that can uncover primary, secondary, and tertiary sources. Abstracts, bibliographies, and indexes are valuable for collecting citations on specific topics, subjects, or entire disciplines; these sources are discussed in chapter 4. The scholarly journals listed in chapter 5 are the best way to keep up with current trends in scholarship. General subject journals such as *Anglia: Journal of English Philology / Zeitschrift für englische Philologie*, or journals on a well-known writer (*The Chaucer Review*) or genre (*Arthuriana*), can uncover new research opportunities.

Since we are dealing with a manuscript culture, chapter 6 presents works for finding and using period manuscripts, facsimiles, microforms, and digital collections. Researchers studying genres, such as hagiography, theater, poetry, prose, romance, and Arthurian literature, will find the resources in chapter 7 a fine starting point. Since this volume focuses on works that are not composed in modern English, it is necessary to supply tools for studying the original texts as well as resources that discuss the translation process. Because the medieval English researcher will need to read the languages Old and Middle English, Latin, and Anglo-Norman (or Old French); work with manuscripts; and possibly perform text mining, chapter 8 delves into the world of dictionaries, lexicons, thesauri, glosses, etymologies, paleographies, and text-mining tools. Chapter 9 explores the web resources available, including period and electronic texts archives; manuscripts; author, work, and genre sites; reference tools; and text-mining websites. Chapter 10, the thorny problem chapter, explores the shifting literary reputation of the poet Thomas Hoccleve (1367–1426). A younger contemporary of Chaucer with a minor reputation for his poetry, Hoccleve has been largely ignored by scholars and publishers through the centuries. We trace the manuscript tradition to see how Hoccleve's reputation is enjoying a renaissance in the twenty-first century. The path will lead the reader through various types of resources introduced in the volume, such as biographical sources, library catalogs, article databases, and manuscript reference works. Last, an appendix of additional readings is provided for those researchers interested in interdisciplinary studies such as art, history, music, philosophy, religion, science, social sciences, and theater.

We hope that *Literary Research and the Anglo-Saxon and Medieval Eras* reveals some of the issues and problems inherent in medieval English research and demonstrates the sources and strategies for solving them. Working in the two literary traditions; knowing the multiple languages one must perform research in; understanding manuscript research methodologies for finding primary sources in the print and digital realms; and appreciating the overlap of literature with religious, historical, cultural, and political themes, are all important aspects for building a foundation of sound scholarship practices. In the end, consulting your subject liaison librarian for assistance in refining your research can be a valuable investment of time and effort. As librarians, we are excited by this opportunity to share our knowledge of research methodologies for medieval English literary studies.

NOTES

1. Nicholas Brooks, "The Social and Political Background" in *The Cambridge Companion to Old English Literature*, 2nd ed., ed. Malcolm Godden and Michael Lapidge (New York: Cambridge University Press, 2013), 1–18.
2. Elaine Treharne, "English in the Post-Conquest Period" in *A Companion to Anglo-Saxon Literature*, ed. Phillip Pulsiano and Elaine Treharne (Malden, MA: Blackwell, 2001), 403–14.
3. Angus Cameron, "Anglo-Saxon Literature" in *Dictionary of the Middle Ages*, vol. 1, ed. Joseph R. Strayer (New York: Charles Scribner's Sons, 1982), 274–88.
4. Stanley B. Greenfield and Daniel G. Calder, eds., *A New Critical History of Old English Literature* (New York: New York University Press, 1986), 38–67.
5. John H. Fisher, "Middle English Literature" in *Dictionary of the Middle Ages*, vol. 8, ed. Joseph R. Strayer (New York: Charles Scribner's Sons, 1982), 313–26.
6. Diane Watt, "John Gower" in *The Cambridge Companion to Medieval English Literature 1100–1500*, ed. Larry Scanlon (New York: Cambridge University Press, 2009), 153–64.

Chapter One

The Basics of Online Searching

In a world of Google, Bing, and DuckDuckGo, finding information is as easy as typing words into a box and hitting return. The problem with finding information this way is that it is not research. In a case of the blind leading the blind, a friend on Facebook may tell you that a particular edition of Virginia Woolf's work is scholarly, yet unless that person has a background in twentieth-century English literary studies, how valuable is his opinion? Once the social and "free" search engine options are exhausted, where do you, the serious researcher, turn? The nature of performing research is different from simply "finding information." Some of the characteristics of "seeking information" include being motivated by convenience, stopping at the first sign of an answer (i.e., "good enough"), and having a haphazard, disorganized method of selecting appropriate search tools and sources. In contrast, performing research is systematic, thorough, recursive, and iterative through the selecting of appropriate tools in the right order and the awareness of the limitations of each tool, regardless of format. Every tool has its place. For example, while many researchers and librarians search Wikipedia to garner valuable background research information on a topic and to assist in formulating future research strategies, librarians understand that Wikipedia is not a substitute for scholarly resources such as encyclopedias and dictionaries. In the end, it is about making informed decisions.

Research itself is in a state of transition. First, new products such as "discovery tools" offer the opportunity to the unwary researcher for retrieving thousands of records from typing a few keywords into the search box and seeing Google-like results without engaging meaningfully with the standard indexes, bibliographies, and abstracts that undergird the computational platform. Searching this type of tool gives the illusion of using these standard resources without fully understanding how the results are retrieved. Second,

vendors frequently change the user interfaces of their databases to keep things fresh and to add new features. This can confuse even the experienced scholar. Third, many vendors have an option for federated searching or the ability to search multiple databases at once. The problem with this method is that concepts may be indexed differently in different sources, meaning a keyword that works well in one may be less fruitful in others. Databases that seem to cover the subject areas, and draw from many of the same publications, will not always bring consistent results. *Humanities International Complete* will provide a different list of results from the *MLA International Bibliography* (*MLAIB*), given that the latter has indexed more literary subject-specific search terms. Fourth, another problem with understanding search-user interfaces is that the researcher may not be clear on exactly what he is searching. For example, if the researcher's institution has a subscription to the ProQuest database *Literature Online* (*LION*), then he is able to retrieve full-text primary resources, articles from many journals (what journals are included or excluded would need further study), as well as citations from the *Annual Bibliography of English Language and Literature*. But questions arise. Did he get the most *authoritative* standard edition, search the *best* journals on his topic, and develop a comprehensive bibliography from just the one platform? Understanding the packages to which an institution subscribes is a further complication for the researcher in ensuring that he is not missing important resources. To repeat, the research process is filled with pitfalls and dead ends; the researcher needs to be confident that he is making informed decisions throughout the research cycle.

The purpose of this chapter is to give the reader an overview of the various search techniques and strategies employed in traditional academic research: forming a topic sentence, pulling keywords from that topic sentence, learning how properly to combine search terms using Boolean operators, understanding the information architecture of the MARC library record, developing search strategies, and knowing the differences between databases and search engines. The rest of this volume will build on this chapter while introducing relevant research sources in English literary medieval studies.

STEP ONE: FORM A TOPIC SENTENCE

At the beginning of the research process, it can be very helpful to formulate and write a clear research question or statement. This may seem like an obvious or unnecessary step, but before moving on, it is important to organize the central concepts of the topic before searching for relevant books and articles. For example, if someone wishes to do research on female characters in Anglo-Saxon

epic poetry, the research topic can be stated as "I wish to explore the ways in which women were portrayed in Anglo-Saxon epic poetry." This statement identifies the key concepts (women, Anglo-Saxon, epic poetry) and provides a focal point that can be used to anchor the process. As research progresses, this topic sentence can be fleshed out to identify more specific research goals.

STEP TWO: BRAINSTORMING KEYWORDS

Most electronic searching tools are unable to process "natural language." For this reason, it is necessary to break down a research topic into individual words or ideas by identifying the substantive concepts in the topic sentence. Words such as *how*, *why*, or *effects* can hinder the searching process. Keeping searches simple ensures a better set of results. It is also a good idea to come up with synonyms for each term. For example, a search for *Anglo-Saxon* may miss resources that use *Old English* instead. These synonyms can be swapped into sequential "trial and error" searches, or they can be combined with Boolean logic into more complex searches, as will be discussed later in this chapter. At the onset, it may be helpful to brainstorm some relevant keywords (table 1.1).

These keywords can be used to begin searching online library catalogs and databases. Search results may reveal new keywords that can be added to the table, but it is important to make sure the keywords do not wander too far from the original written research statement.

STEP THREE: STRUCTURE OF ELECTRONIC RECORDS (MARC)

The transition from card catalogs and printed indexes to online interfaces for library catalogs and online article databases has revolutionized the way research is done. These tools have been specifically designed to allow users to quickly locate relevant information. It is easy to take this process for granted, but a deeper understanding of the way these databases are structured can lead to better search strategies and can solve some of the problems researchers frequently encounter.

Table 1.1. Keywords for the topic Medieval English Women Writers

Concept 1	*Concept 2*	*Concept 3*	*Concept 4*
Women	Anglo-Saxon	Epic	Poetry
Female	Middle English	Heroic	Poem
Heroine	Medieval		Verse
	Old English		

Behind the slick, user-friendly interfaces of modern library catalogs are carefully structured database records representing each item in the collection. For libraries, these records are almost always constructed following the **Ma**chine **R**eadable **C**ataloging (MARC) standards. These standards were developed by the Library of Congress to provide a framework for the sharing of catalog information between libraries. As library catalogs transitioned to online environments, MARC standards were used as the framework for making the catalogs searchable. By presenting critical data in standardized fields, these online catalogs allow organized access to the collection.

Many online library catalogs permit users to view the MARC record behind the interface by clicking on a "MARC View" or "Staff View" link. Figure 1.1 is an example of a MARC record for *The Cambridge History of Early Medieval English Literature* edited by Clare A. Lees. The numbers in the left column are the standardized field numbers, while the right-hand column contains the content of each field for this record.

The first several fields, reserved for various control numbers, have been removed for the sake of brevity. Some things to note here are the 245 field, defined as "Title Statement" where the title of the work can be found, but other fields exist for alternate titles, earlier titles, and original language titles. The contents of these fields are indexed together in one index, allowing a single title search to retrieve records under variant titles. Not every record contains every field. For example, because this particular work is a collection of essays from multiple authors, the record lists the name of the editor in the 700 field, but does not show anything in the 100 field reserved for a single author. These fields are also indexed together, so that an author search for *Lees*, *Clare* would return our record even though she is the editor rather than the author, while author searches for any of the individual essay authors would not.

There are two entries here under 650, which are the subject headings. A book in a library catalog can have several subject headings attached to it depending on the topics it covers and who assigns them.

The 520 and 505 fields are for summary notes and contents. These fields do not have their own indexes, but they are extremely valuable for keyword searching because they can contain information such as the table of contents, which is critical for a work like this one. Keyword indexes usually scour every text field in the record. You can see here that the term *Anglo-Saxon* does not appear in the title or in the assigned subject headings, but it does appear in the table of contents: "18. Riddles, wonder and responsiveness in Anglo-Saxon literature / Patricia Dailey." Unfortunately, some catalog records lack such information, making the synonym list discussed in Step Two so important.

050 00 |a PR255 |b .C347 2013
245 04 |a The Cambridge history of early medieval English literature / |c edited by Clare A. Lees.
264 _1 |a Cambridge : |b Cambridge University Press, |c 2013.
300 __ |a xv, 789 pages : |b illustrations ; |c 24 cm.
520 __ |a "Informed by multi-cultural, multi-disciplinary perspectives, The Cambridge History of Early Medieval English Literature offers a new exploration of the earliest writing in Britain and Ireland, from the end of the Roman Empire to the mid-twelfth century."-- |c Provided by publisher.
505 0_ |a 1. Writing in Britain and Ireland, c. 400 to c. 800 / Julia M.H. Smith -- 2. The art of writing: scripts and scribal production / Julia Crick -- 3. Art and writing: voice, image, object / Catherine E. Karkov -- 4. Of Bede's 'five languages and four nations': the earliest writing from Ireland, Scotland and Wales / Máire Ní Mhaonaigh -- 5. Insular Latin literature to 900 / Rosalind Love -- 6. Bede and the northern kingdoms / S.M. Rowley -- 7. Across borders: Anglo-Saxon England and the Germanic world / Rolf H. Bremmer, Jr. -- 8. English literature in the ninth century / Susan Irvine -- 9. The writing of history in the early Middle Ages: the Anglo-Saxon chronicle in context / Renée R. Trilling; 10. The literary languages of Old English: words, styles, voices / Joshua Davies -- 11. Old English poetic form: genre, style, prosody / Haruko Momma -- 12. Beowulf: a poem in our time / Gillian R. Overing -- 13. Old English lyrics: a poetics of experience / Kathleen Davis -- 14. Literature in pieces: female sanctity and the relics of early women's writing / Diane Watt -- 15. Saintly lives: friendship, kinship, gender and sexuality / L.M.C. Weston -- 16. Sacred history and Old English religious poetry / Andrew Scheil -- 17. Performing Christianity: liturgical and devotional writing / Christopher A. Jones -- 18. Riddles, wonder and responsiveness in Anglo-Saxon literature / Patricia Dailey.
650 _0 |a English literature |y Middle English, 1100-1500 |x History and criticism.
650 _7 |a LITERARY CRITICISM |x European |x English, Irish, Scottish, Welsh. |2 bisacsh
700 1_ |a Lees, Clare A., |e editor of compilation.
830 _0 |a New Cambridge history of English literature.

Figure 1.1. Modified MARC record for *The Cambridge History of Early Medieval English Literature* with fields 245, 650, and 700 highlighted
Washington Research Library Consortium (WRLC) Catalog MARC View

MARC records for journals are similar to those for books but have some key differences. Figure 1.2 shows the MARC record for the journal *The Chaucer Review*.

One thing to note is that the title of the journal is listed in the 245 field, but also in the 222 field, which allows the record to be retrieved by searching either the title index or the journal title index. Because of the nature of academic journals, subject headings are not always assigned. For this reason, finding journals in a library catalog can be difficult unless the title is known. For a listing of journals relevant to early and medieval English literature, see

090 __ |a PR1901 |b .C49
210 0_ |a Chaucer rev.
222 04 |a The Chaucer review
245 04 |a The Chaucer review.
260 __ |a [University Park, Pa.] |b Pennsylvania State University Press.
265 __ |a Pennsylvania State Univ. Press, 215 Wagner Bldg., University Park, PA 16802
300 __ |a v. ; |c 23 cm.
362 0_ |a Vol. 1, no. 1 (summer 1966)-
500 __ |a "A journal of medieval studies and literary criticism."
0_ |a Published with the cooperation of the Chaucer Group of the Modern Language
550 Association.
__ |a Vols. 2-4 contain Chaucer research, 1967-69 (Report, no. 28-30 of the Committee on
580 Chaucer Research and Bibliography)
710 2_ |a Modern Language Association of America. |b Chaucer Group.
777 1_ |t Chaucer research |g v. 2-4

Figure 1.2. Modified MARC record for *The Chaucer Review*
WRLC Catalog MARC View

chapter 5. It is also very important to note that this record represents only the journal as a whole, not individual articles in the journal.

STEP FOUR: CREATING SEARCH STRATEGIES

Field Searching

Having a basic understanding of the fields in a MARC record will improve the relevancy of retrieved records. The most common way of refining a search is to restrict it to one field: title, author, or subject. There are two ways to search fields: anchored (often labeled "browse") and keyword. A left-anchored search in the title field involves reading the text from the left to the right. For example, a title search for *The Knightly Tale of Gologras and Gawain* will begin with *Knightly* (ignoring the stop word *the*), then *Tale*, etc. Searching by keyword is a popular alternative with library catalogs. Having the keyword search default set to "ALL" means that it will enable a search of all the fields in the index. The researcher will need to be aware of what fields will be searched by default. This strategy inevitably will lead to many false hits (i.e., irrelevant records retrieved because a search term may have more than one meaning). One way to restrict a search is to use more specific keywords in particular fields. Many databases will retrieve records with the search term(s) found in the author, title, subject, and table of contents fields only; other databases will have a "keyword search anywhere" option that will retrieve any record with the search term(s) included. The latter option will retrieve many more irrelevant results.

While keyword searching offers a greater degree of flexibility in searching a database, it is often necessary to use the controlled vocabulary of that particular database. To this end, searching by subject headings has certain advantages over an unstructured keyword search. First, the term entered in the keyword search may not be the best representation of the concept being sought. For example, one can perform a keyword search for *love* in *Sir Gawain and the Green Knight* and retrieve results that are neither concise nor accurate. Searching by subject heading provides not only results on criticism and interpretation—if that is the researcher's interest—but also variant spellings (*Sir Gawayne and the Grene Knight*) and the proper title of the work (*Gawain and the Grene Knight*). A *See* reference for *Gawayne and the Grene Knight* sends the researcher to other subject headings:

Gawain and the Grene Knight—Adaptations
Gawain and the Grene Knight—Bibliographies
Gawain and the Grene Knight—Sources, etc.
Gawain (Legendary character)—Criticism and interpretation
Gawain (Legendary character)—Romances
Gawain (Legendary character)—Romances—History and criticism

Now, the researcher can feel greater confidence in knowing both that he is not missing relevant material on his topic and that he is using the database to maximum effectiveness.

Boolean Searches

Boolean logic was created by the nineteenth-century English mathematician George Boole. Boole devised three main operators that every researcher should know when conducting keyword searches: *and*, *or*, and *not*. Many search interfaces require that the operators be capitalized—AND, OR, NOT—while discovery tools treat the operators as ordinary words. Some databases automatically include *and* between words while others do not. If the researcher is unsure how a particular database applies Boolean operators, a quick check of the "Help" function will determine how the operators are handled. A common error of researchers is to type in a couple of words, get few or zero results, and erroneously conclude that the search terms are bad or that the database is unsuitable for their needs. The solution is to know how the database is interpreting those words. For example, in the *MLAIB* advanced-search interface shown in figure 1.3, the researcher has a myriad of options. He can search with Boolean operators (defaulted to *and* in this example), restrict search terms to a particular field, or combine both strategies.

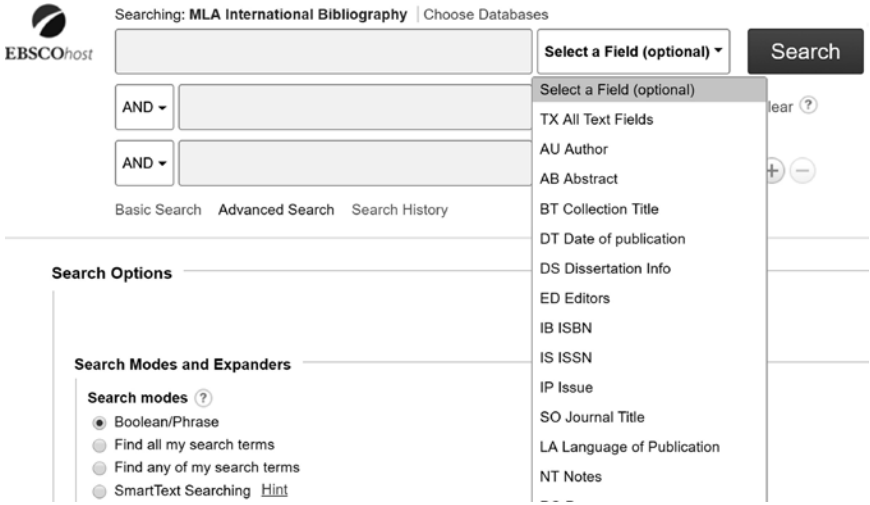

Figure 1.3. Advanced search screen for *MLAIB* via EBSCOhost

The AND Operator

The *and* operator is the most common of searches. Combining two or more keywords will retrieve records containing all of the specified search terms. For example, if you search for *medieval* ***and*** *women*, the database will retrieve records that have both terms in each record. One way to refine and narrow the search is to add an additional search term. For example, searching for *medieval* ***and*** *women* ***and*** *poetry* will retrieve a smaller number of records than *medieval* ***and*** *women*, but the results will be more relevant (figure 1.4). On the flip side, if there are too many search terms entered, then the result could be zero records retrieved. Striking the right balance between the number of plausible keywords and the denotation of each keyword can take practice.

The OR Operator

The *or* operator locates records matching any of the specified terms. For example, if you search under *Anglo-Saxon* ***or*** *medieval* ***or*** *middle ages*, the catalog retrieves records containing any one of these search terms or phrases (figure 1.5). The best strategy in using *or* is to have words that are nearly synonymous. Such a search will usually retrieve a large list of results.

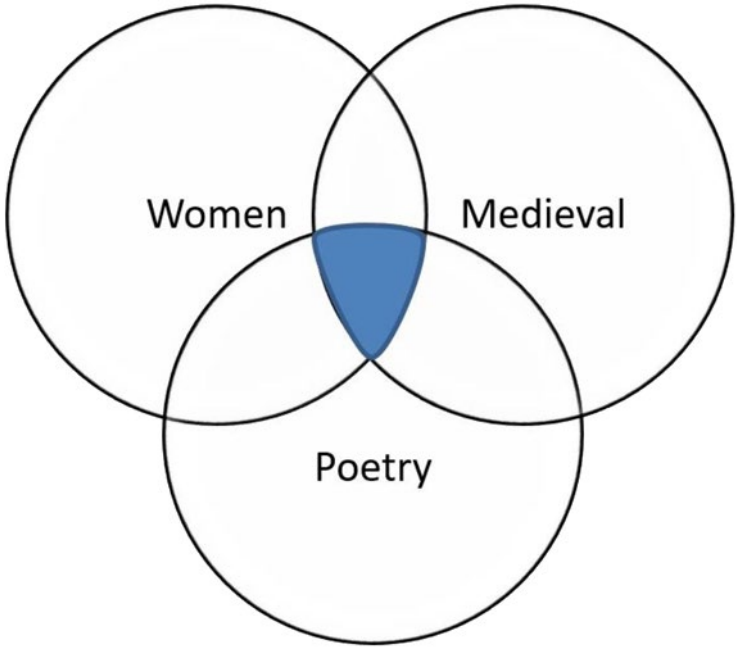

Figure 1.4. The AND operator

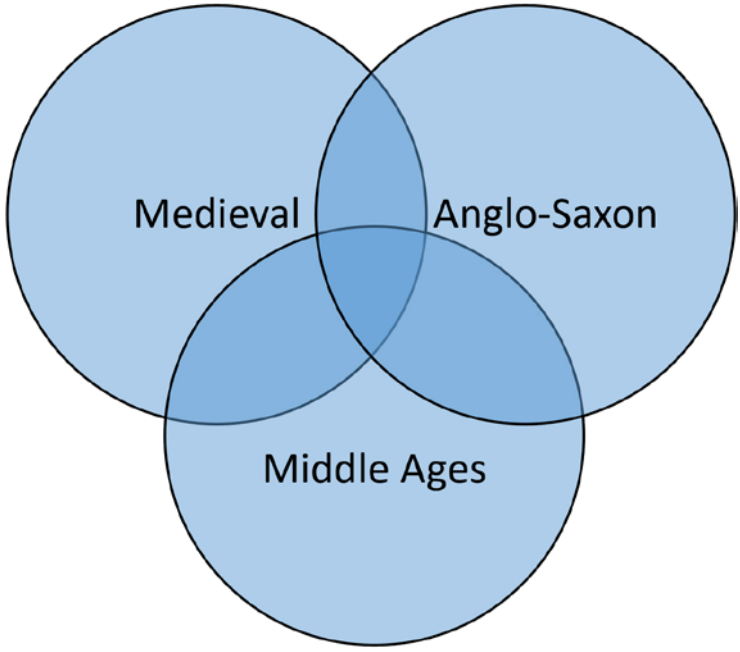

Figure 1.5. The OR operator

The NOT Operator

The less-frequently used *not* operator locates records containing the first search term but not the second. For example, if you search *dogs* ***not*** *cats*, the catalog will return all records containing *dogs*, except for those that also mention *cats*. A strong caveat for using the *not* operator is worth noting: excluding a word or phrase may yield unexpected and undesirable results. For example, searching for Anglo-Saxon poetry but wanting to exclude women poets, if we were to try *poetry* ***and*** *Anglo-Saxon* ***not*** *female*, we would only retrieve records with *Anglo-Saxon* present but also exclude any record that had the word *female* in it (figure 1.6). Since this strategy may exclude relevant material, it's better to keep refining search terms to get better results and reserve the *not* operator only as a last resort when a chosen keyword may have multiple meanings.

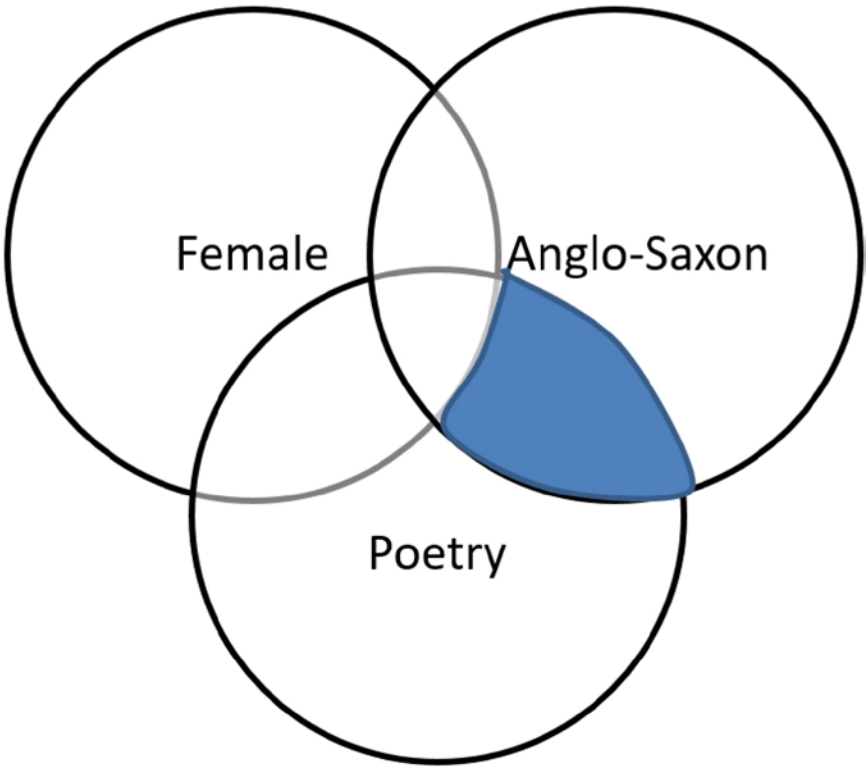

Figure 1.6. The NOT operator

Truncation and Wildcards

Truncation and wildcards can be applied to improve search results by retrieving results with varied forms of search terms. Since truncation and wildcard syntax can vary from one tool to another, it is important to check each database, catalog, or search engine's "Help" or "FAQ" link to make sure you are entering the correct symbols. When used correctly, these special characters can improve searching and save time.

For example, in most search engines, a search for *hero* will probably not locate books or articles that contain only *heroic*, *heroine*, *heroism*, etc. But with the commonly used truncation symbol, a search for *hero** will find results with the variant forms. Some care should be taken to think about possible false hits that might be generated this way. Entering *poe** will indeed cover *poem*, *poet*, and *poetry*, but it could also overwhelm you with everything on Edgar Allan Poe.

Wildcard symbols are similar but replace characters within a word. *Wom?n* is a good way to search for both *woman* and *women*. This is a cleaner strategy than using a truncation character (*wom**) because that search would be far less limited and could catch unrelated terms like *wombat*. These techniques can also be a way to find Anglo-Saxon and medieval words and names with alternative spellings. The poet Cynewulf is occasionally listed as Kynewulf, but a wildcard search for *?ynewulf* would catch both variations. It should be noted that some databases do not allow wildcards at the beginning of words. While specialized search engines should have standardized spellings built into their indexes, searching for alternate forms can sometimes uncover resources that would have gone unnoticed otherwise.

Nesting and Search Strings

One effective method in streamlining searching is to create search strings with the nesting method. Using parentheses, nesting allows the researcher to both combine search concepts with the *and* operator and cover synonyms with the *or* operator. For example, looking back at the concepts and keywords from table 1.1, we have the following searches:

women ***and*** *anglo-saxon* ***and*** *epic* ***and*** *poetry*
female ***and*** *middle English* ***and*** *heroic* ***and*** *poetry*

This method requires the researcher to search multiple times and sift through the results eliminating duplicate entries. A more efficient method is to use nesting as follows:

poetry ***and*** *(women* ***or*** *female)* ***and*** *(anglo-saxon* ***or*** *middle English)* ***and*** *(epic* ***or*** *heroic)*

Phrase and Proximity Searching

Some databases treat the *and* operator as a default. That is, if the researcher types in more than one keyword, the database will place the *and* operator between each keyword. Other databases will read the keywords as a string. Putting the keywords in quotation marks will instruct the search engine to search for the words together rather than as separate concepts. For example, typing *middle English* into the search box can be interpreted two different ways by the database: (1) *middle* ***and*** *English*, or (2) "*middle English*." The researcher can see that the latter search strategy (phrase searching) will bring more accurate results than the former. If the researcher is unfamiliar with how a particular database handles the *and* operator, most database interfaces have a help function, usually designated with the question mark symbol.

Proximity searching is another powerful option for accurately retrieving records. This method allows the researcher to determine how many words can appear between two search terms in a record or full text and in what order. The characters most often associated with this function are *w* (with), *n* (near), and *adj* (adjacent). Putting a number after the letters—*n3*—instructs the database to search for the two words that are within three words of each other, in any order; *w3* retrieves hits that have one word following the other by three words. For example, *heroic (n4) poetry* returns such results as *heroic poetry*, *poetry of the heroic*, *heroic aspects of English poetry*. Using the *with* operator for *heroic (w4) poetry* returns results for all but *poetry of the heroic*. This type of searching can reduce the number of false hits, but it builds in some flexibility to where and how the words appear.

Subject vs. Keyword Searching

There are two ways to find books and articles related to a concept or idea: keyword and subject searching. Keyword searching is straightforward. The researcher identifies relevant concepts, types them into the search box, and voilà, some results may appear. The inherent flaw of doing so is the potentially large number of irrelevant records retrieved. Conversely, too many keywords or errors in syntax can lead to failed searches with no results. While the researcher may find some records relying only on keywords, a more focused method is subject searching. The researcher can approach subject searching in two ways. First, look at the advanced-search interface (see figure 1.3) of the database and limit the term to the subject field. Or second, examine some promising records retrieved from a keyword search to see how that database categorizes it by subject. For example, a keyword search in the *MLAIB* with the terms *medieval* ***and*** *women* ***and*** *writing* retrieved the record in figure 1.7. The record illustrates how relevant subject terms ("women writers" and

"1100–1499 Middle English period") can be identified and used to link to additional sources on the same topics. Analyzing the record enables the researcher to retrieve other search terms that he may not have considered using in this particular database (e.g., "literary historical approach").

Relevancy Searching

Relevancy searching is a relatively new type of service offered in databases. Traditionally, the researcher would type in some search terms and the results would be returned containing only those terms. As software search algorithms

Medieval Women's Writing: Works by and for **Women** in England, 1100-1500

Authors:	Watt, Diane
Source:	Cambridge, England; Polity; 2007. (viii, 208 pp.)
ISBN:	9780745632568; (pbk.); 9780745632551; (hbk.)
Contents:	Christina of Markyate (c.1096-after 1155) Marie de France (fl. 1180) Legends and Lives of **Women** Saints (Late Tenth to Mid-Fifteenth Centuries) Julian of Norwich (1342/3-after 1416) Margery Kempe (c.1373-after 1439) The Paston Letters (1440-1489)
General Subject Areas:	*Subject Literature*: English literature *Period*: 1100-1499 Middle English period *Genre*: poetry; and prose *Group*: by **women** writers; and French literature
Subject Terms:	role of literary culture; relationship to printing; literary historical approach
General Subject Areas:	*Subject Literature*: French literature *Period*: 400-1499 **Medieval** period *Genre*: poetry; and prose *Group*: by **women** writers; and English literature
Subject Terms:	role of literary culture; relationship to printing; literary historical approach
Document Information:	*Publication Type*: Book *Language of Publication*: English *Update Code*: 200801 *Sequence Numbers*: 2008-1-1003; 2008-2-664
Accession Number:	2008582704

Figure 1.7. Record retrieved by searching *medieval AND women AND writing*
MLAIB via EBSCOhost

have become more sophisticated, databases will now return results that do not contain any or all the search terms but will instead "suggest" records that contain "similar" words. The relevancy feature varies from database to database and can be quite oblique in demonstrating what exactly is retrieved. Generally speaking, what is granted higher relevancy are words in the title, abstract, and first paragraph (for full-text databases); how often the terms are mentioned; and their proximity to one another. Relevancy searching can give the researcher a false set of expectations with regards to what is exactly in the database. Regardless of which search terms are used, there will always be results returned that may have little or no bearing on what the researcher is seeking. It is better for the researcher to be familiar with the database and to try a variety of search terms to ensure a higher degree of accuracy.

Limiting/Modifying

Faced with an extensive list of results, the researcher is compelled to narrow the search but retain the accuracy of these results. One can limit or modify the search by searching for terms within a particular field, by language, by document type, or with full text, or the search can be restricted even further. For example, many databases allow the researcher to search within the results by adding additional keywords. The *MLAIB* via EBSCOhost gives the researcher the option to limit to linked full text, peer-reviewed, references available, and source types (e.g., academic journals, book articles, books, dissertations, book collections, translations, and websites). The advanced search features include limiting the search to a particular field, such as author, abstract, language, genre/classification, or folklore topic.

Once an initial search is executed, most databases permit results to be filtered with facets. These usually appear along the left side of the page and can quickly narrow down a large list by selecting a subject, date range, format, or language. The facets work similarly to the kinds of options common on retail websites for filtering by price range or brand.

STEP FIVE: DATABASES VS. SEARCH ENGINES

When performing a search, the user does not see the actual database but accesses the records through a search engine provided by a commercial vendor. It is important to know the difference between the interface and the database since vendors may offer numerous database products that look and work the same but contain very different sets of information. For example, the vendor EBSCO offers dozens of tools from *Abstracts in Social Gerontology* to *World*

War II Archives, with a wide variety of topics in between. Yet many users mistakenly come to think of EBSCO or EBSCOhost as the tool itself rather than the commercial entity presenting it.

It is also important to see the relationship between the vendors and the databases. In many cases, the information in the databases is produced and maintained by someone other than that database vendor. The vendors provide the interface, which is not an insignificant contribution, but they are not always responsible for generating and ensuring the accuracy of the underlying data. This is how something like the *MLA International Bibliography* can be offered by multiple vendors (EBSCO, Gale, ProQuest), even though it is *produced* by the Modern Language Association. Regardless of vendor, the content of the database is the same.

The vendor-specific interface affects the way in which the database is searched. While the basic principles of searching described in the chapter are consistent, each platform will have its own rules about how searches are constructed. It is always a good idea to check a database's "Help" or "Frequently Asked Questions" links to see, for example, which truncation character is accepted and how Boolean operators are to be entered. Since these vendors are constantly looking to improve their products, the search engines do change, so even experienced searchers should be aware of where these tips can be found.

STEP SIX: UNDERSTANDING GOOGLE AND WEB SEARCHING

The most commonly used and arguably most powerful search tool is Google. Over the past decade, Google has become the primary starting place for both casual web usage and academic research. Unfortunately, Google is not designed for scholarly research, and it has some major flaws when applied to such purposes.

As a full-text web search engine, Google lacks the kind of field-limited indexing that makes library catalogs and article databases work smoothly. Instead, Google relies on a complex proprietary formula for determining relevancy based on the presence of the keywords entered in the search and the searching patterns of its millions of users.

This is certainly not to say that Google has no place in scholarly research. It can be a great way to locate manuscript collections or digital archives. Google's little-known and difficult-to-find advanced-search option allows users to limit results to particular domains or domain types (e.g., .edu, .gov), or to add language, format, or regional filters. Despite its helpfulness in filtering, it is hidden at the bottom of search results and cannot be directly accessed from the Google home page.

The Google Scholar feature is an attempt by Google to focus the power of the search engine for more academic purposes. Using an index of scholarly publications, Google Scholar can locate relevant journal articles, but it rarely includes full-text access. Although the text of these journals has been indexed, Google does not own the rights and cannot freely provide access. This is the major drawback of relying on Google Scholar as opposed to the library's subscription databases. Students and faculty may be able to link directly to full-text sources through their academic libraries, but this is not always the case. You can always check with your librarian to confirm access or to make an interlibrary loan request. Google Scholar can also be an invaluable tool for searching citations. While some databases feature citation indexing, in the humanities it can be difficult to locate sources citing a particular work.

Another Google tool with research potential is Google Books. Google has scanned millions of books from cooperating libraries and indexed their full text. While copyright restrictions limit the full-text availability of these books to mostly older works, results are sometimes displayed for later copyrighted works. Google Books cannot provide full ebooks of these later works free of charge, but it is another way to locate useful books that can then be accessed elsewhere, and previews, excerpts, and tables of contents are sometimes available for perusal.

CONCLUSION

The quagmire of research methodology cannot be understated: the evolving nature of search engines, the new discovery platforms, increasing and varied digitized collections, and "born digital" documents, combined with the continued relevancy of "old-school" technologies like library catalogs and print material, will serve the expert researcher well only if the researcher develops the confidence to make informed decisions throughout the research process. The following chapters will help the researcher nurture and build that confidence by developing the skills needed for becoming fluent in the research process.

Chapter Two

General Literary Reference Sources

Analyzing general literary reference sources is an important first step in the research process. These sources give you an overview of the types of research material that you will need to utilize in order to build a foundation of sources and a deeper understanding of your research topic or problem. This chapter illustrates the types of sources that you can use: research guides, encyclopedias, dictionaries, companions, handbooks, chronologies, histories, and biographies. Research guides present an overview of the reference works and tools used by established scholars. Encyclopedias—whether taking a broad perspective on a range of topics or focusing exclusively on a particular subject or discipline—can orient the researcher to develop a basic understanding of that particular body of knowledge. Subject and word dictionaries assist the researcher with understanding the concepts and comprehending the languages used by other scholars in the discipline. Companions and handbooks have overviews of a particular topic in essay form and outline recent and emerging trends in a field when they were published. Chronologies and histories can help researchers place an author's work into its historical context and cultural milieu. Biographical resources can be a useful first step in ascertaining the details of a writer's life, as well as in locating source material such as critical editions, manuscripts, and archival material.

Old and Middle English literatures have an abundance of general research resources. The canon for medieval English studies has expanded over the last thirty years to include women writers, religious writers, and lesser-known writers, while new methodologies and a greater understanding of how language and culture influenced writing in the era has been documented. While the contemporary researcher must incorporate these new resources and tools, older reference material continues to be relevant in discovering how scholarly thinking has evolved on a particular writer or on a research problem. Furthermore,

the scope of this guide covers the medieval era from approximately 450 CE to 1500 CE, although some reference works do include works up to the late sixteenth century.

Most research is conducted in an online environment (either through open access on the web or through a subscription). As books, journals, and reference works increasingly move online, the researcher needs to remain cognizant of the continuing vitality of print resources. In most humanities research, the researcher in English faces the "long tail" of relevant scholarly material. That is, primary and secondary material published decades ago may still provide insight on a particular topic. For example, a title published in the late 1800s may be the standard text for consultation. The Early English Text Society has been publishing editions since 1864 and has published over 480 texts from original manuscript sources. It is important for the researcher to be able to distinguish texts that are the best editions (see chapter 3) with those that have been superseded. Newly discovered material and manuscripts, interpretations, insights, theoretical methodologies from other disciplines, and an understanding of the literary milieu can be garnered from the general research literary sources that are recommended in this chapter.

RESEARCH GUIDES

Bracken, James K. *Reference Works in British and American Literature*. 2nd edition. Englewood, CO: Libraries Unlimited, 1998.

Harner, James L. *Literary Research Guide: An Annotated Listing of Reference Sources in English Literary Studies* (*LRG*). 6th edition. New York: Modern Language Association, 2014. Archived at: oncomouse.github.io/literary-research-guide/.

Marcuse, Michael J. *A Reference Guide for English Studies*. Berkeley, CA: University of California Press, 1990.

The above-mentioned guides were published originally in a ten-year period from 1989 to 1998, reflecting a paucity of general research guides at that time. Given the breadth of medieval English studies, each author listed here does not lay claim to being comprehensive or exhaustive in his selections or entries. The purpose of each work is to introduce the researcher to other scholarly resources. While there will be inevitably a duplication of listings, each research guide makes a unique contribution. The thorough researcher should consult all three works before moving on to reference sources published after 1998.

An indispensable research guide for graduate students beginning their research is James Harner's ***Literary Research Guide: An Annotated Listing of***

Reference Sources in English Literary Studies (***LRG***). Originally published in 1989, the fifth and final print edition was published in 2008. From 2009, the work was available only online through a subscription and with a new interface; the sixth edition was published in 2014 and last updated in March 2015. Harner died in 2016, and the database was discontinued in December 2017. The Modern Language Association has made available the HTML, XML, and CSS files of this edition under a CC-BY 4.0 license on GitHub (http://github.com/mlaa/literary-research-guide). Andrew Pilsch, a professor of English at Texas A&M, has reconstructed the website at https://onco mouse.github.io/literary-research-guide/ (although the "Research Process" in the MLA subscription database has been omitted). Researchers can browse over a thousand entries, which list an additional 1,600 resources. More than seven hundred of these entries have reviews. The *Literary Research Guide* contains evaluations for print and online handbooks, dictionaries, encyclopedias, bibliographies, abstracts, indexes, guides, surveys, annals, catalogs, chronologies, genres, biographical sources, web resources, and other reference tools for researching English and American literature. Furthermore, it lists the national literatures of Ireland, Scotland, and Wales, useful for the researcher of medieval English literature. The limitation of the work is that it does not cover individual authors or literary works. Harner acknowledged that the content of the *LRG* must be highly selective, and he added a section on guides to research methods to assist researchers further in exploring other scholarly resources.

The website is a stripped-down version of the subscription database. The home page consists only of the MLA disclaimer listed above and links to the topics mentioned in the table of contents. There is no option for searching the website, and the overview of the research process that was available in the subscription database is not available. The researcher will need to scroll down the twenty-one categories in the table of contents to find the relevant topic: research methods; guides to reference works; literary handbooks, dictionaries, encyclopedias; bibliographies of bibliographies; libraries and library catalogs; guides to manuscripts and archives; serial bibliographies, indexes, and abstracts; guides to dissertations and theses; Internet resources; biographical sources; periodicals; genres; English literature; Irish literature; Scottish literature; Welsh literature; American literature; other literatures in English; foreign-language literatures; comparative literature; and last, literature-related topics and sources. Although most of these categories will be helpful to the Anglo-Saxon/medieval researcher, researchers new to the *Literary Research Guide* may wish to start under the category "English Literature." This category classifies "Old English Literature" and "Medieval Literature" as subcategories and lists either a plethora of reference sources

or cross-references other sections of the *Literary Research Guide*. Once the researcher has identified relevant material for his research topic, the next step to locating and acquiring the material is through the researcher's home library catalog or WorldCat.

Michael J. Marcuse took a slightly different approach in his work, ***A Reference Guide for English Studies***, published in 1990. He wanted to introduce the new researcher to unfamiliar sources to consult when investigating an author's life and works. The advantage of this work over the *Literary Research Guide* is that there are more extensive and detailed listings of titles going back to the nineteenth century. The work is separated into twenty-six broad sections; what interests the medieval researcher will be the section "Medieval Literature." However, Marcuse denotes the special place of the *Beowulf* poet and Chaucer in medieval English literary studies by putting them in the section titled "English Literature." "Medieval Literature" is divided into general topics: "Anglo-Saxon," "Middle English," "Drama and Theater," "Epic and Romance," "Prose," "Prose Fiction," "Criticism and Rhetoric," and "Medieval Latin." Each topic cross-references other parts of the book. For example, the topic "Anglo-Saxon" is cross-referenced to "Section F (History)" for early medieval history and "Section I (Languages, Linguistics and Philology)" for Old English dictionaries. The work has an overview of the organization of the book for easy reference and a comprehensive list of abbreviations, acronyms, and sigla.

James Bracken's ***Reference Works in British and American Literature*** complements both the work of Harner and Marcuse. Bracken confines his selections to more well-known writers and their titles. The table of contents is organized by the author's name for easy reference. Works with anonymous authors are listed by their titles. A listing of frequently cited works and acronyms provides the researcher a quick overview of other sources. The purpose is to point the researcher to material about a writer's work in one or more of five categories: the primary bibliographical sources of works by the author; a secondary bibliography of works about the author; tertiary sources such as dictionaries, encyclopedias, compendiums, etc.; a concordance to the author's works based on standard editions; and journals that publish extensively on the author. Depending on the literary importance of the author and resource availability, each entry can list material from one or more of these categories. Bracken did not seek to be comprehensive but to start the researcher in the right direction. The back of the book has chronological and nationality appendixes with the overwhelming majority being from Britain and the United States. The work includes author/title and subject indexes. Of the 1,500 authors/titles listed, more than fifty fall within the medieval era and are described with varying degrees of detail. For example, the reference

for Ælfric (c. 955 CE–c. 1010 CE) is half a page long with several citations, while the reference for the *Anglo-Saxon Chronicle* (c. 1154 CE) is three lines with one citation.

GENERAL BRITISH LITERARY COMPANIONS, ENCYCLOPEDIAS, GUIDES, AND HANDBOOKS

Birch, Dinah, ed. *The Oxford Companion to English Literature*. 7th edition. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2009.

Head, Dominic, ed. *The Cambridge Guide to Literature in English*. 3rd edition. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2006.

Kastan, David Scott, ed. *The Oxford Encyclopedia of British Literature*. 5 volumes. New York: Oxford University Press, 2006.

Serafin, Steven R., and Valerie Grosvenor Myer, eds. *The Continuum Encyclopedia of British Literature*. New York: Continuum, 2003.

The reference works in this section are comprised of companions, encyclopedias, guides, and handbooks. These types of tertiary sources are written to provide a quick overview of a particular topic in order to allow the researcher to discover new concepts and to see how they relate to other topics. Designed for quick consultation, these references to authors, works, themes, events, and movements—and how they fit into either a specific time period or into the broader scope of British literature—will be beneficial for the researcher.

Originally published in 1932 and edited by Paul Harvey, ***The Oxford Companion to English Literature*** has been the standard fare for students, scholars, and general readers for years. Each new edition reflects the changing needs and trends of its readers, as shown in the introductory essays: "Literary Culture in the 21st Century," "The Cultures of Reading," "Black British Literature," and "Children's Literature." The entries are short with the author entries covering the dates, occupations, key works, and controversies. Minor writers are mentioned but not explored in depth. Title entries list the periodicals, books, major poems, and so on that medieval English researchers can use to find interesting nuggets of information on a topic. For example, the entry under *Beowulf* provides a synopsis of the work and the dispute about whether the poem is primarily a Christian allusion (W. P. Ker) or Old Norse heroic epic (J. R. R. Tolkien). Appendixes include a chronology, poets laureate, children's laureates, literary awards, and a useful index on new and heavily revised entries by contributor. The seventh edition is edited by Dinah Birch.

For Dominic Head's ***The Cambridge Guide to Literature in English***, audiences comprise students, scholars, literary editors, and the general pub-

lic. Head outlines how the phrase "English Literature" should be replaced with "Literature in English" to reflect the expanding canon of literature that includes women writers, non-British writers, and non-American writers working in English. Foreign languages are considered in the context of the particular genre of origin or influence. Anglo-Saxon literature is given greater examination, while examples of medieval English literature written in Latin, Anglo-Norman, and the Gaelic languages that influenced or existed beside English literature are also provided. Writers included are not just novelists, poets, and playwrights but also theologians, philosophers, scientists, essayists, and other writers who contributed to the literary culture of their times. Title entries are listed for poems, novels, journals, and plays. English literary movements, genres, literary and rhetorical terms, critical concepts, schools, and literary prizes such as the Booker are explained.

Like the two previous titles that are one volume of reference works designed for quick consultation, Steven Serafin and Valerie Grosvenor Myer's ***The Continuum Encyclopedia of British Literature*** provides a broad overview of authors and topics covering the literature in the British Isles, the Commonwealth, and postcolonial countries. While somewhat smaller in the number of entries compared with *The Oxford Companion to English Literature*, the 1,200 biographical entries delve into much greater detail with a critical overview of the author's work and a bibliography of secondary material. Most entries are signed by one of the two hundred contributors. While the work emphasizes contemporary writers, Anglo-Saxon and medieval authors such as Aneirin, Cædmon, Geoffrey of Monmouth, and Chaucer are represented. The book contains a timeline of literary and historical events and a list of literary prize winners.

David Kastan's ***The Oxford Encyclopedia of British Literature*** is a five-volume set covering the range of subjects found in a typical literary encyclopedia. Volume 1 begins with a list of topics to quickly orient the researcher to the relevant article. Topics comprise an overview of the subject, authoritative editions, a listing of selected works, and recommendations for further reading (with short annotations) that the researcher seeking a starting point will find useful. A chronology lists the subjects of articles and provides their historical context. A section on subject entries includes genres, schools, groups, movements, and institutions (formal and informal). As an example, the entry on Ælfric outlines his life, work, historical period, and the critical reception of his work, which fell out of favor after 1066 CE but was revived in 1567 CE when John Day printed Ælfric's Easter homily.

BIOGRAPHICAL SOURCES

Dictionary of Literary Biography Complete Online. Detroit: Gale Cengage, 1978–. Also available online via www.gale.cengage.com.

Matthew, H. C. G., and Brian Howard Harrison, eds. *Oxford Dictionary of National Biography* (*ODNB*). Rev. edition. 61 volumes. New York: Oxford University Press, 2004–. Also available online at www.oxforddnb.com.

One of the challenges of doing research on the medieval era is the lack of biographical information and sources available. Depending on the personality being studied, the researcher will need to rely on the two major reference works listed in this section for the bulk of their biographical information: the *Oxford Dictionary of National Biography* (*ODNB*) and the *Dictionary of Literary Biography*. Major writers such as Geoffrey Chaucer will be well represented with lengthy entries, and each entry will point to other sources including individual biographies. For minor writers such as Ælfric Bata (a disciple of Ælfric), the *ODNB* may be the only viable and exhaustive source of information. Anonymous writers are also represented; the *Gawain*-poet has an entry in each database. Although both titles are called "dictionaries," the entries are encyclopedic in content with biographies on major personalities running for several pages. The entries provide an overview of what is known about the person's life, birth and death dates if available, secondary sources, and the works written.

The ***Oxford Dictionary of National Biography*** (***ODNB***) serves as a starting point for developing a profile on a particular Anglo-Saxon or medieval English writer. Originally edited by Henry Matthew and Brian Harrison (the current editor is David Cannadine) with over 11,500 contributors from fifty countries, the encyclopedic entries seek to be comprehensive and provide the researcher with the definitive overview of an individual within the cultural and historical landscape of Great Britain from the fourth century to the present. Individuals (who must be deceased before they can be considered for entry) are selected based on their impact (whether beneficial or detrimental in nature) on British history and culture. The *ODNB* was published in print in 2004 with a supplement in 2009. Over 59,972 lives are reviewed in 54,798 articles and over 11,000 portrait illustrations are given. The print 2004 edition incorporates and expands on the *Dictionary of National Biography* that was published between 1885 and 1900 with supplements published until 1996. The *ODNB* went online in 2004 and is updated three times a year (January, May, and September) with new luminaries, and existing entries are expanded with new information and images when necessary.

Each biography has a chronological overview of the person's life. For writers, the biography contains a synopsis of the writer's works and impact. Every entry concludes with a list of essential sources; the archives, museums, and libraries holding the manuscripts; the locations of any images ("likenesses") of the writer; and a list of the sources consulted by the contributor who wrote the entry. This feature especially is valuable to the medieval-studies researcher seeking the existence and location of original manuscripts.

Using the *ODNB* online is straightforward. There are two ways to search the *ODNB*: the search box and the browse function. A simple search can be free text, and one can use Boolean operators and the wildcard *. The simple search panel is restricted to searching only article titles. However, the results of a search can be limited by article title, full text, contributor, image caption, maker, image credit, statement of occupation, person name, aristocratic title, place, organization, creative work, quotation text, work's author, sources, archive, likeness, and wealth at death. The browse function allows the researcher to search by occupation or religious affiliation. For occupation, the categories are broken down as agriculture; armed forces and intelligence services; art and architecture; business and finance; education and scholarship; individuals; law and crime; manufacture and trade; media and performing arts; religion and belief; royalty, rulers, and aristocracy; science and technology; social welfare and reform; sports, games, and pastimes; transport; travel and exploration; writing and publishing; and a browse-all function. Each entry in the *ODNB* has a DOI. The researcher can create a personal profile to save content, links, specific searches, and annotations. A link for sources sends you to Google and WorldCat. There are links to podcasts; external resources such as the *Bibliography of British and Irish History*, *National Portrait Gallery* website, *National Archive*, and the *Poetry Archive*; and last, a link to abbreviations used in the *ODNB*. The researcher should be cognizant of the various spellings of the writer under consideration. For example, reading most secondary literature, the researcher could conclude that "John Audelay" was the proper way to spell his name. However, the *ODNB* spells it "Awdelay" with the alternative spelling of "Audley" (no mention of "Audelay").

The *ODNB*'s greatest asset for the researcher will be the identification of manuscripts and critical editions but with one important caveat. Since the *ODNB* was originally a print edition that migrated to the online format, many entries have yet to be updated. Furthermore, consulting only the print edition may leave the researcher with outdated information if the entry has been updated in the online format. Using John Audelay again as an example, *The Poems of John Audelay* by J. K. Whiting published in the series *Early English Text Society* (*EETS*) in 1931 is considered the standard edition as listed in the *ODNB* print edition, yet not listed is a better and complete edition that was

published by Susanna Fein in 2009 titled *Poems and Carols (Oxford, Bodleian Library MS Douce 302)*, which is part of the *TEAMS Middle English Texts* series (see chapter 5).

The ***Dictionary of Literary Biography Complete*** (***DLB***) provides more than 16,000 biographical and critical essays on the lives and works of literary figures from all eras and genres. This database presents the entire *Dictionary of Literary Biography* (384 volumes as of 2019), documentary, and yearbook volumes in searchable, electronic format. Each *DLB* entry contains the following information about each writer: birth/death dates, nationality/ethnicity, principal genres, awards, family history, an author portrait in some entries, a list of the author's most important writings, and further readings about the author including a list of additional writings, published interviews, biographies, and a bibliography of writings about the author. The database may be searched by author name, title of work, birth or death year, nationality, subject/genre, full text, ethnicity, gender, and *DLB* volume title. The majority of Old and Middle English writers are found in volume 146: *Old and Middle English Literature*. Researchers tracing the French or German origins of a title from medieval English may find searching this database useful. For example, *Roman de la Rose* is listed in volume 208: *Literature of the French and Occitan Middle Ages: Eleventh to Fifteenth Centuries*. Worth mentioning for comparative purposes are the volumes *German Writers & Works of the Middle Ages: 800–1170*; *German Writers & Works of the High Middle Ages, 1170–1280*; and *German Writers of the Renaissance and Reformation, 1280–1580*. The website has two text-mining features: a topic finder to determine related concepts, and a term-frequency generator to graph trends.

PERIOD COMPANIONS, ENCYCLOPEDIAS, GUIDES, MANUALS, AND HANDBOOKS

Amodio, Mark. *The Anglo-Saxon Literature Handbook*. Chichester, UK: Wiley-Blackwell, 2014.

Brown, Peter. *A Companion to Medieval English Literature and Culture, c. 1350–c. 1500*. Malden, MA: Blackwell, 2007.

Dalrymple, Roger. *Middle English Literature: A Guide to Criticism*. Malden, MA: Blackwell, 2004.

Godden, Malcolm, and Michael Lapidge, eds. 2nd edition. *The Cambridge Companion to Old English Literature*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2013.

Gray, Douglas. *Later Medieval English Literature*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2008.

Lambdin, Laura Cooner, and Robert Thomas Lambdin, eds. *A Companion to Old and Middle English Literature*. Westport, CT: Greenwood Press, 2002.
Lambdin, Robert Thomas, and Laura Cooner Lambdin. *Encyclopedia of Medieval Literature*. Westport, CT: Greenwood Press, 2000.
Magennis, Hugh. *The Cambridge Introduction to Anglo-Saxon Literature*. New York: Cambridge University Press, 2011.
Pulsiano, Phillip, and Elaine M. Treharne, eds. *A Companion to Anglo-Saxon Literature*. Oxford: Blackwell, 2001.
Ruud, Jay. *Encyclopedia of Medieval Literature*. New York: Facts on File, 2006.
Scanlon, Larry. *The Cambridge Companion to Medieval English Literature 1100–1500*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2009.
Severs, J. Burke, Albert E. Hartung, and Peter G. Beidler, eds. *A Manual of the Writings in Middle English, 1050–1500*. 11 volumes. New Haven, CT: Connecticut Academy of Arts and Sciences, 1967–.
Treharne, Elaine, and Greg Walker, eds., with the assistance of William Green. *The Oxford Handbook of Medieval Literature in English*. New York: Oxford University Press, 2010.

The works in this section are companions, encyclopedias, guides, annuals, and handbooks that specifically address medieval English literature. Many of the works have the advantage of focusing exclusively on either Old English literature or Middle English literature, which allows for a deeper analysis of the literary works and authors in their respective political, historical, and cultural context. Titles that survey the entire range of medieval English literature are less detailed but have a broader perspective. Each work will point the researcher to a wealth of information regarding primary sources (e.g., manuscripts), secondary sources (e.g., journal articles), and tertiary sources (e.g., encyclopedias).

The Oxford Handbook of Medieval Literature in English provides a well-rounded overview of the themes and issues for researchers. As Elaine Treharne, one of the editors, writes in the introductory essay "Speaking of the Medieval," the work is designed to "provide a taste for the medieval for students to show what the excitement is all about, to highlight major new trends in scholarship, and to confirm positions of preeminence for the startlingly brilliant work of so many of these early authors" (1). Thirty-eight contributors have written over thirty essays with extensive bibliographies covering diverse themes: literary production issues concerning manuscripts, textual copying and transmission, and the impact of the printed book on society; how literature was read by the aristocracy and employed for societal ends; religious literature and its forms; the literatures of protest, the gothic turn; and secular medieval drama; individuality and the medieval self; literary communities—

whether in London or Scotland; the concept of literary journeys manifested in pilgrimages, travel writing, the origins of nations and communities; and last, the exotic view of monsters and the monstrous personified in medieval English literature. The epilogue, written by Greg Walker, discusses when the medieval period ended and the modern period began. The usual delineation is Henry VIII's break with the Church. Walker argues that the early Tudor poets Stephen Hawes and John Skelton looked at Chaucer, Gower, and Lydgate "with an affectionate, playful, familiarity" (728), yet the next generation of writers, John Leland and John Bale for instance, viewed the same time period as "an age lost in the mists of time and barbarism—a foreign country in which they did things very, indeed indefensibly, differently" (729). The work concludes with an index of manuscripts and a lengthy index.

An excellent place for the researcher to begin his exploration of Old English literature would be the heavily consulted work of Malcolm Godden and Michael Lapidge, ***The Cambridge Companion to Old English Literature***. The first edition was published in 1991, and the editors are proud to claim that the book has been in constant print due to its popularity in Old English courses across the globe (xi). The second edition became necessary in order to account for the evolution of Anglo-Saxon studies in the last thirty years. Anglo-Saxon homilies, literacy, geography, the shifting perception of Anglo-Saxon verse from one of an oral tradition to an emphasis by various Latin and Anglo-Saxon writers, and last, the impact of Old English prose on subsequent periods, called "Anglo-Saxonism," are some of the themes that recently have engaged scholars. The book is versatile: The second chapter gives an introduction to the Old English language without being a substitute for standard grammar works. The seventeen chapters are written by an international team of scholars, and the volume has a chronological table and maps of the Anglo-Saxon period. In addition to this wonderful overview of a vast topic, this volume ends with a section on further reading to quickly acclimate the student to bibliographical works in his areas of interest. This section lists various titles with short annotations on their importance. Subsections include bibliography; historical and cultural background; manuscripts; Old English language (further divided into general studies, dictionaries, concordances and thesauri, grammars, and names); literary history; general literary criticism; poetry (editions, sources and analogues, general, oral formulaic theory, meter, collected editions and translations, and individual poems); prose (Alfredian and other ninth-century prose, Ælfric, Byrhtferth, Wulfstan, anonymous prose); Old English after 1066; and last, electronic resources. The sections on poetry and prose list individual works (e.g., "Battle of Maldon") that reference a standard or critical edition and a list of relevant scholarly articles, book chapters, and essays. The section on Old English after 1066 CE is particularly important

for its focus on how later periods viewed Old English, something of scholarly interest to Anglo-Saxonists studying any of the following time periods: the history of the discipline and the scholarly recovery of Old English; political context and historical background to Anglo-Saxonism; the later Middle Ages, Renaissance, and early modern Old English; Romantic and Victorian Old English; and twentieth-century and twenty-first-century Old English.

A Manual of the Writings in Middle English, 1050–1500 is an excellent starting point for the medieval English researcher. This set of eleven volumes edited by Burke Severs, Albert Hartung, and Peter Beidler (the twelfth volume is in planning) is a revised and expanded edition of the set that was originally compiled by John Edwin Wells in 1916 and titled *A Manual of the Writings in Middle English, 1050–1400*. Nine supplements were published between 1919 and 1951. Each volume consists of two parts: first, the commentary, which discusses the content, manuscript tradition, date, dialect, source, and scholarship at the time of publication; and second, a bibliography listing manuscripts, editions, literary criticism, language, and authorship. Subject coverage of the volumes consists of (1) the romances; (2) the *Pearl* Poet, Wyclyf and his followers, translations and paraphrases of the Bible, saints' legends, instructions for religious orders; (3) dialogues, debates and catechisms, Thomas Hoccleve, Malory, and Caxton; (4) Middle Scots writers, Chaucerian apocrypha; (5) dramatic pieces, poems dealing with contemporary conditions; (6) carols, ballads, John Lydgate; (7) John Gower, *Piers Plowman*, travel and geographical writings, works of religious and philosophical instruction; (8) the Chronicles and other historical writing; (9) proverbs, precepts, and monitory pieces, English mystical writings, tales; (10) works of science and information; (11) sermons and homilies and the lyrics of MS Harley 2253. Some of the earlier volumes have become dated, and these have been updated and published separately by other scholars. For example, volume 1 covered medieval romances and was later updated and expanded by Joanne Rice, *Middle English Romance: An Annotated Bibliography, 1955–1985* in 1987 (see chapter 7).

Jay Ruud's ***Encyclopedia of Medieval Literature*** is a good place for acquiring a broad overview of titles taught in medieval literature classes. While it covers a number of literary traditions—European, Middle Eastern, Persian, Indian, Chinese, Japanese, and Korean—Ruud has included a large number of entries from Old and Middle English. European literature is also highly represented, especially the writers from French, German, Italian, Old Norse, Celtic, Spanish, and Portuguese literatures. Late classical and medieval Latin literature writers are present. Each entry has a select bibliography for students who seek to delve further into a particular tradition. A bibliography at the end of the work lists the most common writers taught in undergraduate classes.

Another single volume with the same title is Laura and Robert Lambdin's ***Encyclopedia of Medieval Literature***. The Lambdins cover the same geographical areas as Ruud but focus primarily on Middle English literature and include entries on other countries only so far as to compare and contrast themes with Middle English works. The literary entries are on authors, individual works, and genres. Additional entries encompass political, religious, and historical figures, and various intellectual movements and events such as scholasticism and the Crusades. Each entry has a short bibliography of one to eight citations, although entries on a branch of literature will have more citations; for example, Celtic literature has fifteen titles listed in the bibliography. Each entry is signed by the contributor. A select bibliography and index complete the work.

The researcher would be hard-pressed to find a better overview of Anglo-Saxon literature than Mark Amodio's ***The Anglo-Saxon Literature Handbook***. The book is divided into five parts: Anglo-Saxon England, Anglo-Saxon prose, Anglo-Saxon poetry, critical approaches, and themes. The first part extrapolates the various histories of Anglo-Saxon England: political, ecclesiastical, intellectual, linguistic, literary, and the oral and literate traditions. A brief section on the problems dating Anglo-Saxon texts concludes this part. Some problems include dating a work within an author's lifetime (providing an author's name is given); determining the tradition of extant manuscripts as they are often scribal productions—that is, copies of copies removed from the original text; and last, ascertaining whether some scribe may have rewritten parts of a particular text. The parts on Anglo-Saxon prose and poetry are compiled differently, since much more of the prose than the poetry has survived from this period. Amodio focuses on listing the prose section chronologically as the historical record is much more certain with regard to the authenticity of the authors and dates. In contrast, since the poetry is much harder to date, the poems are discussed in chronological order of the manuscripts in which they are found. Each part has an overview of the literate tradition, and most of the chapters are devoted to individual titles or manuscripts. Each chapter lists the extant manuscripts and locations, a summary of the content of the work, a short history of the manuscript tradition, and, often, how it fits in the Latin and European tradition. Each chapter ends with a section on further reading. Part 4 summarizes the critical approaches to studying this time period: source studies, manuscript studies, grammatical and syntactic studies, and theoretical perspectives. Part 5 deals with themes—heroism, eschatology, the transitory nature of life, fate, wisdom, otherness, and oral traditions. The bibliography runs for twenty pages.

Later Medieval English Literature covers the period from the death of Chaucer in 1400 CE to the executions of John Fisher and Thomas More in

1535 CE. Douglas Gray's intention is to reexamine this period of English literature that had been "dismissed as impossibly dull and wanting in imagination" (vii) by viewing the texts from this period within their cultural history and not merely in isolation. He examines how Great Britain, in language and culture, slowly gravitated from the periphery of the European mind to the center. The introduction consists of three chapters discussing the geography, religious influence, and manuscript production in Great Britain. The next four sections cover prose, poetry, Scottish writing, and drama. Each section begins with the "received view" of how scholars used to perceive that particular format and works and how that perception has changed over the last twenty years. For example, Gray advocates for late fifteenth and early sixteenth-century Scottish writing and argues that its neglect is completely unwarranted due to self-imposing limitations of scholars seeing some writers as "Scottish Chaucerians" and not in their own light. The section on drama discusses productions and manuscripts, morality plays, and an emphasis on the Mystery Cycle plays. Each chapter ends with a selection of references and further reading focusing on texts, studies, bibliographies, and general studies.

Peter Brown, with the assistance of thirty-eight scholars, takes a similar approach as Gray in ***A Companion to Medieval English Literature and Culture, c. 1350–c. 1500***. He considers an expansive view of what "medieval literature" means by centering on the study of religious tracts, manuscript production, early printed books and their relationship with the oral tradition, and the role of women, while addressing the critical-theoretical approaches to these topics. There are sections on language, encounters with other cultures, genres, and special themes such as love, law, war, and chivalry. The last section of the book instructs the researcher on how best to approach a particular text through the readings of representative works. For example, Nicholas Perkins gives an overview of Thomas Hoccleve's *La Male Regle* with selections from the text and the inherent difficulties of understanding its place in the historical context. Each chapter ends with notes, references, and further reading.

Researchers looking for an overview of the critical approaches to Middle English literature will find Roger Dalrymple's ***Middle English Literature: A Guide to Criticism*** to be beneficial. The work is divided into eight chapters based on themes: authorship; textual form; genre; language, style, and rhetoric; allegory; literature and history; gender; and identity. Each chapter begins with a synopsis of the critical issues. For example, the genre chapter discusses the concept and how its meaning has changed over time (e.g., Is *Morte d'Arthur* a romance or tragedy?). Dalrymple demonstrates this evolution by interspersing various excerpts (in Middle English) from the literature (e.g., how genre studies relates to Chaucer's *Troilus and Criseyde*) with recent scholarly criticism: a journal article by Paul Strohm on the concept of

"reader-reception theory" and an extract from a book by Piero Boitani who uses the poem *Patience* to examine the fluidity of our evolving understanding of what "genre" means. *Patience* is the retelling of the story of Jonah from the Old Testament and is an example of the *exemplum* genre, a poem that is a short moral narrative. While the poem was viewed as belonging to this particular genre, it has expanded or evolved into "a dramatic poem full of subtle detail and psychological observation" (66). Each chapter ends with sections on notes and further reading. The book has a bibliography divided into categories that list foundational Middle English studies before and after 1960, "state of the field" studies, collections of critical approaches, and chapter bibliographies.

Larry Scanlon's ***The Cambridge Companion to Medieval English Literature 1100–1500*** is an introduction to the diversity of approaches and methodologies that have been applied to medieval English studies in the last thirty years as the field has matured. While many standard texts have emerged through philological applications and as the study of philology remains important, other fields such as paleography and the study of manuscripts have gained importance as scholars seek to understand not only the texts themselves but the cultures that created them. Furthermore, new critical theories such as feminism, postmodernism, and the new historicism are applied to the texts, refocusing on neglected "minor" writers like Hoccleve and Lydgate, and women writers such as Margery Kempe, and in general, a reexamination into what constitutes "Middle English literature." The book is divided into two parts: the first section deals with these philosophical problems called "Contexts, Genres, and Traditions." The second part has chapters devoted to the following authors: William Langland, *Gawain*-poet, John Gower, Geoffrey Chaucer, Julian of Norwich, Thomas Hoccleve, John Lydgate, Margery Kempe, Sir Thomas Malory, and Robert Henryson. The book has a chronology of literary works and historical events, and it ends with a guide for further reading for each chapter.

A Companion to Old and Middle English Literature, edited by Laura Lambdin and Robert Lambdin, is an excellent orientation to the study of genre in the Old and Middle English tradition. Each chapter is written by a different scholar and focuses on a wide variety of genres, including Old English and Anglo-Norman literature; religious allegorical verse; alliterative poetry in Old and Middle English; balladry; the beast fable; Breton Lay; Chronicle; debate poetry; medieval English drama; dream vision; epic and heroic poetry; the fabliau; hagiographic, homiletic, and didactic literature; the Middle English parody; riddles; romance; and visions of the afterlife. Chapters have bibliographies of at least thirty references with some bibliographies running several pages. For instance, the chapter on dream vision provides a

survey of scholarship followed by six prominent examples of the genre: *Piers Plowman*, *Pearl*, and Chaucer's four dream visions—*The Book of the Duchess*, *The House of Fame*, *The Parliament of Fowls*, and the prologue to *The Legend of Good Women*. The chapter ends with a thirteen-page bibliography. In addition, the book has a bibliography of over twenty pages, making this work an excellent jumping-off point for further research.

Phillip Pulsiano and Elaine Treharne's ***A Companion to Anglo-Saxon Literature*** is a detailed overview of the period with contributions from twenty-five scholars. The work is divided into five parts. Part 1 has chapters providing introductions to the corpus of Anglo-Saxon vernacular literature and to Anglo-Latin literature, authorship issues, the audiences of Anglo-Saxon literature, and the production and use of manuscripts for the period. Part 2 covers cultural heritage issues, specifically the Germanic origins, pre-Benedictine and Benedictine reform periods, legal and documentary writings, scientific and medical writings, and prayers, glosses, and glossaries. Part 3 examines genres and modes: religious and secular poetry and prose. Part 4 focuses on extraterritorial concerns: biblical and patristic studies, the Irish tradition, and continental Germanic and Scandinavian influences. Part 5 centers on the study and reception of Anglo-Saxon literature since the Norman Conquest, covering the periods from the sixteenth to the eighteenth centuries in general and specifically Anglo-Saxon studies in the nineteenth century in England, Denmark, America, Germany, Austria, and Switzerland. There are two concluding chapters on Anglo-Saxon scholarship in the twentieth and twenty-first centuries. As Allen Frantzen notes in his chapter "By the Numbers: Anglo-Saxon Scholarship at the Century's End," the future of the discipline hinges on the dual trends in academia involving fewer faculty positions being advertised and the move away from the study of philology and literary criticism to critical theory areas such as "linguistics; women's studies; gay, lesbian and queer studies; postcolonial studies; and hypermedia and other technologies" (473). Every chapter of the book has a bibliography listing primary and secondary resources. The book concludes with a list of selected further readings that is broken down into the following categories: audience and literacy; bibliographies, encyclopedias, and Old English scholarship; books and manuscripts; cultural context; linguistic context; general literature; periodicals; poetry; and prose. An index is included as well.

Hugh Magennis's ***The Cambridge Introduction to Anglo-Saxon Literature*** is a guide for those students having little knowledge of Anglo-Saxon writing. The book begins with the ways of approaching Anglo-Saxon literature; specifically, Bede's account of the poet Cædmon as being the first person to compose Christian poetry in the English language. The next chapter discusses how the literary traditions developed, specifically Old English

poetry and its oral Germanic background (e.g., *Beowulf*) and the Anglo-Latin literature that came from the continent (e.g., Bede, Alcuin, and Aldhelm). Subsequent chapters examine the varieties of narrative: heroic poetry, biblical literature, Bede's *Ecclesiastical History*, the *Anglo-Saxon Chronicle*, Christian hero stories like *Juliana* and Ælfric's *Passion of St. Edmund*. The next chapter is devoted to three very different narratives: homilies, writings of wisdom and lore, and elegies. The last chapter covers how subsequent periods perceived and received writings of the Anglo-Saxon era. The book ends with an appendix of resources for studying Anglo-Saxon literature and a bibliography that contains editions, translations, facsimiles, modern appropriations, and the secondary literature.

HISTORIES

Batchelor, Jennie, and Cora Kaplan, eds. *The History of British Women's Writing*. 8 volumes (projected). New York: Palgrave Macmillan, 2010–.

Bate, Jonathan, ed. *The Oxford English Literary History*. 5 volumes (projected 13 volumes). Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2002–.

Bennett, J. A. W., ed. *The Oxford History of English Literature*. 13 volumes (15 volumes projected). Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1945–1997. Some volumes reissued and updated with different editors.

Foster, Donald W., ed. *Women's Works*. 4 volumes. New York: Wicked Good Books, 2012–2014.

Fulk, R. D., and Christopher M. Cain. *A History of Old English Literature.* 2nd edition. Malden, MA: Wiley-Blackwell, 2013.

Goldie, Matthew Boyd. *Middle English Literature: A Historical Sourcebook*. Malden, MA: Blackwell, 2003.

Lapidge, Michael, John Blair, Simon Keynes, and Donald Scragg. *The Blackwell Encyclopaedia of Anglo-Saxon England*. Oxford: Blackwell, 1999.

Lees, Clare A., ed. *The Cambridge History of Early Medieval English Literature*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2013.

Momma, H., and Michael Matto, eds. *A Companion to the History of the English Language*. Chichester, UK: Wiley-Blackwell, 2008.

Wallace, David, ed. *The Cambridge History of Medieval English Literature*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1999.

Histories of medieval English literature range widely in scope and coverage, from exemplars of medieval writing to contemporary discussions on what constitutes medieval English studies. The coverage of works in this section can vary from general surveys of English literature to the entire medieval

period or to shorter periods (e.g., early medieval English). The history of women's writing has been neglected, but recent works included here provide a balanced view of medieval women's contributions in the era. Contemporary scholarship continues to evolve, progress, and grow. This point is clearly demonstrated by the multivolume titles that are still being published.

The Oxford History of English Literature is a monographic series (1945–1997) that has had volumes reissued with corrections, general editor and specific-volume editor changes, volume updates, and even some title changes to reflect new scholarship. Some of the volumes are dated, and hence the scholarship has been superseded. Despite these limitations, the medievalist can still find value in this series for the background reading and the historical insight in tracing the evolution of medieval English studies from the mid-twentieth century to the present. The volumes that concern the medievalist are the first two volumes. Each volume is further divided into two parts with the following four titles: *English Literature before the Norman Conquest* (not yet published), *Middle English Literature* (1986), *Chaucer and the Fifteenth Century* (1961), and *English Literature at the Close of the Middle Ages* (1947). The four volumes have different editors. Each chapter is an analysis of several exemplars of literary works under a particular subject. For example, in the volume *Middle English Literature*, in the chapter titled "Pastoral and Comedy," the following works are analyzed: "Owl and the Nightingale," "The Fox and the Wolf," "The Land of Cokaygne," "Dame Smith," "De Clerico et Puella," and "The Man in the Moon." The chapters provide an overview of a work or works with samples of prose and poetic meter.

Designed as the "twenty-first-century successor to the *Oxford History of English Literature*" (see entry in this section), ***The Oxford English Literary History***, with Jonathan Bate as the general editor, covers authors, works, institutions, and genres of literary history. The series defines "English Literary History" by focusing on the works written in English, and thus excluding those works written in Latin between the fourteenth and seventeenth centuries and works that come from or concern England (works from the Commonwealth and the United States are excluded). The thirteen-volume set has five volumes published so far, with volume 2, *1350–1547: Reform and Cultural Revolution*, edited by James Simpson, most relevant for medievalists (volume 1, *The Literary Cultures of Early England, to 1347*, has not yet been published). This work is unique as it concentrates on the transition period from medieval literature (1350 CE) into the early Renaissance (up to the death of Henry VIII in 1547 CE) with Simpson arguing against the traditional thesis that the advent of the early modern period produced a flourishing and expansion of literary styles and traditions, while the medieval period represented a time of limited, narrow appeal. He argues that this transition period is replete

with genres—biblical, tragic, and elegiac, for example—either starting earlier than expected (hence the "Reform" in the title) or genres that continued much later into the sixteenth century than is typically acknowledged. For instance, religious drama did not just die out but continued long after the death of Henry VIII. The early sixteenth century brought about a narrowing of the view of medieval literature by writers of the time who sought not only to understand Chaucer and his contemporaries but also to distance themselves from that earlier era (hence "Revolution"). The book ends with a list of author biographies and their important works, a section on suggested readings organized by topic, and a bibliography of works cited in the book.

Middle English Literature: A Historical Sourcebook is an anthology of pictorial images, literary texts, and historical documents from the late fourteenth and fifteenth centuries. Matthew Boyd Goldie made his selections based upon illustrated themes and concepts commonly found in Middle English literature. The following sample list of themes demonstrates the rich variety of topics that concerned the writers during this period: rulers, pilgrimages, marriage, prioresses, Lollardy Trials, Amazons, chastity, the Far East, Saracens, guilds, pestilence, the Revolt of 1382, feasts, hunting, pageants, tournaments, audience reactions to sermons, books, plays, and censorship. As expected, Chaucer dominates many of the selections. Each chapter begins with an overview, the manuscript source (variants ignored), and a list of secondary sources for further reading. Entries based on source material originally in French and Latin have been translated, while texts in Middle English have been retained with explanatory notes. In the chapter on images, each entry is accompanied by a black-and-white image from portraits and manuscripts. The volume features a detailed chronology from 1325 CE to 1500 CE; a map; an appendix on currency, income, prices, and measures; a glossary of Middle English terms; and a short bibliography.

Clare Lees's ***The Cambridge History of Early Medieval English Literature*** covers the writings of Britain and Ireland during the period from the end of the Roman Empire to the mid-twelfth century. The contributions of twenty-eight international scholars using interdisciplinary approaches fall under three broad categories. First, the concept and art of writing to 1000 CE covers such diverse subjects as scripts and scribal production; art and writing; Bede's view of the "four nations"—British, English, Irish, and Picts—that constituted the earliest writing from Ireland, Scotland, and Wales; and last, insular Latin literature as established by the Church. Part 2 covers the range of early English literature: the relationship of Anglo-Saxon England to the Germanic world, Old English poetic forms, lyrics, early women's writing, the lives of saints, Old English religious poetry, liturgical and devotional writing, and riddles. Part 3 of the book is "Latin Learning and the Literary Vernaculars" and focuses on the interlinear

aspects of Latin and other literary traditions in such areas as science, the law, the establishment of English after the Conquest, the Anglo-Scandinavian language and literature tradition on the Isles, Gaelic literature in Ireland and Scotland, and Welsh literature to 1150 CE . There is a bibliography of seventy-five pages as well as an index of manuscripts.

The Cambridge History of Medieval English Literature covers the period from the Norman Conquest to 1547 CE. With the essays of thirty-one contributors, David Wallace challenges the traditional idea that English medieval literature correlates with national identity. The work is a response to *The Cambridge History of English Literature* published between 1907 and 1927 that took a much narrower view of what "English medieval literature" meant. For example, while the earlier work discusses Scottish writing, it barely mentions Irish and Welsh texts. Wallace sees his work as a correction and expansion of what falls under English medieval literature in the British Isles. The work is divided into five parts: after the Norman Conquest, writing in the British Isles, institutional productions, after the Black Death, and before the Reformation. Topics vary widely from the effect of the Conquest on Old English to how the Bible was rendered into English. The work contains a chronological outline of historical events and texts in Great Britain reflecting this "expansive" view of national identity. Each section of the outline is divided into fifty-year periods, and each period is further divided into historical events, literature in Europe, and literature in Britain. References to codices cite the manuscript and the major works in it. Scotland, Wales, and Ireland are included in the chronology, allowing the researcher to acquire a quick snapshot of what was going on across the British Isles. The work contains a comprehensive bibliography of primary sources thirty-six pages long, and the list of secondary sources reaches seventy-four pages in length. An index of manuscripts referenced in the essays is provided.

Part of the series *Blackwell Histories of Literature*, ***A History of Old English Literature*** is an in-depth analysis of recent scholarship in Anglo-Saxon literature. Since the first edition came out in 2003, R. D. Fulk and Christopher Cain have noticed two trends in the field: the increasing importance of manuscript studies and, second, the additions, annotations, and marginalia that support the primary manuscript. Fulk and Cain argue that these trends go hand in hand with the belief "that our major additions of Old English texts construct an alternative record, select texts for inclusion and exclude many others, and obscure from our view the details of the manuscripts that preserve the record of Old English" (329). The introduction provides an excellent overview of Anglo-Saxon England and its literature from a social-historical perspective. One theme discussed is the cultural differences between the native people and the Germanic tribes that invaded Britain in the fifth century and the

arrival of Christian missionaries from the Mediterranean at the end of the sixth century. This fusion and intertwining of heroic legend from the former and the Christian narratives of the latter is best exemplified in *Beowulf*. Other themes covered are gender and authority, the effects of Christian conversion, the extensive use of Latin in the pre-Viking age, literacy and learning, and the nature of Old English poetry. Chapters include the chronology and varieties of Old English literature, Anglo-Saxon manuscripts, literature of the Alfredian period, homilies, saints' legends, biblical literature, liturgical and devotional texts, legal texts, scientific and scholastic texts, wisdom literature and lyric poetry, Germanic legend and heroic lay, and additions, annotations, and marginalia. The last chapter highlights the study of Anglo-Saxonism and how each period after the Norman Conquest adapted Anglo-Saxon ideas for their own particular ideological ends. Each chapter ends with extensive notes; the book concludes with a cited works section totaling 113 pages.

The History of British Women's Writing is a projected ten-volume set (five volumes have been published so far) covering the period 700 CE–2010 CE. The general editors, Jennie Batchelor and Cora Kaplan, want to provide an overview of women's writings that largely have been overlooked in English literature. The medievalist can check out volume 1 (700 CE–1500 CE) edited by Liz Herbert McAvoy and Diane Watt. This volume focuses on an area of literature that traditionally has been undervalued: women's literary activity in the Latin, Welsh, and Anglo-Norman languages in addition to Middle English. Chapters include a range of famous and lesser-known women: Christine de Pizan and Joan of Arc, Marie d'Oignies, Bridget of Sweden, Catherine of Siena, Julian of Norwich, and Margery Kempe. In addition, particular subjects are covered in which women have made contributions to the canon: women and the origins of English literature, literary production before and after the Norman Conquest, the French of the English and early British women's literary culture, women writers in Wales, medieval antifeminism, romance, saints' lives, devotional literature, Marian literature, late-medieval conduct literature, women and their manuscripts, women and reading, women and networks of literary production, anonymous texts, women translators, women's letters from 1350 to 1500, and purgatory.

Women's voices have often been suppressed, diminished, or misrepresented; ***Women's Works*** is meant to remedy that shortcoming. Under the tutelage of the chief editor Donald W. Foster, this anthology encompasses the period 900 CE to 1650 CE. Volume 1 covers most of this range, 900 CE to 1550 CE. This set makes the writings of women of this period more accessible to students by overcoming challenges of other anthologies such as using works with their original type font (hard to read) and focusing on a few famous titles and excluding the vast majority of works. Furthermore, while

many titles have been examined in scholarly journals and manuscript images, other anthologies may not have had anything before 1560 CE (e.g., *Early Modern Women's Writing* by Oxford). As Foster laments, "Although English literature begins with *Beowulf*, early women's writings begin with Aphra Behn or Jane Austen" (xxiv). The genres vary considerably from poetry and love letters to birthing literature; letters written on historical, political, and ecclesiastical issues; nunnery visitations from local bishops; and letters of confession from some of King Henry VIII's wives. Verse, elegy, riddles, romance, and satire are also represented. The texts have been translated from authoritative manuscripts and print editions in Old Welsh, Old English, and Anglo-Norman French with the original language side by side in many instances. Commentary is provided to place each work into its proper historical and cultural context. Many of these works have not been published previously in modern anthologies.

A Companion to the History of the English Language can help the researcher understand the different linguistic, historical, social, literary, and cultural methods of studying the English language. The sections on Old English and Middle English outline the history of how English became a written language through the influx of Angles and Saxons from the continent to the isle in the sixth century and how they came to be known as the "English people" united with four major dialects. In the late ninth century, King Alfred made it a priority to translate Latin texts into Old English for dissemination among the people beyond the ecclesiastical and political realms. The section on Middle English illustrates the evolution from Old English as a language of the populace to the incorporation of Anglo-Norman and French words into a new language, "Middle English," as the English aristocracy became isolated from the continent in the thirteenth century and consequently began using the vernacular language. A chapter on the varieties of Middle English show that this was a gradual process encumbered by geographical interests, the disparity between the written and spoken word that would not be resolved until the fifteenth century, and the quest for standardizing the written word. Each chapter ends with references and further reading. Maps and illustrations are included, and a glossary of linguistic terms used by the authors is at the end of the book.

The Blackwell Encyclopaedia of Anglo-Saxon England is an excellent one-volume reference to consult for information on a person or topic in Anglo-Saxon studies. The encyclopedia provides an overview of contemporary research in the subject areas of archaeology, biography, history, literature, religion, and paleography. The entries are composed of person, peoples, places, and subjects. Each author entry especially is useful for quickly identifying the primary sources, important editions, and secondary criticism. The topical en-

tries can vary widely from "aerial reconnaissance" to "food and drink." Each entry is signed by one of the 150 contributors. Of special note is the classified index of headwords, which allows the researcher to look up entries included that fall under that headword. For example, under the headword "scholars," names such as Æ*diluulf*, Asser, and Stephen of Ripon are given. An appendix of the rulers of the English c. 450 CE–1066 CE concludes this work.

NATIONAL GUIDES AND COMPANIONS

Brown, Ian, ed. *The Edinburgh History of Scottish Literature*. 3 volumes. Edinburgh: Edinburgh University Press, 2007.

Carruthers, Gerard, and Liam McIlvanney, eds. *The Cambridge Companion to Scottish Literature*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2012.

Jarman, A. O. H., and Gwilym Rees Hughes (volumes 1 and 2 [also Dafydd Johnston]), R. Geraint Gruffydd (volume 3), Branwen Jarvis (volume 4), Hywel Teifi Edwards (volume 5), M. Wynn Thomas (volume 7), eds. *A Guide to Welsh Literature*. 7 volumes. Swansea: Christopher Davies Publishers; Cardiff: University of Wales Press, 1976–2003.

Welch, Robert, ed. *The Oxford Companion to Irish Literature*. Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1996.

National guides and companions are valuable in situating other nations' literary progress within the British literary tradition. Specifically, Irish, Scottish, and Welsh literature are represented here because their literary tradition parallels the challenges found in studying medieval English literature. Furthermore, the literary cultures are intertwined as can be seen readily from the cross-border adoption of popular narratives (e.g., Arthurian romance) and common literary themes such as Christian love. Furthermore, these nationalities share oral traditions that gradually gave way to inconsistent manuscript transmissions. The scholar tracing the heritage of a concept or a manuscript may find himself exploring unfamiliar literary traditions; these guides and companions will assist in navigating the process.

The Cambridge Companion to Scottish Literature is an introductory overview of the history of Scottish literature edited by Gerard Carruthers and Liam McIlvanney. The book is divided into nineteen chapters and covers the history of Scottish literature. There is a chronology of Scottish historical, political, and literary events; the chapters are in chronological order. Three quarters of the book covers the period from Robert Burns onward. Each chapter has a section on notes and a short guide to further reading. Of interest to researchers of the medieval era are the first two chapters: "Scottish Literature

before Scottish Literature" and "The Medieval Period." One of the themes discussed is the whole concept of what constitutes Scottish literature and what can be included in the canon. Does medieval Scottish literature end with John Barbour's *The Bruce* in 1375 or can we go further down the road, as Alessandra Petrina suggests, to Gavin Douglas's *Eneados* published in 1513 CE? Scotland's earliest poetry was written in Gaelic, Latin, Norse, Old English, Welsh, and Scots. Gaelic was the dominant pre-twelfth-century language of Scotland, and there is great affinity with Irish literature. As Carruthers and McIlvanney point out, "Gaelic is part of 'Scottish' cultural heritage but its full historical story transcends 'Scotland'" (2).

For a fuller account of medieval Scottish literature, the researcher should consider examining volume 1 of ***The Edinburgh History of Scottish Literature***. The book is divided into two sections: the first covers early proto-Scottish literature up to 1314 CE (the Battle of Bannockburn). The second section (1314 CE to 1707 CE) outlines the emergence of a mature Scottish literature. The two introductory chapters cover the canon and pursuant criticism. The rise in popularity of Scottish literature as a focus of serious study has occurred only in the last thirty years, and it is due to the reassessment of the historical significance of the literature, the increase in the "internationalism" of the literature, and the growth in interdisciplinary studies. These themes permeate the early chapters as the history, the geography, and the languages of Scotland are analyzed. Later chapters focus on specific works and writers such as the *Gododdin*, Adomnán of Iona, the impact of Norse literature on the Orkneys, Gaelic literature, the Scoto-Latin tradition, Scottish nationhood, early medieval religious poetry, hagiography, philosophy, and theology.

Designed as an overview of the history and development of Welsh literature, ***A Guide to Welsh Literature*** is a seven-volume set published from 1976 to 2003 with the first two volumes being reissued (mostly bibliographical updates) in 1992 and 1997, respectively. Christopher Davies Publishers began the project with the University of Wales Press handling the later volumes. The editors are A. O. H. Jarman and Gwilym Rees Hughes, with most chapters in the series written by scholars who are experts in that particular time frame. The first two volumes are devoted to the medieval era: volume 1 begins at 600 CE, starting with the work of Aneirin and Taliesin and terminating with the end of Welsh independence in 1282 CE; and volume 2 picks up from 1282 CE to the death of Tudur Aled, the last medieval Welsh poet, in 1525 CE, although prose is covered to 1550 CE. Traditional Welsh literature mirrors medieval English literature in several ways. First, while there were many historical and mythical oral traditions of the early periods, very little was written down until the eighth and ninth centuries. In fact, the oldest texts that we have of Welsh poetry come from manuscripts written in the mid-1200s. Second,

what has come down to us is quite uneven. Of the five major poets from this early period, only the writings of Aneirin and Taliesin have survived. Third, the oral poetic tradition preceded that of prose with the writings focusing on heroic and historical events. Fourth, the Latin influx from the mainland and a greater interest in religious writing came later. Each chapter ends with a bibliography covering scholarly editions, historical background, translations, and critical studies, as necessary.

Robert Welch's ***The Oxford Companion to Irish Literature*** documents the complicated range of Irish language and literature beginning with Old, Middle, and Early Modern Gaelic, select texts from the Norman French tradition, the rise of English in the seventeenth century as a conduit of Irish expression, to a gradual retrieval and renaissance of Irish language and works in the twentieth century. Irish literature is one of the oldest vernacular literatures after Greek and Latin. Welch writes, "Anyone trying to tell the story of Irish literature (and this book is such a story told in segments) must be prepared to move from English to Gaelic and back again, if for no other reason than that many of the greatest Irish writers in English draw upon the deep reserves of Gaelic literature, folklore and mythology, and the Irish language itself" (xiii). Entries include authors, summaries and outlines of important texts, mythology and folklore, movements and genres, historical figures and events, and institutions. The volume also has a chronology of historical events, a select bibliography, and maps of Ireland and Dublin.

INDIVIDUAL AUTHOR/WORK/GENRE SOURCES

Archibald, Elizabeth, and A. S. G. Edwards. *A Companion to Malory*. Woodbridge, Suffolk, UK: D. S. Brewer, 1996.

Boitani, Piero, and Jill Mann. *The Cambridge Companion to Chaucer*. 2nd edition. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2003.

Cole, Andrew, and Andrew Galloway, eds. *The Cambridge Companion to* Piers Plowman. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2014.

DeGregorio, Scott. *The Cambridge Companion to Bede*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2010.

Dinshaw, Carolyn, and David Wallace. *The Cambridge Companion to Medieval Women's Writing*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2003.

Gray, Douglas, ed. *The Oxford Companion to Chaucer*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2003.

Magennis, Hugh, and Mary Swan, eds. *A Companion to Ælfric*. Leiden: Brill, 2009.

McTurk, Rory, ed. *A Companion to Old Norse-Icelandic Literature and Culture*. Malden, MA: Blackwell, 2005.
Orchard, Andy. *A Critical Companion to Beowulf*. Cambridge: D. S. Brewer, 2003.
Sobecki, Sebastian, and John Scattergood, eds. *A Critical Companion to John Skelton*. Rochester, NY: D. S. Brewer, 2018.
Wada, Yoko, ed. *A Companion to* Ancrene Wisse. Woodbridge, Suffolk, UK: D. S. Brewer, 2003.

The works in this section focus on particular authors, works, and genres. Bede, Chaucer, Ælfric, Malory, and Skelton represent some of the writers that had an immeasurable influence on shaping the medieval English literary tradition. Furthermore, works such as *Beowulf* and *Piers Plowman* are seminal for contemporary understanding of their time and place. Last, works on medieval women writers and Norse-Icelandic culture illustrate the hidden influences that these genres have had on the literary culture of the time.

The Cambridge Companion to Bede, edited by Scott DeGregorio, provides a broad overview for studying the Venerable Bede as the first major writer of the Anglo-Saxon period. Although he wrote in Latin, he translated many of his works into Old English. His primary work, *Historia ecclesiastica gentis Anglorum* (*The Ecclesiastical History of the English People*) was completed in 731 CE and is a religious-historical account of the Anglo-Saxons from the Roman occupation of England in 55 BC to the various kingdoms' conversion to Christianity. Bede was also a linguist who promoted both the study of Latin in the British Isles (and on the continent) and the translation of religious works into the local Old English dialects for proselytization purposes. He had a number of disciples, chiefly Alcuin of York, who spent a great deal of time at the Carolingian court. The book is divided into three parts: Bede's life and the secular, political, and cultural contexts of his time; Bede's writings on education, science, the Old and New Testament, preaching, and history; and the reception and influence of Bede, particularly his hagiographical status, Anglo-Saxon England after his death, and his influence on the study of Latin on the continent. Bede was a source of inspiration for later writers during the medieval period. This work is written for students and non-specialists and has sections on further reading and an extensive bibliography listing Latin editions, English translations, and secondary literature. While most scholarly works on Bede focus on the *Ecclesiastical History*, this companion takes a much broader approach, examining all his works and how the religious and historical themes in his other works intersect with the *Ecclesiastical History*.

In ***A Companion to Ælfric***, Hugh Magennis and Mary Swan have provided us with "the first collection of essays devoted to the full range of Ælfric's

writings" (1). Ælfric of Eynsham (955 CE–1010 CE) was an abbot who wrote hagiographies, homilies, and sermons in Old English. He has been compared to Bede in terms of prolific output and is considered to be "the most important writer of Old English religious prose" (5), although in English studies, he is only now getting his due. The book contains fifteen essays on such diverse topics as Benedictine reform, catechetical homiletics, writing style, Englishness, manuscript tradition, and the effects of his work on later medieval English literature. His Latin and English writings are examined together, which traditionally has not been the case in Anglo-Saxon studies. The book ends with a thirty-page bibliography and an index.

Through culture, movies, and books, *Beowulf* may be one of the few Anglo-Saxon poems that a student would be aware of before arriving at university. For graduate students, an understanding of the text is necessary, and ***A Critical Companion to Beowulf*** by Andy Orchard is an excellent place to start. The work begins with a summary of the plot followed by eight chapters discussing the paleographical issues of the original manuscript (the only copy to survive is the MS Cotton Vitellius A.xv in the British Library) and how the text was transmitted to us in its modern form; the style and structure of the poem; the myth and legends inherited from pre-Christian and Norse mythology; Christian themes; heroes and villains portrayed in the text; the speeches made by the characters; and the critical approaches that scholars have used to understand the text. There are several plates of the manuscript and an extensive list of the repeated formulas in *Beowulf*. The book ends with a forty-two-page bibliography directing the researcher to further studies.

Thomas Malory was the author (or compiler) of *Morte d'Arthur*, the chivalric romance that has endured for five hundred years and remains one of the most popular medieval English titles after Chaucer's works. Elizabeth Archibald and A. S. G. Edwards's ***A Companion to Malory*** is a welcome addition to the literature. Part 1 deals with Malory in greater historical and literary context. Topics include chivalry, the manuscript heritage, the French source material, the role of women, Malory's account of Arthur contrasted with earlier accounts, and Malory's life records including a chronological listing of documents. Part 2 analyzes the eight tales in *Morte d'Arthur*: "From the Marriage of King Uther unto King Arthur That Reigned after Him and Did Many Battles," "The Noble Tale between King Arthur and Lucius the Emperor of Rome," "The Tale of Sir Launcelot du Lac," "The Tale of Sir Gareth," "The Book of Sir Tristrams de Lyons," "The Noble Tale of the Sangreal," "Sir Launcelot and Queen Gwynevere," and "Le Morte D'Arthur." Part 3 deals with the legacy of Malory's work and the continuing influence of the King Arthur saga. As Edwards writes in the concluding chapter, "the enduring appeal of the *Morte Darthur* draws on nostalgia for a world that never existed,

one in which King Arthur is not dead but alive in his relevance to situations and contexts beyond the imaginings of Thomas Malory" (241). The highly selective bibliography of Malory studies at the end is geared toward locating significant titles rather than offering a comprehensive list. A new edition of *A Companion to Malory* was published in 2019.

Although William Langland's *Piers Plowman* is considered a work of immeasurable importance to the study of medieval English poetry, recent scholarship has shed new light on the work to the degree that the arrival of ***The Cambridge Companion to*** **Piers Plowman** is a welcome addition to the discussion. Andrew Cole and Andrew Galloway edit this fine volume consisting of the essays of eleven scholars. The justification for this volume is evident: "New information about the manuscripts of the poem and their affiliations, recent historical discoveries, and important chartings of literary, cultural, and theoretical scope of the poem, have all emerged" (1) in the last twenty years. An introductory essay traces the "correct" version or edition of the poem (scholars generally agree on the B text), the scholarship from the 1960s to the 1980s, and the issue of disputed authorship of the poem. The chapters discuss *Piers Plowman B*, the "standard" edition of the poem; versions, revisions, and manuscripts of *Piers Plowman*; literary history and allegory; Langland family history; religious and political themes; Christian philosophy; and a chapter titled "Plowman Traditions in Late Medieval and Early Modern Writing." The work has a chronology covering political events that occurred in England, particularly in London from 1327 CE to 1561 CE. A map of London in the latter part of the fourteenth century gives a geographical reference for these events. Separate chapters on notes and a guide to further reading are provided. For example, the chapter on versions and revisions lists the essential manuscripts and editions (the important Athlone editions, based on the A, B, C, and Z manuscripts, are listed in the abbreviations section at the front of the book) and secondary literature.

The Cambridge Chaucer Companion became a classic in the field of Chaucerian studies after it was published in 1986. Piero Boitani and Jill Mann have updated this version and called it ***The Cambridge Companion to Chaucer***. Eighteen scholars have written chapters examining the social and literary scene in England at the time, the Italian and French influences on Chaucer, his literary structure and style, new interpretations of literary theory, and Chaucer's effects on fifteenth- and sixteenth-century literary studies. Nine of the seventeen chapters focus on individual works, with five being devoted to the *Canterbury Tales*. The final chapter is a list of further readings with some annotations included.

Complementing *The Cambridge Companion to Chaucer*, Douglas Gray's ***The Oxford Companion to Chaucer*** has over two thousand entries covering

every character from Chaucer's corpus, entries on his contemporaries, literary influences upon Chaucer (particularly Dante and Boccaccio), his life and times, the language and meter of his poetry, critical opinions over the centuries, his effect on later poets such as Alexander Pope and William Blake, and the major literary themes of each work. Entries vary in length from one line to several pages. A selective bibliography, a chronology, a note to readers, a few illustrations, and extensive cross-references are helpful features.

The Cambridge Companion to Medieval Women's Writing, edited by Carolyn Dinshaw and David Wallace, takes an expansive look of women's effect on and contribution to the creation and support of the written word. The term "writing" is used in a broad sense; most laywomen were not educated and could not write. Their contributions were often made in a variety of ways. First, they contributed through their social roles as witnesses to births, deaths, romances, and sermons, to name a few types of surviving records. Second, other women, such as Margery of Kempe, did not write but dictated their texts. Third, of the few educated women who did write, some wrote religious tracts—the earliest known surviving work written by a woman in Middle English was the *Revelation of Love* by Julian of Norwich, published in 1395 CE. This was an interesting choice given that Latin was the language of the religious. The *Cambridge Companion* reflects this trichotomy and is divided into three sections: section 1 delves into the traditional roles and relationships that enabled women to contribute to the culture. The roles, or "estates" as the editors call them, include childhood, virginity, widowhood, wifehood, and relationships among women. Section 2 investigates social spaces and the concept of "textuality": "for every surviving medieval manuscript bespeaks a history of collaborations, from first commission or inspiration through composition, compilation, scribing, copying, reading, and centuries of conservation" (5). Section 3 examines famous women writers and their effect on written medieval culture: Heloise, Marie de France, Christine de Pizan, Julian of Norwich, Margery Kempe, and Joan of Arc. While many of these women are continental writers, they did engage English culture in various ways. Examples include Joan of Arc writing to the King of England, and Christine de Pizan's critique of *Roman de la Rose* and Chaucer's subsequent translation of the *Rose*. There is even a chapter on anonymous writers of lyrics and romances; many of them we know were women but, for a variety of reasons, they chose or were relegated to anonymity. The volume ends with an excellent bibliography broken down by topics. A chronology of events and works illustrates the contributions medieval women made to the written culture. For examples of the variety of written works by women, check *Women's Works* (Foster, ed.) listed earlier in this chapter.

A Companion to **Ancrene Wisse** provides an in-depth introduction for researchers who are unfamiliar with the literary and historical foundations

of the thirteenth-century work *Ancrene Wisse*. The *Wisse* was a work meant originally as a guide for female recluses, although later versions did address male recluses. The *Wisse* is a case study for the many inherent challenges in studying Middle English literature, which the editor Yoko Wada outlines in the introductory essay. Although the author is unknown and the original manuscript has been lost, the work can trace its Old English heritage back to the area of Mercia in the 800s CE. There are seventeen surviving manuscripts—nine in English, four in French, and four in Latin—yet only one manuscript bears the title (5). Wada traces the manuscripts' origins and relationships through stemmatic diagrams, offers a short analysis of some "loanwords" from French, Scandinavian, Latin, Welsh, and Flemish, and discusses how important the work was to the Reformation, especially in King Henry VIII's court. Some of the other essays cover the *Wisse* as a genre, the languages used in the text, the early readers of the text, the legacy of the *Wisse*, and the religious themes, including the concept of a recluse. There is a select bibliography listing editions, original language editions, textual history, translations, critical studies, and biographies of anchoresses. An index of Middle English words referred to in the essays and an index of manuscripts round out the book.

Rory McTurk's ***A Companion to Old Norse-Icelandic Literature and Culture*** provides a solid basis for understanding the impact of Norse and Germanic legend on such poems as *Beowulf*, *Widsith*, and *Deor*. For researchers interested in the background of Old English literature or who are exploring the parallel connections between Old English and Old Norse, this volume will be valuable. The work consists of twenty-nine chapters written by thirty-two scholars on subjects as varied as Christian biography and poetry, sagas, Eddic poetry, geography and travel, late prose fiction, secular poetry, manuscripts and paleography, pagan myth, romance, runes, Skaldic poetry, and women in Old Norse poetry and sagas. Each chapter ends with a select bibliography on editions and translations and secondary literature.

John Skelton (c. 1463 CE–1529 CE) was a rare literary figure who bridged the medieval and Renaissance period, a period neglected by literary historians. He worked in the Tudor courts of Henry VII and Henry VIII (Skelton was the latter's tutor) and was the most important poet and satirist of this period, writing in Latin and English. His English works were influenced heavily by classical Latin literature, and religious themes permeate his writing (he was a priest). Some of his works were printed by William Caxton. His most famous work is *The Bouge of Courte*, a political satire of the Tudor court. The last significant study of Skelton's work was more than thirty years ago, hence the necessity of Sebastian Sobecki and John Scattergood's ***A Critical Companion to John Skelton***. The purpose of this volume is to introduce Skelton

to a wider audience, showcase existing scholarship, and propose new avenues for research. The book has thirteen chapters covering his life, religion, law and politics, the influence of classical literature on his writing, humanism, his English writings in manuscript and print, Skelton's impact on the English language, and his reception after his death. A chapter titled "Skelton's English Canon" is especially useful in tracing the lineage of many of his works attributed to him at the time of his death, works written anonymously (for political reasons), and works printed with his name unintentionally excluded, and other issues. Skelton fell out of favor during the 1600s, but his reputation recovered slowly (the first critical edition of his work was published in 1843) into the late twentieth century. The last few years have seen a renewed scholarly interest in the Tudor period, and Skelton has been one of the benefactors. The bibliography is organized by primary, secondary, and tertiary sources. The primary sources list manuscripts (Latin, English, and attributed works); early printed works (many of his works are listed in the *Short Title Catalogue*); modern editions (complete editions, single works, and selections in Latin and English). The secondary sources detail books, articles, chapters in essay collections, and individual works. Reference works included a reference to Robert Kinsman's *John Skelton, Early Tudor Laureate: An Annotated Bibliography, c. 1488–1977* (see chapter 4). Skelton's works are embedded in the historical and political context of his time. A critical companion to John Skelton serves as a useful guide to unpacking this period and the scholarly issues surrounding his work.

CONCLUSION

Anglo-Saxon and medieval-era researchers will use a combination of online and print resources to effectively collect information on a given topic. Furthermore, they will understand the advantages and limits of both mediums. General reference sources are excellent starting points for gathering introductory information about authors, works, genres, periods, and themes. They can help with identifying and locating bibliographies and secondary literature. Last, these sources can immerse the researcher in the time period, culture, political realm, and historical perspectives of the author and work. As traditional print resources such as encyclopedias and dictionaries become part of an increasingly digital ecosystem, the researcher will know the format of a work will be less important than understanding the scholarly process in which the work was created. The traditional value of these resources will remain the same: subject specialists creating scholarly content guided by editorial boards and published by respected publishers.

Chapter Three

Library Catalogs

Library catalogs have long been the first step for scholarly research. In the past twenty-five years, nearly all academic and public libraries have moved from the classic, physical card catalog to Online Public Access Catalogs (OPACs) to give their users easier access to their collections and smoothly link their own collections to those in other libraries around the world. Library catalogs are powerful tools, but they pose some unique challenges when compared to commercial search engines like Google. Chapter 1 provided keyword searching strategies that can be applied to any topic; this chapter discusses some specific strategies for doing different kinds of searches in library catalogs and some of the ways that library catalogs and collections are changing.

For most web-savvy people, sites like Google.com and Amazon.com are going to be their first choice when they are trying to find a book. These sites are incredibly easy to use, and they will almost always connect the user to a book, even if the user does not have a specific title or author in mind. The books may even be instantly available electronically, either for free or for purchase. But these sites are not designed for research and do not always provide enough information about a work for the user to make informed decisions. For serious research, it is generally going to be more efficient to rely on library catalogs.

For the most part, library catalogs are designed to serve a single library, but this is certainly not always the case. Many public library systems use a shared catalog across several branches, showing the collections of entire cities or counties. Academic libraries may use shared catalogs as well, allowing users to search a group of local or affiliated library collections at the same time. There are also massive "union catalogs" (described in more depth later in this chapter), such as OCLC's WorldCat with over 300 million records from 70,000 libraries around the world from Afghanistan to Zimbabwe. While researchers looking for items that can be viewed or borrowed immediately

should stick with their home library catalog, more exhaustive searching can be done in the larger union catalogs to discover and locate items that may be available through interlibrary loan or by visiting other institutions.

Library catalogs have been affected by the changing nature of libraries and publishing. As more material becomes available online, catalogs have been adjusted to provide direct access to these digital resources. This marks a fundamental shift in the idea of the library catalog from a collection of what is located in the library to a collection of items accessible to the library's users. Additionally, in order to make space for new acquisitions, many libraries are moving older, damaged, or lesser-used items to off-site storage facilities. In these cases, they can be found only through the library catalog, which typically contains the mechanisms for requesting them for use. Finally, new tools are being developed and implemented to improve the catalog's search engines. These discovery layers (discussed in more depth later) search beyond what would be found in a traditional library catalog and may include search results from journals, newspapers, and web sources. While none of these tools should be overlooked, this chapter focuses on traditional catalog searching to locate books.

AUTHOR SEARCHES, EVALUATION OF RESULTS, AND EDITIONS OF LITERARY WORKS

While an author search can quickly retrieve books written by a specific primary or secondary author, the structure of the catalog can present some problems. As shown in chapter 1, catalog records reserve multiple fields that are all indexed as authors, such as editors and so-called corporate authors (which can be a group or institution credited with the creation of a work). In literary research, author searches can be used in two ways, either to locate primary sources (works by the author being studied) or to find secondary works by a particular scholar or critic.

Locating primary texts by author can be simple. For example, an author search for *Langland, William* (figure 3.1) shows an author heading of "Langland, William 1330?–1400?" That link will return books in the catalog with William Langland as the author. The birth and death dates are given in order to differentiate among multiple authors with the same name. With many Anglo-Saxon and medieval authors, these dates are uncertain, noted here by the question marks. An additional author heading of "Langland, William" also points to works by William Langland, but this comes from automatically generated records for electronic versions of *Piers Plowman*. The entry for "Langland, Robert, 1330?–1400?" shows a "More Info" button that directs users to the

[6]	11	Langland, Olaf E.	Personal Name
More Info 7	0	Langland, Robert, 1330?-1400?	Personal Name
[8]	1	Langland, Tuck	Personal Name
[9]	2	Langland, Victoria	Personal Name
[10]	5	LANGLAND, WILLIAM	Personal Name
[11]	165	Langland, William, 1330?-1400?	Personal Name
[12]	2	Langlands, Alex	Personal Name
[13]	7	Langlands, Rebecca	Personal Name

Figure 3.1. Author search for *Langland*
WRLC Classic Catalog

"Langland, William, 1330?–1400?" record. Sometimes labeled as "See Also," these pointers help to direct users to variant names of these authors.

With a more popular author, such as Geoffrey Chaucer, several author records can be found in a catalog, and users must be careful to check all entries for works by that author (figure 3.2). In this case, there are several incorrect entries that all should be labeled as "Chaucer, Geoffrey, d. 1400." Generally, modern authors are less complicated, but it is important to examine carefully the results of the search when researching the medieval period.

With the medieval period, an additional challenge is working with unknown authors. For example, the author of *Gawain and the Green Knight* is generally referred to as the "Gawain Poet" or "The Pearl Poet." No author record exists under either name, so an author search to locate these works would not be useful.

Shorter works may be published in collections or anthologies instead of in single volumes. When these collections contain works by several authors, the primary author listed in the catalog is usually an editor or translator. The individual authors may be identified as "additional authors," but that is not always true, particularly when a large number of different authors are represented.

#	Titles	Headings	Headings Type
[1]	20	Chaucer, Geoffrey.	Personal Name
[2]	2	Chaucer, Geoffrey, 1342-1400.	Personal Name
[3]	2	Chaucer, Geoffrey, 1343?-1400.	Personal Name
[4]	21	Chaucer, Geoffrey, -1400.	Personal Name
[5]	1021	Chaucer, Geoffrey, d. 1400.	Personal Name
[6]	2	Chaucer, Geoffrey, d. 1400. Skeat, Walter William, 1835-1912.	Personal Name
[7]	3	Chaucer, Geoffrey, d. 1400. Spurious and doubtful works.	Personal Name
[8]	4	Chaucer, Harry.	Personal Name
[9]	5	Chaucer, J.	Personal Name
[10]	1	Chaucer, Jeff, 1917-.	Personal Name
More Info 11	0	Chaucer, Jeffrey, d. 1400.	Personal Name

Figure 3.2. Results of author search for *Chaucer, Geoffrey*
WRLC Classic Catalog

If the author is not listed in the author fields of the catalog record, an author search would not be an effective way to locate those items. If the table of contents is included in the record, a keyword search for the author's name could retrieve more fruitful results.

For the works of many authors from the Anglo-Saxon and medieval period, multiple editions of their works have been published. Deciding which edition is the best, or which best suits the researcher's needs, can be difficult. For more popular works, such as *Beowulf* or Arthurian legends, editions for children may also be available and would not be helpful to most researchers. Texts originally composed in Anglo-Saxon or in Middle English might be available both in original languages and as translations into Modern English. The catalog record does not always indicate whether something is a translation, and the language of the item may not be displayed in the record at all. Most catalogs allow results to be limited or filtered by language, but this feature can be buried among many other options. Sometimes the title makes it obvious through alternate spellings: Chaucer's *Troilus and Criseyde* versus a more modernized *Troilus and Cressida* (figure 3.3).

#	Title <	Full Title	Library	Date
[1]	Troilus and Criseyde : a reader's guide /	Troilus and Criseyde : a reader's guide / Jenni Nutall.	AU	2012
	AU: LIB Stacks	Call Number: PR1896 .N88 2012 Status: Available		
[2]	Troilus and Criseyde	Troilus and Criseyde, with facing-page Il Filostrato / Geoffrey Chaucer ; Authoritative texts / The testament of Cresseid / by Robert Henryson / Criticism ; edited by Stephen A. Barney.	AU	2006
	AU: LIB Stacks	Call Number: PR1895 .B37 2006 Status: Available		
[3]	Troilus and Criseyde a new translation /	Troilus and Criseyde [electronic resource] : a new translation / Geoffrey Chaucer ; translated with an introduction and notes by Barry Windeatt.	E-Resource	1998
	Shared E-Resources Collection	Call Number: Shared Eledctronic Book Status: Available		
[4]	Troilus and Criseyde : a new edition of Chaucer's The book of Troilus /	Troilus and Criseyde : a new edition of Chaucer's The book of Troilus /Geoffrey Chaucer ; edited by Barry A. Windeatt.	AU	1984
	AU: LIB Stacks	Call Number: PR1895 .W56 Status: Available		
[5]	Troilus and Criseyde.	Chaucer's Troilus and Cressida five books in present-day English / by James J. Donohue.	AU	1975
	AU: LIB Stacks	Call Number: PR1895 .D6 Status: Available		
[6]	Troilus and Criseyde.	Book of Troilus and Creseyde, by Geoffrey Chaucer, edited from all known manuscripts by Robert Kilburn Root…	AU	1926
	AU: LIB Stacks	Call Number: PR1895 .R6 Status: Available		
[7]	Troilus and Criseyde	Loves of Troilus and Creseid, written by Chaucer; with a commentary by Sir Francis Kinaston; [electronic resource]…	AU	1796
	AU: Electronic Text	Call Number: AU Electronic Text Status: No Item status		
[8]	Troilus and Criseyde. Book 1-2, Latin and English (Middle English)	Amorum Troili et Creseidæ libri duo priores Anglico-Latini. [electronic resource].	AU	1635
	AU: Electronic Books	Call Number: AU Electronic books Status: Available		

Figure 3.3. Title search for *Troilus and Criseyde* showing variant titles for original and translated editions. The standard title appears in the left column.
WRLC Classic Catalog

Finding a copy in the necessary language is not always going to be the final step. Since the works from this time period may have been available in many manuscript copies and printed editions, it is important to consult critical editions. Critical editions represent attempts to reconstruct the original text of a work using the surviving copies. Over the centuries, errors and other textual changes accumulate and can be tracked between editions. Careful comparison and study are necessary to determine which variant readings are most likely to represent the original author's intent. As new manuscripts or other evidence emerges, these editions are updated to reflect the best scholarship. While critical editions are usually created in the original languages of the work, translations should be based on these reconstructed texts in order to present the purest text possible. Sometimes titles are specifically identified as critical editions, such as *The Pilgrimage of the Soul: A Critical Edition of the Middle English Dream Vision* edited by Rosemarie Potz McGerr, or they are part of a series of primary texts (see chapter 5). In order to find the best critical editions, it may be necessary to consult outside sources. The *Dictionary of Literary Biography* discussed in chapter 2 can be of help here. Standard editions can generally be identified by using one of the tools discussed in chapter 4 to review recent journal articles on an author or work and look at which editions are being cited. The same tools can be used to locate book reviews, which may identify and review newer editions in comparison with their older counterparts.

Each year, more and more books are being digitized and made available on the web through sites like Google Books, HathiTrust, and Internet Archive. The vast majority of these items are old enough to be free from copyright restrictions (generally from 1923 or earlier). Some library catalogs have links to these items, but they may only link to items owned by the library. While those researchers in the natural sciences may have little use for hundred-year-old scholarship, in literary research age is much less of a factor. The works that survived from the medieval period have been printed in many editions over the centuries, along with translations. Not only can many printed editions of primary texts be accessed, but older works of literary criticism can be of value.

Libraries have also been increasingly acquiring electronic books either in place of or in addition to their physical counterparts. Because these are purchased items, use is typically limited to users affiliated with the library, and some type of log-in will be required to access them. If a library owns both a print and an electronic copy of the same book, they will usually be listed as two separate catalog records. Search results should be read carefully to avoid confusion.

TITLE SEARCHES

Title searches can be the fastest and easiest way to locate specific works with known titles in a library's collection. Unlike keyword searches, title searches are usually "left-anchored," meaning that the search terms are used to locate a title as one would search a dictionary. For example, a title search for *Green Knight* will return, among other things, Iris Murdoch's novel, but it will not return any editions of *Sir Gawain and the Green Knight*. Word order matters. For this reason, it is also sometimes necessary to omit leading articles, including non-English articles such as the French *le* or the Old English *se*.

Some catalogs default to a "Title Keyword" search. Here, search terms can appear anywhere in the item's title, in any order. This can be useful to locate secondary literature, but it can cause problems if the title is a commonly used word. For example, a "Title Keyword" search for *Piers Plowman* will return useful sources like *The Cambridge Companion to Piers Plowman*, but a search for *Pearl* might return thousands of results about Pearl Harbor. Most catalogs allow users to switch between these two types of title searches, sometimes labeled as "Search" for title keyword and "Browse" for exact title matches. The difference is not always clearly marked and sometimes must be solved through trial and error.

In addition to titles of works, title searches can also be used to locate periodicals and monographic series by title. The library catalog may provide the option for "Journal Title" or "Series Title" search, but the fields in the MARC records for these are included in the basic title index. For monographic series where each volume has its own title and works may not be physically shelved together, this can be a very valuable way to discover other useful volumes. Figure 3.4 displays the search results for the series *Studies in Mediaeval Literature*. Though each volume has its own title and location, one search retrieves records for all series volumes held by the library.

Variant titles for works can be vexing, but fortunately library catalog records are given "Uniform Titles." These are the accepted standard titles for works that may be published under differing names. This is used particularly with translations or works where standardized spelling has changed. For example, the Anglo-Saxon heroic poem *Widsið* is frequently transliterated as *Widsith*, but the uniform title used by some library catalogs is *Widsid* (figure 3.5).

Another potential problem with title searching is encountered when trying to locate works that are not published on their own but are parts of larger collections of works. Much of the extant literature from the Anglo-Saxon and medieval periods is made up of short poems or surviving fragments of lost longer works. Locating texts like this can be tricky, especially when working with a catalog that lacks complete table of contents information in its records.

#	Title <	Full Title	Library	Date
[1]	Studies in mediaeval literature ; v. 10	Tristan in the underworld : a study of Gottfried von Strassburg's Tristan together with the Tristan of Thomas / Neil Thomas.	CU	1991
	CU: Mullen Library Stacks	Status: Available		
[2]	Studies in mediaeval literature ; v. 13	Pilgrimage motif in the works of the medieval German author Hartmann von Aue / Mary Vandergrift Mills.	CU	1996
	CU: Mullen Library Stacks	Status: Available		
[3]	Studies in mediaeval literature ; v. 15	Sense and perception in Dante's Commedia / Edward G. Miller.	CU	1996
	CU: Mullen Library Stacks	Status: Available		
[4]	Studies in mediaeval literature ; v. 2	Literature of Satire in the twelfth century : a neglected mediaeval genre / Ronald E. Pepin.	CU	1988
	CU: Mullen Library Stacks	Status: Available		
[5]	Studies in mediaeval literature ; v. 24	Growth of the Tristan and Iseut legend in Wales, England, France and Germany ; Phillipa Hardman… [et al.].	CU	2003
	CU: Mullen Library Stacks	Status: Available		
[6]	Studies in mediaeval literature ; v. 3	Figure of Merlin in thirteenth century French romance / Aileen Ann Macdonald.	CU	1990
	CU: Mullen Library Stacks	Status: Available		
[7]	Studies in mediaeval literature ; v. 6	Pearl poem ; an introduction and interpretation / George Doherty Bond.	CU	1991
	CU: Mullen Library Stacks	Status: Available		

Figure 3.4. Title search for *Studies in Mediaeval Literature*
WRLC Classic Catalog

Widsith.
Edited by Kemp Malone

Details

Title:	Widsith. Edited by Kemp Malone.
Edition:	[Rev. ed.]
Standard Title:	Widsid.
Publisher/Date:	Copenhagen, Rosenkilde and Bagger, 1962.
Series:	Anglistica, v. 13
Description:	231 p. 24 cm.
Subjects:	English language –Old English, ca. 450-1100 –Glossaries, vocabularies, etc.
Other Authors/Contributors:	Malone, Kemp, 1889-1971, ed.
Primary Material:	Book

Figure 3.5. Catalog record for *Widsith* showing standard title as *Widsid*
WRLC Classic Catalog

While some records will contain the individual titles in a collection listed as alternate or standard titles, this is certainly not always the case. Keyword searching can be valuable, but it will not be exhaustive. A simple keyword search for *Pearl* is essentially useless in trying to track down the poem. Newer catalogs and discovery layers sometimes can handle these searches better, but they are still far from perfect. Additional keywords such as *poem* or *Middle English* can be added to improve your chances of getting relevant results. For works that prove difficult to locate, secondary sources such as those described in chapters 2 and 4 might be required to locate a specific short work.

SUBJECT SEARCHES

Subject searching is more complicated than simply identifying the key concepts of a research topic and using them as keywords. In library catalogs, subject searches are limited to a specific hierarchical index of standardized subject headings. For this reason, vocabulary is important. There is no Library of Congress subject listing for "Anglo-Saxon Poetry." The accepted subject heading for that topic is "English poetry—Old English, ca. 450–1100." Sometimes a search for a subject that does not match the proscribed headings will lead to a "see" reference leading to the appropriate heading, but not always. It is also important to note that since subject headings are standardized and relatively narrow, searching multiple concepts at once with a subject search can be difficult.

Broader subject headings may include several subheadings, as seen in figure 3.6. The heading for "English poetry—Old English, ca. 450–1100" is actually a subheading for English poetry itself and is in turn broken down into more specific headings such as "Bibliography," "History and Criticism," and "Manuscripts." These subheadings can make it easier to focus on books that match the researcher's needs. Once one book is found using keywords, linking through the relevant subject headings on that item can retrieve other books with similar subject matter.

English poetry--Old English, ca. 450-1100. (79) ◦ Narrower Term: Christian poetry, English (Old) ◦ Narrower Term: Didactic poetry, English (Old) ◦ Narrower Term: Elegiac poetry, English (Old) ◦ Narrower Term: Epic poetry, English (Old) ◦ Narrower Term: Gnomic poetry, English (Old) ◦ Narrower Term: Sea poetry, English (Old) ◦ Narrower Term: War poetry, English (Old)	Library of Congress subject headings
English poetry--Old English, ca. 450-1100--Appreciation. (1)	Library of Congress subject headings
English poetry--Old English, ca. 450-1100--Bibliography. (5)	Library of Congress subject headings
English poetry--Old English, ca. 450-1100--Concordances. (1)	Library of Congress subject headings
English poetry--Old English, ca. 450-1100--Criticism, Textual. (17)	Library of Congress subject headings
English poetry--Old English, ca. 450-1100--History and criticism. (145)	Library of Congress subject headings
English poetry--Old English, ca. 450-1100--History and criticism--Bibliography. (1)	Library of Congress subject headings
English poetry--Old English, ca. 450-1100--History and criticism--Congresses. (2)	Library of Congress subject headings

Figure 3.6. Subject subheadings for *English poetry—Old English, ca. 450–1100*
Library of Congress Online Catalog

Since these headings are standardized, they can be reused in multiple library catalogs and even some article databases. For this reason, keeping a list of relevant subject headings can save time. Not every catalog will have the same book under the same headings, particularly for items predating the online systems. Subject searches should always be supplemented with additional keyword searches to ensure that items are not being missed and to discover new potentially useful headings.

In addition to covering concepts, subject headings can be used to locate works *about* authors. These headings should match the format used in the catalog for the author entry; for example, "Geoffrey, of Monmouth, Bishop of St. Asaph, 1100?–1154" works as an author search and as a subject search. But the subject index (figure 3.7) shows additional, more specific options for researching Geoffrey:

#	Titles	Headings
[1]	2	Geoffrey, of Monmouth,1100?-1154. Historia regum Britanniae.
[2]	6	Geoffrey, of Monmouth, Bishop of St. Asaph, 1100?-1154
[3]	4	Geoffrey, of Monmouth, Bishop of St. Asaph, 1100?-1154--Characters--Merlin.
[4]	7	Geoffrey, of Monmouth, Bishop of St. Asaph, 1100?-1154--Criticism and interpretation.
More Info [5]	23	Geoffrey, of Monmouth, Bishop of St. Asaph, 1100?-1154. Historia Britonum
More Info 6	0	Geoffrey, of Monmouth, Bishop of St. Asaph, 1100?-1154. Historia Britonum. Prophetia Merlini
[7]	31	Geoffrey, of Monmouth, Bishop of St. Asaph, 1100?-1154. Historia regum Britanniae.
More Info 8	0	Geoffrey, of Monmouth, Bishop of St. Asaph, 1100?-1154. Prophetia Merlini
[9]	4	Geoffrey, of Monmouth, Bishop of St. Asaph, 1100?-1154. Vita Merlini.
[10]	1	Geoffrey, of Monmouth, Bp. of St. Asaph, 1100?-1154. Historia Britorum.

Figure 3.7. Subject headings for *Geoffrey of Monmouth*
WRLC Classic Catalog

Among the subheadings available for Geoffrey are several that relate to his major works. The subheading "Criticism and interpretation" is quite common for authors and works, and it is going to be the primary subheading used for secondary sources, such as scholarly books and commentaries.

Since each record can have multiple subject headings assigned to it, the numbers can be misleading. While totaling the results for each heading in the above list seems to suggest that there are around ninety different items available on Geoffrey of Monmouth, the actual number of items represented is much smaller. Adding multiple subject headings to records makes them easier to find and can lead searchers to other helpful headings to try.

CALL NUMBERS AND THE ART OF BROWSING

Once relevant items are located, it is always worthwhile to browse nearby books. Call number systems used in libraries (usually either Library of Congress or Dewey Decimal) assign each item a number based on the subjects the books cover. It can be particularly useful to discover the call number range for a particular era, genre, or author. For example, works by and about William Langland are given a Library of Congress Call Number of PR 2015. All the books found in that location will be relevant to studying William Langland. One could expect works about near contemporaries like Chaucer, Hoccleve, and Layamon to be found by moving left or right through the shelves, providing chronological and cultural context to the author in question.

While some scholars insist on the merits of browsing library shelves in the hopes of serendipitously finding the perfect book, the changing landscape of library collections is starting to reduce the effectiveness of this method. Since browsing depends on books being on the shelf, it necessarily excludes anything checked out, and it can miss important items kept in different locations, such as special collections or separate areas for oversized material. As libraries move toward off-site storage and electronic books, entire sections of the collection will never be found by a browser. Catalogs do frequently allow virtual call number browsing, which shows what items would be near an item of interest. Browsing also necessarily limits the researcher to the holdings of a single library, which excludes material that may be available from other affiliated libraries. Even the best collections have gaps. Using some of the tools described below opens up pathways to material all over the world.

UNION CATALOGS

Center for Research Libraries. www.crl.edu (accessed 22 May 2019).

Copac. www.copac.ac.uk (accessed 22 May 2019).

Library of Congress and the National Union Catalog Subcommittee of the Resources Committee of the Resources and Technical Services Division, American Library Association. *National Union Catalog, Pre-1956 Imprints: A Cumulative Author List Representing Library of Congress Printed Cards and Titles Reported by Other American Libraries*. 754 volumes. London: Mansell, 1968–1981.

WorldCat. OCLC. www.oclc.org/worldcat.en.html.

WorldCat.org. www.worldcat.org (accessed 22 May 2019).

Union catalogs are the collective holdings of participating libraries for the purpose of sharing resources. The libraries can be local, state, national, or even international. Many institutions form consortia to share resources at the local or state level. The advantage of a union catalog is the ability simultaneously to search the holdings of multiple institutions and to request circulating items through interlibrary loan (ILL). As long as a title is not a non-circulating item—a reference title, database, rare book, ebook, etc.—the item can be requested through ILL from the researcher's home institution library.

While there is no single catalog that contains every work ever published, OCLC's **WorldCat** comes close. WorldCat is a union catalog with over two billion holdings for books, journals, dissertations, archival materials, manuscripts, microforms, visual materials, electronic resources, maps, digital objects, sound recordings, computer files, databases, and websites in over four hundred languages. WorldCat is a cooperative catalog in that various libraries upload their records to be searched and shared. WorldCat can be used to discover sources, and it also can display how many and which libraries hold that item around the world. However, there are a couple of caveats the researcher should note. First, libraries in the United States make up, by far, the largest source of holdings, followed by the United Kingdom, Canada, and most European countries. The collections of many university and national libraries around the world are not in WorldCat. Second, even though a member institution may be represented in WorldCat, the researcher should not assume that *all* material at the holding institution is available in the catalog. For example, it is common for a variety of reasons for research libraries not to have all their rare books in their library catalog; consequently, the researcher will not find some of these records in WorldCat. Even with these two shortcomings, WorldCat can still open up discovery of objects that could easily go undetected if searching is limited to local catalogs. A search for a particular title printed in 1477, *WHan that Apprill with his shouris sote and the droughte of marche hath . . .* by Geoffrey Chaucer, yields seven records covering electronic, microform, and manuscript formats. Examining the first record (figure 3.8) provides a wealth of information. The researcher can determine that the title is available electronically as an ebook through *Early English Books Online*, a ProQuest subscription database. The database also has a "Related Item" search option available in each record if the researcher is looking for variants of the same edition. Incidentally, the work was printed by William Caxton, who was the first person to introduce the printing press to England in 1476. The notes section states that this work is part of *Canterbury Tales*, that it is listed in the *Short Title Catalogue* (a standard list of books available in England between 1473 and 1800), and that the original can be found in the British Library.

The advanced search option offers Boolean searching, field-limiting searching, and searching that limits by year, language, and number of libraries. An additional important feature on the advanced search page is the ability to limit the search to the researcher's own library using a unique three-letter code. For example, our home institution, the Catholic University of America, has the code DCU. The code can be found at the Online Computer Library Center (OCLC) website (www.oclc.org/contacts/libraries.en.html). It should be noted, however, that two other libraries at Catholic University have separate codes: The Dufour Law Library (DCV) and the Oliveira Lima Library (LI2). Using one code does not necessarily represent all the holdings at that institution. Finally, WorldCat has an expert searching option that allows the researcher to build a search simultaneously combining truncation, wildcards, Boolean operators, adjacent features, and field-code limitations. There are more than eighty-five fields that the researcher can use to limit a search, a useful feature for a database with over three hundred million records.

Researchers who are not affiliated with an institution that has a subscription to WorldCat can still use the free public option, **WorldCat.org**. The researcher can retrieve the same records, but the basic and advanced search options are less robust. The advanced options provide searches for keyword, accession number, author, ISBN/ISSN, journal source, subject, and title; further limiters include year, audience, content, format, and language. The retrieved records are in short form compared with the records found in the subscription database. For example, the same search for Chaucer's work, *WHan that Apprill with his shouris sote and the droughte of marche . . .* , yields the same seven results with the particular record being much shorter (figure 3.9). A nice feature of the public version is that if the researcher is in the United States, upon entering her zip code, the records will list the closest library (that has a subscription to WorldCat) that also has a copy of that title. Since OCLC and Google teamed up in 2008, all the records in WorldCat can be searched and retrieved by searching Google as well.

Since WorldCat does not list every item at a particular institution simply because that institution has not cataloged all of its material, the researcher should be aware of the ***National Union Catalog, Pre-1956 Imprints: A Cumulative Author List Representing Library of Congress Printed Cards and Titles Reported by Other American Libraries*** as an alternative to finding editions of older works. According to a study done in 2008,[1] approximately 25 percent of the records in this print reference work are not found in WorldCat, thus making it still relevant. Many libraries have withdrawn or moved their sets to off-campus storage, which may inhibit use. A scanned copy is available freely through HathiTrust, but text searching in this format is limited.

WHan that Apprill with his shouris sote and the droughte of marche hath p[er]cid e rote ...

Geoffrey Chaucer
1477
English Internet Resource; Microform; Computer File; online resource ([748] p.)
[Westminster : Printed by William Caxton,

Access:	http://gateway.proquest.com/openurl?ctx_ver=Z39.88-2003&res_id=xri:eebo&rft_val_fmt=&rft_id=xri:eebo:image:10360
Availability:	Check the catalogs in your library.
Libraries worldwide that own item:	123
External Resources:	Check for full text Request it via ILL Cite This Item
More Like This:	Search for versions with same title and author | Advanced options ...
Find Items About:	Canterbury tales (4,149); Chaucer, Geoffrey, (max: 23,525)
Title:	WHan that Apprill with his shouris sote and the droughte of marche hath p[er]cid e rote ...
Uniform Title:	Canterbury tales
Author(s):	Chaucer, Geoffrey, -1400.
Publication:	[Westminster : Printed by William Caxton,
Year:	1477
Description:	1 online resource ([748] p.)
Language:	English
Series:	Variation: Early English books online.
References:	STC (2nd ed.); 5082; Duff 87; Needham, P. Printer & the pardoner, Cx 17; GW 6585
Access:	Materials specified: Early English Books Online http://gateway.proquest.com/openurl?ctx_ver=Z39.88...
Note(s):	By Geoffrey Chaucer, whose name appears on [3A]5r./ An edition of: Canterbury tales./ Title from opening words of text, [A]2r./ Imprint from STC./ Signatures: [A-2I 2K10 2L-2Q 2R6 2S-2Z 3A6]./ The first leaf, [2K]10, and the last leaf are blank./ First words of text, [A]3r: Whanne they were wonne and in the grete see./ Reproduction of the original in the British Library.
Other Titles:	Canterbury tales; Whan that Apprill with his shouris sote and the droughte of marche hath percid the rote; Whanne they were wonne and in the grete see
Material Type:	Document (dct); Internet resource (url); eBook (ebk); Microfilm (mff)
Document Type:	Internet Resource; Computer File
Date of Entry:	19910927
Update:	20190306
Accession No:	OCLC: 873914443

Figure 3.8. Modified WorldCat record for *WHan that Apprill with his shouris sote and the droughte of marche . . . ,* 1477
OCLC's WorldCat, via FirstSearch interface

WHan that Apprill with his shouris sote and the droughte of marche hath p[er]cid þe rote ...

Author:	Geoffrey Chaucer
Publisher:	[Westminster: Printed by William Caxton, 1477]
Series:	Early English books online.
Edition/Format:	eBook: Document : English View all editions and formats
Rating:	(not yet rated)
Material Type:	Document
Document Type:	Book, Computer File
All Authors / Contributors:	Geoffrey Chaucer
OCLC Number:	1053298581
Notes:	By Geoffrey Chaucer, whose name appears on [3A]5r. An edition of: Canterbury tales. Title from opening words of text, [A]2r. Imprint from STC. Signatures: [A-2I 2K^{10} 2L-2Q 2R^{6} 2S-2Z 3A^{6}]. The first leaf, [2K]10, and the last leaf are blank. First words of text, [A]3r: Whanne they were wonne and in the grete see. Reproduction of the original in the British Library.
Description:	1 online resource ([748] p)
Series Title:	Early English books online
Other Titles:	Canterbury tales

Figure 3.9. Modified WorldCat record for *WHan that Apprill with his shouris sote and the droughte of marche . . . ,* 1477
WorldCat.org

For a more focused search, **Copac** is a free online catalog of items held in approximately ninety national, university, and special libraries in the UK and Ireland. The variety and types of libraries include the British Library, the National Library of Scotland, and the National Library of Wales; research libraries such as the National Art Library at the Victoria and Albert Museum; museum libraries such as the library at the Natural History Museum; unique databases such as the *Register of Preservation Surrogates* at the British Library; and last, nationally important research collections within academic libraries, for example the Warburg Institute at the University of London. Because this catalog has a narrower scope, it can be very useful for locating manuscripts and other types of less visible materials that might get lost in the massive number of resources in a tool like WorldCat. The Copac interface lacks some of the features typically found in many catalogs and databases, but it handles simple searches well, and it can be refined with the search methods

discussed in chapter 1. Looking again at Chaucer's work, *WHan that Apprill with his shouris sote and the droughte of marche* . . . , a title search yields fifteen records citing electronic, microfilm, and print copies. Furthermore, one of the records is from the *English Short Title Catalogue*. An examination of this record reveals the locations and conditions of another fifteen copies in libraries in the UK, US, and Australia.

Center for Research Libraries (**CRL**) is a consortium of universities, colleges, and independent research libraries from around the world. The mission of CRL is to preserve and make available primary source material in the humanities, social sciences, and sciences. The CRL online catalog is not technically a union catalog as all the records and material reside at the center, which is located at the University of Chicago. If your home institution is a member of the CRL network, you can borrow material through interlibrary loan. Nonmembers can borrow material, but there are restrictions. A quick search for *Beowulf* retrieved thirty-seven records; a number of the records were dissertations published outside of the United States. Other records pointed to full-text material located at Google Books and HathiTrust Digital Library.

NATIONAL LIBRARY CATALOGS

Catalogue. National Library of Ireland/Leabharlann Náisiúnta na hÉierann . catalogue.nli.ie (accessed 22 May 2019).

Explore the British Library. British Library. explore.bl.uk (accessed 22 May 2019).

Full Catalogue. National Library of Wales/Llyfrgell Genedlaethol Cymru. www.llyfrgell.cymru (accessed 22 May 2019).

Karlsruhe Virtual Catalog (*KVK*). kvk.bibliothek.kit.edu (accessed 22 May 2019).

Library of Congress Online Catalog. catalog.loc.gov (accessed 22 May 2019).

Main Catalogue. National Library of Scotland/Leabharlann Náisiúnta na h-Alba. search.nls.uk (accessed 22 May 2019).

National libraries can be viewed as the collective memory of a nation and its people. They not only serve as depositories for material published in that country, but they also collect material published elsewhere if it is relevant to their national missions. In this capacity, national libraries often become the home of many manuscripts and other rare treasures. Though they generally do not lend their material, either directly or through other institutions, their catalogs can be excellent opportunities to discover particular works or editions that may not be available elsewhere.

National libraries also exert significant influence on bibliographic control, both in their home countries and internationally. This somewhat invisible function is very important when looking at how to search different library catalogs. National libraries are usually the first place to create bibliographic records for books published in those countries, and that information is shared and copied by other libraries. If the book was submitted to the national library before publication, this information (e.g., in the United States, it is called the Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data) can generally be found printed inside the book, usually on the back of the title page. This sharing of bibliographic information fosters consistency between library catalogs and allows researchers to use the same strategies across different tools.

The British Library's online catalog is a critical tool for research on any era of British history or literature. Recently rebranded as ***Explore the British Library***, the online catalog uses a discovery layer to allow users to search the library's book holdings and the *British National Bibliography*, as well as journal articles and some archival material. A separate catalog is available for searching the unrivaled manuscript and archival collections, which will be discussed in detail in chapter 7. The catalog is designed primarily for keyword searching, but the advanced search does give several options for more targeted searching. It should be noted, however, that using the "Place Name" and "Abstract" searches can be misleading since these fields are not consistently present in all records. Selecting a specific "Material Type" (Articles, Books, Newspapers, Maps, etc.) can be an easy way to focus a search and eliminate unwanted results. Also of note, results include links to "related resource," which can be quite useful, but should definitely not be depended on to locate every related resource available at the British Library.

Though the library itself may be out of reach—even those in London need to apply for a special pass to use the collection—it is an excellent discovery tool, and some items that may be unique can be copied, in full or part, and delivered on demand. Requests for copies can be made directly from the catalog by using the "I want this" link, and requests are handled by the British Library Document Delivery Service. Due to copyright restrictions, not everything is available for copying, but the catalog allows searches to be limited by access option, including "Purchase a Copy" for those items that can be obtained in this way. Once an item of interest is identified, checking local library collections using WorldCat may be a more efficient option. Due to the high volume of requests, it is often much faster to use local interlibrary loan services, but for rare or uniquely held items, this service can greatly benefit researchers who are unable to access the material in person.

The library catalogs of the National Libraries of Wales, Scotland, and Ireland may also be fruitful places to search, particularly when researching a topic relevant to those regions. While much of their holdings pertaining to Anglo-Saxon and medieval English literature are duplicated by the British Library, this cannot be taken as a given. The ***Full Catalogue*** of the National Library of Wales, for example, has a significant manuscript collection and contains many relevant, locally produced theses and dissertations that are not available in the British Library. The ***Catalogue*** of the National Library of Ireland and the ***Main Catalogue*** of the National Library of Scotland similarly contain scholarly works relevant to early English literatures. Researchers scouring catalogs to locate every manuscript or printed edition of a text would be foolish to overlook these major collections.

Though technically not a national library, the United States Library of Congress serves many of the same functions. The ***Library of Congress Online Catalog*** contains more than 158 million items in a great variety of formats and languages. The library has also been actively digitizing many of its out-of-copyright holdings and making them available freely online. In order to give users a richer experience, the library recently unveiled a new *Discover* interface that allows simultaneous searching of their book holdings along with other material available online through their web portal. This site has a default setting to only display "Available Online" items, but this can be changed to show everything. Like the British Library, the Library of Congress does not lend out its material, but the catalog can serve as a great discovery tool to identify books that may be accessible elsewhere.

The ***Karlsruhe Virtual Catalog*** (***KVK***) is neither a union catalog nor a national catalog. Designed as a metasearch engine, the *KVK* allows for concurrent searching across union catalogs in Germany, other European countries, Israel, Russia, Canada, and the United States. This type of "federated searching" is not ideal since it is difficult to come up with keywords that would be useful in catalogs in multiple languages. However, the *KVK* can be a good way to find very specific items or to discover the existence of particular editions of a text. A quick search across the German catalogs for Chaucer's *WHan that Apprill with his shouris sote and the droughte of marche* yielded five records. The researcher can search WorldCat.org through the *KVK*; the same search for Chaucer's work yielded three records as opposed to seven records using WorldCat.org directly, which may indicate some differences in the way the search is being executed through the *KVK*. Other features of the *KVK* include the option of searching across multiple ebook platforms and book trade catalogs; HathiTrust, Internet Archive, Google Books, and the German Digital Library are the more popular listings available.

DISCOVERY TOOLS AND THE FUTURE OF LIBRARY CATALOGS

In order to give their patrons the best possible searching experience, libraries have been moving to the use of discovery layers. These interfaces are offered by a number of commercial vendors, and rather than replacing the library catalog, they enhance it by allowing a researcher to search once across multiple platforms—library catalog, article databases, newspaper archives, etc. To the user, it is not always clear that this layer is in place since it looks and acts very much like a library catalog but includes records for journal articles and other types of material not typically searchable in a catalog. This can be a convenient way to collect different types of resources quickly, but it is important to understand what these new interfaces are doing.

Because of the variety of material found with these tools, the researcher's search strategy cannot be approached like a traditional library catalog. Rather than indexing defined fields such as titles, authors, and subjects, discovery layers combine library catalog data with indexes of database records, full-text journal and newspaper articles, and ebooks. Depending on the specificity of the search terms, users may find themselves looking at literally millions of results that do not seem relevant. Search results can be refined using facets. These are typically shown along the left side of the search results and can narrow a search to certain material types, date ranges, languages, and subjects. The facets function very similarly to the kinds of categories and options found on online shopping sites like Amazon.com. Using the appropriate limiters can be of great assistance in locating relevant material.

Despite their ease of use, discovery layers should not always be the primary means of access to scholarly material. Serious literary scholarship is better served by using the discipline-specific resources discussed in chapter 4. This is not to say that discovery layers should be avoided completely. Certainly, in the spirit of casting a wide net, discovery layers can uncover hidden gems that have been overlooked by the standard tools, either because they are published in unexpected places or because they are not adequately represented in the library catalog or article database. Since these tools are still relatively new, it is expected that they will continue to evolve over the next several years in order to meet the needs of the end-users.

USING SPECIAL CHARACTERS IN LIBRARY CATALOGS

Though online library catalogs have come a long way in delivering the best user experience possible, they are not without their limitations. One of these

limitations often arises with how they handle non-standard characters, including diacriticals such as accents and umlauts. This can be a problem with Anglo-Saxon works. Many catalogs cannot process Anglo-Saxon letters Eth (ð) and Thorn (þ). As seen with the *Widsið* example, catalogs use standardized titles to get around this, but entering the original character will often cause the search to fail. It may be necessary to find a transliteration before searching or try variants to make sure the best results are being located. The newer discovery layers and catalogs tend to handle non-standard characters much better than traditional catalogs by supporting Unicode entry and matching against different data sources.

CONCLUSION

Online library catalogs are, in many ways, still a work in progress. Their physical card-based antecedents have all but vanished, but the basic structure has remained. Understanding how these catalogs work can lead to a more fruitful research experience.

New tools are emerging to give users a Google-like experience, and in some places, they have already replaced the basic online catalog. These enhanced features still pose some problems for serious researchers and can muddle what should be a simple task. The tools and interfaces constantly change, making it crucial to learn search techniques that can be applied in any library environment. Consulting with research librarians is a reliable way to make sure you are up to date on your resources and techniques.

NOTE

1. Christine DeZelar-Tiedman, "The Proportion of *NUC Pre-1956* Titles Represented in *RLIN* and OCLC Databases Compared: A Follow-up to the Beale/Kafadar Study," *College and Research Libraries* 69, no. 5 (September 2008): 401–6.

Chapter Four

Bibliographies, Indexes, and Annual Reviews

Bibliographies, indexes, and annual reviews are the backbone of scholarly research. These important tools will provide access to a wide range of primary, secondary, and tertiary sources, including books, book chapters, journals, journal articles, reviews, conference proceedings, dissertations, encyclopedias, dictionaries, guides, handbooks, and unpublished manuscripts. A bibliography is a list of publications that center around a subject, person, or other collecting principle. An index is an alphabetical listing of select items arranged by author, title, or subject. An annual review contains an annual assessment of scholarship recently published. While a bibliography can never be completely comprehensive, it behooves the researcher to read the introduction of the work to determine the scope, coverage, and range to ascertain what has been gathered and, just as important, what has been excluded.

There are three types of bibliography: enumerative, analytical, and annotated. An enumerative bibliography lists references arranged by author, subject, date, or some other scheme. The list will have a common theme such as a topic, language, or time period. An analytical bibliography deals with the physical dimensions of a book, its historical origins, and the comparative analysis of the book with the original manuscript. The purpose of an annotated bibliography is to comprise a review of literature on a subject, to list the types of sources available, and to identify areas for further research. An annotated bibliography may be selective or comprehensive in its coverage. A selective annotated bibliography includes just those items that are best for the topic, while a comprehensive (or exhaustive) annotated bibliography attempts to identify everything available on a subject or topic. Annotations accompany entries that describe, explain, and evaluate each entry in terms of quality, authority, and relevance.

Bibliographies can take a number of different forms. They can appear at the end of a book, be found in a journal issue, consist of multivolume monographs,

or constitute entire databases. Once the researcher has determined the type of bibliography needed, reading the introduction to the bibliography will explain why the bibliography exists and the editor's guidelines for including/excluding material. The editor may limit the bibliography by scope, time frame, type of work (e.g., primary sources, secondary sources, and tertiary sources), language, nationality, or other criteria. The two major bibliographies for conducting literary research are *Modern Language Association International Bibliography of Books and Articles on the Modern Languages and Literatures* and the *Annual Bibliography of English Language and Literature*, known by their acronyms *MLAIB* and *ABELL*. Originally in print form dating from the early 1920s, these bibliographies are now searchable databases. The databases allow for multiple access points in finding information.

The annual review is a type of bibliography that summarizes and evaluates scholarship in a given year. Annual reviews are selective and narrative (usually in essay form) in nature. They highlight the best scholarship in the past year, summarize literary trends, and outline gaps in research that can be opportunities for future scholarship. An example of an annual review is *The Year's Work in English Studies*, discussed below.

GENERAL LITERARY BIBLIOGRAPHIES

Annual Bibliography of English Language and Literature (*ABELL*). Leeds, UK: Maney Publishing for the Modern Humanities Research Association, 1921–. Annual. www.chadwyck.com.

Garland Reference Library of the Humanities. New York: Garland Publishing, 1969–2000.

JSTOR: The Scholarly Journal Archive. www.jstor.org.

MLA International Bibliography of Books and Articles on the Modern Languages and Literatures (*MLAIB*). New York: Modern Language Association of America, 1922–. Annual. Check www.mla.org/bib_electronic for a list of online vendors.

Periodicals Archive Online (PAO). Ann Arbor, MI: ProQuest/Chadwyck-Healey. pao.chadwyck.com.

Project MUSE. Baltimore, MD: Johns Hopkins University Press. muse.jhu.edu.

Watson, George, ed. *The New Cambridge Bibliography of English Literature*. 2nd edition. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1974.

Year's Work in English Studies (*YWES*). Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1921–. Annual. www3.oup.co.uk/ywes.

Every academic discipline has at least one subject-specific bibliography that is well established in the field and serves as the go-to resource for researchers.

English literature has been blessed with two such established bibliographies: the *MLA International Bibliography of Books and Articles on the Modern Languages and Literatures* (*MLAIB*) and the *Annual Bibliography of English Language and Literature* (*ABELL*).

The ***MLA International Bibliography*** (***MLAIB***) began in 1921 as an annual part of the journal *PMLA: Publications of the Modern Language Association*. From 1921 to 1955, it was known as the "American Bibliography" because it was limited only to American scholarship pertaining to American, English, Germanic, and Romance languages and literatures. In 1957, this focus expanded to include the work of international scholars, which increased the usefulness of the bibliography; the name was changed to "Annual Bibliography." In 1964, the full title became *the MLA International Bibliography of Books and Articles on the Modern Languages and Literature*. The *PMLA* contained the bibliography until 1968. From 1968 onward, the bibliography became a separate publication. In 1982, the *MLA Thesaurus of Linguistic, Literary, and Folkloric Terms* was introduced to be the controlled vocabulary of the bibliography. The *MLAIB* has been published exclusively online since 2008. The bibliography has partnered with JSTOR, Project MUSE, and ProQuest's *Dissertations and Theses* database to have links connecting to articles and dissertations in those databases. The bibliography has over 355,000 digital-object identifiers, and it partners with ORCiD, an open-access registry of unique researcher identifiers, to link research outputs to these identifiers.

The database contains more than 2.8 million records that comprise print and electronic books, book chapters, journal articles, dissertations, conference papers and proceedings, critical editions and translations, and some scholarly websites. However, fiction, poetry, creative writing, book reviews, obituaries, textbooks, self-publications, master theses, and unpublished dissertations are excluded. The scope of the database is extensive, including languages and literatures, linguistics, folklore, literary theory, criticism, rhetoric and composition, dramatic arts (e.g., theater, film, radio, television, opera, video), the history of printing and publishing, and pedagogy. Topics not covered are classical Greek or Latin literature, religious texts (such as the Bible), aesthetics, human behavior, and communication.

The indexing of *MLAIB* is based on the *MLA Thesaurus* and thus has a robust selection of subject terms. The database can be searched through a basic or advanced interface and recognizes Boolean operators, truncation, and nesting. The researcher can use keyword searching in the basic and advanced interfaces. The search will examine the entire record for a match. If there are too many results, additional search terms may be needed. Another way to narrow results is to use the "Advanced Search" page. This interface allows for searching numerous field options (over thirty-four fields are provided),

which can be invaluable in refining a search. These fields can be combined in many ways to limit precisely the results. For example, to limit a search to a particular subject, use the following fields: "Subject Literature," "Descriptor (Subjects)," "Period," "Primary Subject Author," "Primary Subject Work," and "Genre" categories or by using the thesaurus subject terms. Other search fields include "Abstract," "Folklore Topic," and "Scholarly Theory or Discipline," among many others. One can refine an inquiry by using search modes and expanders or by limiting searches to full text only, publication type, period, excluding dissertations, language, genre, publication date, peer-reviewed, electronic publication, and references available.

The researcher will need to consult the thesaurus and the "Names as Subject" index to determine the authoritative descriptors for topics and persons relevant to his search. The *Thesaurus* has over 50,000 terms that are used to standardize the variety of topics in the database. Descriptors related to medieval English literature include "Anglo-Saxon writers," "Anglo-Saxon literature," "Anglo-Saxon manuscripts," "English language (Old)," "Middle English verse," "Middle English period," and "1100–1499 Middle English period." Since there is no precise descriptor for medieval English literature, the researcher will need to combine a descriptor, like "Beowulf (character)," with a time frame, "400–1099." This search *(DE "400–1099 Old English period") AND (DE "Beowulf (character)")* resulted in forty-eight hits. The search may be improved by using one descriptor and using a keyword search (for example, keep the *400–1099 Old English period* and use *Beowulf* as a keyword. The "Names as Subject" index is useful in ensuring the accuracy of a name, but it can be difficult in finding the correct rendition. For example, the author of *Brut* has been known by a number of names over the centuries: "Laʒamon," "Laghamon," "Lawemon," and even "Lawman." However, the most popular version of his name is "Layamon." Retrieving the proper name from the index can be a taxing affair, so the researcher will need to perform several search attempts.

To illustrate how to search effectively the *MLAIB* for a particular topic such as *lyrical poetry* and to limit the results to Middle English literature, use the search term *lyric** and combine it with the time descriptor "1100–1499 Middle English period." In the resulting 204 hits, the following article was retrieved: "Context, Form, and Text in *Lack of Steadfastness*" by Julia Boffey and A. S. G. Edwards. Shown in figure 4.1, the record for this article is quite detailed and suggests additional access points to research. The search terms are highlighted; note that this article was retrieved because of the keyword *lyrics* in the abstract. Any other way of searching the database would have not retrieved this record since the *MLAIB* only began adding abstracts to select records in 2008. The researcher should keep this in mind if he wants to search the abstracts as well.

Another excellent starting point for graduate students beginning their bibliographical research is the ***Annual Bibliography of English Language and Literature*** (***ABELL***), a product from the United Kingdom compiled by the Modern Humanities Research Association. While the *MLAIB* covers the broad spectrum of modern languages and literatures, *ABELL* focuses exclusively on the English language and literatures. *ABELL* began publishing in 1920 and contains scholarly material written on various areas of the English language, philology, and literature. Subject coverage includes English language (e.g.,

Context, Form, and Text in Lack of Steadfastness

Authors:	Boffey, Julia; Edwards, A. S. G.
Affiliations:	Boffey, Julia (Queen Mary. University of London); Edwards, A S. G. (University of Kent Canterbury)
Source:	Chaucer Review A Journal of Medieval Studies and Literary Criticism (ChauR) 2018; 53 (2): 235-246. [Journal Detail]
Notes:	English summary
Peer Reviewed:	Yes
ISSN:	0009-2002 1528-4204 (electronic)
General Subject Areas:	*Subject Literature*: English literature *Period*: **1100-1499 Middle English period** *Primary Subject Author*: Chaucer, Geoffrey (1340/5-1400) *Primary Subject Work*: Lak of Stedfastnesse *Classification*: poetry
Subject Terms:	textual criticism; attribution of authorship
Document Information:	Publication Type: Journal Article Language of Publication: English Update code: 201802 Sequence Numbers: 2018-1-1254
Abstract:	The surviving witnesses to Lack of Steadfastness, conventionally included among Chaucer's **lyrics**, raise a number of textual and contextual problems mostly overlooked in discussion of Chaucer's short poems. This article explores the evidence tor authorship and attribution, the instability of the forms in which the poem survives, and its tendency to disintegration into shorter units or to amalgamation in longer runs of undifferentiated poems.
Electronic Access:	http://muse-jhu-edu.proxycu.wrlc.org/article/688393
Accession Number.	2018581280

Figure 4.1. Modifed *MLAIB* record for "Context, Form, and Text in *Lack of Steadfastness*"

MLAIB, via EBSCOhost

syntax, phonology, lexicology, semantics, stylistics, dialectology); English literature (e.g., poetry, prose, fiction, films, biography, travel writing, literary theory, studies of individual authors); English bibliography (e.g., manuscript studies, textual studies, history of publishing); and English culture (e.g., custom, belief, narrative, song, dance, material culture). *ABELL* is also an online database offered by ProQuest's subsidiary Chadwyck-Healey, which is available as a stand-alone product or as part of *Literature Online* (*LION*). *Literature Online* is cross-searchable with ProQuest journals, newspapers, dissertations, and other relevant content. *ABELL* is smaller than *MLAIB*, containing more than 960,000 records from 1892 to the present. *ABELL* lists monographs, periodical articles, critical editions of literary works, book reviews, collections of essays, and doctoral dissertations.

The interface allows searching by keyword, title keyword, subject, author/reviewer, publication details of the journal, ISBN and ISSN, and publication year. The search can be restricted to the latest update and can be limited to articles, books, or reviews. Boolean and proximity operators with nesting and truncation are allowed. Most of the fields have a "Select from a List" link so that the researcher can browse for the authoritative terms used in the database. Some subject terms listed for the main entry "English Literature" have numerous subcategories including "Middle English and Fifteenth Century: Drama and the Theatre," "Middle English and Fifteenth Century: Geoffrey Chaucer," "Middle English and Fifteenth Century: Poetry," "Middle English and Fifteenth Century: Prose," and "Middle English and Fifteenth Century: Romance."

Figure 4.2 illustrates the *ABELL* record for the same journal article found in *MLAIB*: "Context, Form, and Text in *Lack of Steadfastness*." In this case, the indexing in *ABELL* is much more detailed than the *MLAIB* with "Chaucer" being listed with "short poems" designation while *MLAIB* lists only "Poetry." This illustrates the need to search both databases using different descriptors and search terms, as a specific descriptor in *ABELL* may retrieve many citations while the same term in *MLAIB* may bear fruit, but very little in *MLAIB* unless the term is broader or less specific.

Part of a five-volume set published between 1969 and 1974, ***The New Cambridge Bibliography of English Literature*** is a revision of *The Cambridge Bibliography of English Literature* published in 1940 and the supplement published in 1957. Volume 1 (600–1660) was published in 1974. George Watson, the editor, restricts the volume to literary authors who are native or to mainly reside in the British Isles. Three periods of English literature appear in this volume: the Anglo-Saxon period (600–1100 CE), the Middle English (1100–1500 CE), and the Renaissance to the Restoration (1500–1660 CE). The volume is broken down into several sections. First, the general introduction provides an overview of bibliographies (especially

Author:	Boffey, Julia; Edwards, A. S. G.
Title:	Context, form, and text in Lack of Steadfastness.
Publication Details:	Chaucer Review (53:2) 2018, 235-46.
Publication Year:	2018
ISSN:	00092002
Subject:	English Literature: Middle English and Fifteenth Century: Geoffrey Chaucer: Separate Works: Short Poems
Bibliography:	Textual Studies
Reference Number:	2017:531838
Additional Search Terms:	Lak of Stedfastnesse Authorship Manuscript Transmission

Figure 4.2. Modified *ABELL* record for "Context, Form, and Text in *Lack of Steadfastness*"
ABELL, via Chadwyck-Healey

useful for tracking down little-known retrospective bibliographies), histories, prosody and prose rhythm, and language (syntax, phonology, morphology, syntax, place and personal names). Second, the Anglo-Saxon period (to 1100 CE) covers Old English literature, poetry, prose, and writings in Latin. The third section is the Middle English Period (1100 CE–1500 CE), and it covers romances, literature (e.g., tales, chronicles), Chaucer, education, fifteenth century, English Chaucerians, middle-Scots poets, prose, songs and ballads, and drama. The last section is the Renaissance, which will be excluded here. This resource tracks down secondary literature that may fall outside the date coverage of bibliographies like *ABELL* and the journal *PMLA* (begun in 1884). Material from the 1880s is cited with regularity, and the researcher may find this resource useful in looking at scholarship from yesteryear in tracing a scholarly debate. An examination of the entry for the English Chaucerian Stephen Hawes provides a listing of manuscripts, selections of articles, and citations for original manuscripts or printed books. The next part records the journal articles going back to 1774.

The ***Year's Work in English Studies*** (***YWES***) is an annual narrative bibliography that provides a critical evaluation of selected works published in a particular year. First published in 1921, the *YWES* covers all aspects of English literature and languages from Old English to the present. British literature dominates each volume, although American and Commonwealth literature are well represented. The chapters are arranged chronologically followed by

two chapters on American literature (pre- and post-1900), a chapter on new literatures, and a final chapter devoted to bibliography, new criticism, and reference works. Each chapter is compiled and written by a group of scholars with the author of each subsection identified. The medievalist will be interested in three chapters: "Old English," "Middle English," and "Chaucer." The chapters have remained stable over the years: volume 1 (1921) divides the chapters into "Anglo-Saxon Studies" and "Middle English"; the separate chapter on Chaucer began in 1937. The chapter on Old English is divided into eleven sections: "Bibliography"; "Manuscript Studies, Palaeography, and Facsimiles"; "Cultural and Intellectual Contexts"; "Literature: General"; "The Poems of the Exeter Book"; "The Poems of the Vercelli Book"; "The Poems of the Junius Manuscript"; "Beowulf and the Beowulf Manuscript"; "Other Poems"; "Prose"; and "Reception." The Middle English chapter is divided into fifteen sections: "General"; "Theory"; "Manuscript and Textual Studies"; "Early Middle English"; "Secular Verse"; "Religious Verse"; "Secular Prose"; "Religious Prose"; "*Piers Plowman*"; "*Sir Gawain and the Green Knight*, *Pearl*, *Patience*, *Cleanness*"; "Romance: Metrical Alliterative, Prose"; "Gower"; "Hoccleve and Lydgate"; "Older Scots"; and "Drama." The chapter on Chaucer is divided into five sections: "General"; "The Canterbury Tales"; "Troilus and Criseyde"; "Other Works"; and "Reception and Reputation." The researcher can quickly peruse the "Books Reviewed" section that ends each chapter with the major caveat that journal articles, book reviews, and reference works may also have been discussed in the chapter. Each volume ends with two indexes: a critics index and an authors and subject index. Given the fact that evaluating works and writing narrative essays about them is a time-consuming process, the volume published in a particular year covers works that were published two years prior. For example, the 2018 volume evaluated works published in 2016. Since the titles are selected for inclusion in the *YWES* and each subsection is written from a particular scholar's point of view, the researcher seeking comprehensiveness is well advised to use the *MLAIB* and the *ABELL* to ensure lesser-known works are not missed. The online subscription is available from Oxford University Press on behalf of the English Association; each chapter is downloadable separately.

Researchers can search full-text digital journal collections and be handsomely rewarded with discovering and downloading articles. However, such digital collections are not a substitute for major literary indexes, and the knowledgeable researcher will understand that **JSTOR** does not have every important journal in a particular field. JSTOR, which stands for "journal storage," is an archive of older print issues of curated journals beginning with volume 1 of a title up to an embargoed period of a few years. This moving wall means that issues not available now will be present on the site

in a few years. Currently, 2,600 scholarly journals in the humanities, social sciences, and sciences are present. The journals are organized into nineteen collections, including Asia, business, biological sciences, mathematics, and music. Under the humanities section, the collection "Language & Literature" has relevant titles for the medieval English literary scholar: *Arthuriana*, *The Chaucer Review*, *JEGP: Journal of English and Germanic Philology*, *Medieval & Renaissance Drama in England*, *Neuphilologische Mitteilungen*, and *Studies in Philology*. There are general literature journals such as the *PMLA, The Review of English Studies*, and *Speculum: A Journal of Medieval Studies* (discussed in chapter 5).

In recent years, JSTOR has added access to digital books, albeit through direct purchase or demand-driven acquisitions (DDA). DDA enables libraries to provide access to a large number of books and pay only for those that are viewed or downloaded (a sixth chapter view or fourth chapter download will trigger a purchase). JSTOR has several new tools for research, including a thesaurus for narrowing your topic; supplying datasets for text-mining journals, books, and research reports; a text analyzer for uploading your own text; and your own "my workplace" platform for personal customization. The dataset services are free to researchers.

Project MUSE, a database similar to JSTOR, offers full-text access to seven hundred journals and 56,000 books from over one hundred presses. While JSTOR captures the back issues of core journals, Project MUSE emphasizes building a collection on recent journal issues. All books are fully integrated with Project MUSE's scholarly journal content. Journals can be browsed by journal title, author, and publisher with faceted searching limits by content subscribed to by your institution, content, publisher, series, language, and research area. Some books and journals are freely available from university presses and scholarly societies and can be searched as part of the Project MUSE platform. There are several important journals that are part of Project MUSE: *Arthuriana* (1994–present), *The Chaucer Review* (2000–present), *Comitatus: A Journal of Medieval and Renaissance Studies* (2002–present), *Digital Philology: A Journal of Medieval Cultures* (2012–present), *Early Theatre: A Journal Associated with the Records of Early English Drama* (2016–present), *JEGP: Journal of English and Germanic Philology* (2009–present), and *Studies in the Age of Chaucer* (1979–present).

Periodicals Archive Online (**PAO**) is a major archive of more than seven hundred humanities and social science journals with full text back to the first issue of each title. Coverage usually ends in 2000 or 2005, depending on the title. This limitation by year is contrasted with JSTOR, which has a rolling embargo that adds a volume for each successive year. Searching the PAO is most valuable for two reasons: one, locating articles that may have been omitted

in the *MLAIB* or the *ABELL*, and two, finding articles in other humanities journals that would easily be overlooked by the medieval researcher. For example, the record for "Women in Early English Literature, 'Beowulf' to the 'Ancrene Wisse,'" published in the 1977 issue of *Nottingham Medieval Studies*, can be found in *MLAIB* but not in *ABELL* (the latter selectively indexes this title), with the full text available in PAO. Furthermore, the interdisciplinarity of PAO allows for articles on heroic sagas, such as *Beowulf*, that are not indexed in *MLAIB* and *ABELL* (e.g., *Scandinavian Studies* has many articles on *Beowulf*). PAO is searchable by twenty-two fields, including author, title, keyword, ISSN, document type, publication title, language, and year. Two additional search features worth noting: using the "anywhere except the full text" field and searching within the document. PAO has four browsable indexes: author, publication title, publication subject, and country of publication. The database uses three interfaces: a basic search, an advanced search, and a command language search; the latter interface allows the researcher to build search inquiries by combining any number of the twenty-two searchable fields.

Looking for bibliographies on individual works, authors, or themes? The ***Garland Reference Library of the Humanities*** is an interdisciplinary series covering literature, history, and the arts. There were 2,153 volumes published in the series from the mid-1970s to the late 1990s, and the series was published originally by Garland Publishing and continued later by Routledge. Many of the titles will vary in topic, subject, and range. In medieval English literature, several volumes deal specifically with the Arthurian legend, *Beowulf*, Chaucer, and the *Gawain*-poet, while other titles are more general in scope. Examples include the following: *Medieval Studies: A Bibliographical Guide* (1983); *English Magical and Scientific Poems to 1700: An Annotated Bibliography* (1979); *The New Arthurian Encyclopedia* (1996); *King Arthur: A Casebook* (1996); *Lancelot and Guinevere: A Casebook* (1996); *Literature and Law in the Middle Ages: A Bibliography of Scholarship* (1983); *Chaucer Name Dictionary: A Guide to Astrological, Biblical, Historical, Literary, and Mythological Names in the Works of Geoffrey Chaucer* (1988); *Arthurian Legend and Literature: An Annotated Bibliography* (1985 and 1995); and *Medieval Visions of Heaven and Hell: A Sourcebook* (1983). The researcher will need to use WorldCat to browse or search the series as there is no checklist of the titles on the publisher website. An advanced search in WorldCat with "Garland Reference Library of the Humanities" in the series field will yield over 9,700 records, most of them duplicates of various titles. A more effective strategy would be to combine the previous search with a specific author or work. For example, a search combining the series title and the keyword *Beowulf* will yield sixty hits for fourteen unique monographs that cover encyclopedias, bibliographies, basic readings, anthologies, and Festschrifts.

A search using *Aelfric* for Ælfric will yield eleven records for two titles (*Ælfric: An Annotated Bibliography*, reviewed later in this chapter, and *Old English Prose: Basic Readings*).

MEDIEVAL STUDIES BIBLIOGRAPHIES

Bibliographie de civilisation médiévale (*BCM*). Poitiers, France: Centre d'Études Supérieures de Civilisation Médiévale, 1958–.

International Medieval Bibliography (*IMB*). Turnhout, Belgium: Brepols, 1967–.

Old English Newsletter Bibliography. Department of English at the University of Massachusetts, Amherst, on behalf of the Old English Division of the Modern Language Association, 1967–. www.oenewsletter.org/OENDB/index.php (accessed 15 May 2019).

Oxford Bibliographies: Medieval Studies. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2012–.

Searching secondary sources in medieval studies can yield unique results that may not be found in exclusively English literature resources. Taking a broader perspective on one's research will open up other avenues of tracking down pertinent information. The ***International Medieval Bibliography*** (***IMB***) is a citation index to the European Middle Ages (400–1500). Founded in 1967 by the Medieval Academy of America, the *IMB* contains more than 475,000 records covering the following disciplines: art history, classics, English language and literature, medieval European languages and literatures, history, archaeology, theology, philosophy, Arabic and Islamic studies, music, theater and performance arts, rhetoric, and communication studies. *IMB* comprises 365,000 articles, all of which are fully classified by date, subject, and location, and provide full bibliographical records.

The ***Bibliographie de civilisation médiévale*** (***BCM***) was established by the Centre d'Études Supérieures de Civilisation Médiévale (Université de Poitiers) in 1958 and aims to cover a comprehensive, current bibliography of monographs, conference proceedings, essay collections, and Festschriften. The original *BCM* was printed in the journal *Cahiers de civilisation médiévale* until it was separated and became a stand-alone database in 2009. The *BCM* comprises 65,000 records. Every citation has been classified by date, subject, and location, with full bibliographical records. The disciplines to which the *BCM* is relevant include all aspects of history, language and literature, philosophy and theology, art history, archaeology, and the Western, Byzantine, and Islamic worlds.

Brepols offers an interface whereby the *IMB* and the *BCM* (and the *International Bibliography of Humanism and the Renaissance*) can be searched simultaneously. One can see what is indexed in both databases by perusing a list of journals and book series. Search options include a simple and advanced search. The simple search can be by keyword, theme (academic discipline), or geographical area. The advanced search offers free-word search, bibliographical search (with browsing options), and a thematic search (general and specific). A quick search using *Chaucer* retrieved 5,999 records. Records have links to profiles of the scholars and the journals.

Oxford Bibliographies: Medieval Studies explores European and Mediterranean civilization from the fourth to the fifteen centuries. Subjects include history, literature, art, archaeology, religion, and gender studies. Each entry has a general introduction, a bibliography, and a listing of primary and secondary texts, critical editions, translations, commentaries, articles, and websites. Each citation in an entry has an evaluative annotation. Once in a record, the sidebar has a summary of related articles. Forthcoming articles can be set up as useful alerts for the researcher. Not meant to be exhaustive, the *Oxford Bibliographies* provide an excellent starting point for a researcher new to a topic or author.

The *Old English Newsletter* (*OEN*) was established in 1967 to offer its readers news, reports, articles, and information about Anglo-Saxon studies. Each year, the *OEN* publishes a bibliography in print. This print version has become the ***Old English Newsletter Bibliography*** database. The bibliography records recent work on Anglo-Saxon literature, language, history, art, archaeology, and other topics. The database currently contains the *OEN* annual bibliographies from 1973 to 2009—more than 23,000 entries—with new items added annually. Search options include browsing by subject, scanning for keywords using Boolean operators, or searching in specific fields. Results can be sorted by author, title, or date. Each record has a list of book reviews and links to related items.

MEDIEVAL ENGLISH BIBLIOGRAPHIES AND INDEXES

Pulsiano, Phillip. *An Annotated Bibliography of North American Doctoral Dissertations on Old English Language and Literature*. East Lansing, MI: Colleagues Press, 1988.

Robinson, Fred C., and Stanley Greenfield. *A Bibliography of Publications on Old English Literature to the End of 1972*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1980.

Tajima, Matsuji. *Old and Middle English Language Studies: A Classified Bibliography 1923–1985*. Philadelphia, PA: John Benjamins Publishing Company, 1988.

Fred Robinson and Stanley Greenfield's ***A Bibliography of Publications on Old English Literature to the End of 1972*** has been a seminal work in Old English studies since 1980. It provides a comprehensive listing of books, editions, articles, and reviews from the fifteenth century to 1972. The focus of this work is exclusively on Old English literary texts, so other literatures (e.g., Anglo-Latin) and subjects that concentrate on linguistics and history are excluded. Entries are listed chronologically into three divisions: general works, poetry, and prose. Some have brief annotations and entries for book list reviews. Indexes include authors, reviewers, and subjects. Using this resource in combination with the *Old English Newsletter Bibliography* and the bibliography in *Anglo-Saxon England* (see chapter 5), the medieval English scholar can feel confident that he is building a comprehensive literature review, whatever the topic in Old English may be.

Published in 1988, ***An Annotated Bibliography of North American Doctoral Dissertations on Old English Language and Literature*** was born out of frustration and a desire to avoid weeks of searching for a topic that had not been researched. Phillip Pulsiano lamented the time that students and scholars had to go through volumes of *Doctoral Dissertations Accepted by American Universities*, *Dissertation Abstracts International* (*DAI*), *Comprehensive Dissertation Index*, and the *MLAIB*, so he compiled this source. While the online versions of *DAI* and *MLAIB* are predominate in dissertation research today, the researcher can still find value in consulting Pulsiano's work. The advantage of consulting this work, especially for older titles, are the annotations. For example, both Pulsiano's work and *DAI* (*MLAIB* began in 1921) cite James Waddell Tupper's dissertation "Tropes and Figures in Anglo-Saxon Prose," which was defended in 1895. However, *DAI* does not provide an abstract of the dissertation, and the record contains a note that states that it is not viewable or for sale. On the other hand, Pulsiano provides an annotation of the dissertation and notes that the dissertation was published as a monograph by John Murphy and Co. in 1897. Since the book is in the public domain, a search in HathiTrust located the complete work, which appears to be a reprint of the dissertation (many dissertations are revised before being published by third-party publishers). Pulsiano's work identifies dissertations written in the United States, Canada, and a few foreign dissertations listed in the *DAI* (mostly from Germany and England). The work has 903 citations and is divided into three sections: general works, poetry, and prose. A typical entry has the author's name, title, university, year, number of pages, the director's name, the DAI number, an annotation, and the order number if one wants to order a copy from ProQuest Dissertations & Theses Global. There are two appendixes: the first lists titles that Pulsiano received too late for inclusion in the work; the second lists homilies that have been edited and/or

translated in dissertations with the manuscript number referencing *The Catalogue of Manuscripts Containing Anglo-Saxon*.

There has not been a significant bibliography on medieval English language studies since Arthur Kennedy's *Bibliography of Writings on the English Language* was published in 1929. Matsuji Tajima's work, ***Old and Middle English Language Studies: A Classified Bibliography 1923–1985***, seeks to fill this gap. The work lists books, monographs, dissertations, articles, notes, and reviews about Old and Middle English languages. The items have been organized into fourteen fairly broad categories: "Bibliographies"; "Dictionaries, glossaries and concordances"; "Histories of the English language"; "Grammars (historical, Old English and Middle English)"; "General and miscellaneous studies"; "Language of individual authors or works"; "Orthography and punctuation"; "Phonology and phonetics"; "Morphology"; "Syntax"; "Lexicology, lexicography and word-formation"; "Onomastics"; "Dialectology"; and "Stylistics." Scope and/or notes are added to entries when necessary. Additional notes include cross-references to related items, information on reprints, and references to reviews. An index of names contains all authors, editors, translators, and reviewers.

GEOFFREY CHAUCER (1343–1400)

Allen, Mark, and John H. Fisher. *The Essential Chaucer: An Annotated Bibliography of Major Modern Studies*. Boston: G. K. Hall, 1987.

Hahn, Thomas, ed. *Chaucer Bibliographies*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1983–.

Geoffrey Chaucer (1343 CE–1400 CE) is the most studied author of Middle English. The scholarship for his work and the criticism since the early fifteenth century is extensive. Rather than being comprehensive, the titles included in this section are designed to assist the researcher in getting started in building an understanding of the types of resources available.

The ***Chaucer Bibliographies*** is a monographic series published by the University of Toronto since 1983. Each volume provides a complete listing and assessment of scholarship and criticism on the writings of Geoffrey Chaucer, his life, and historical context. Each volume is an annotated bibliography covering one, two, or three titles in Chaucer's canon. Nine titles have been published so far: *Chaucer's Lyrics and Anelida and Arcite: An Annotated Bibliography, 1900 to 1980* (1983); *Chaucer's Romaunt of Therose and Boece, Treatise on the Astrolabe, Equatorie of the Planetis, Lost Works, and Chaucerian Apocrypha: An Annotated Bibliography, 1900–1985* (1988); *Chaucer's General Prologue to the Canterbury Tales: An Annotated*

Bibliography, 1900 to 1982 (1990); *Chaucer's Knight's Tale: An Annotated Bibliography, 1900 to 1985* (1991); *Chaucer's Miller's, Reeve's, and Cook's Tales* (1997); *Chaucer's Wife of Bath's Prologue and Tale: An Annotated Bibliography, 1900 to 1995* (1998); *Chaucer's Pardoner's Prologue and Tale: An Annotated Bibliography, 1900 to 1995* (2000); *Chaucer's Monk's Tale and Nun's Priest's Tale: An Annotated Bibliography, 1900 to 2000* (2009); and *Chaucer's Squire's Tale, Franklin's Tale, and Physician's Tale: An Annotated Bibliography, 1900 to 2005* (2017). For older bibliographies on Chaucer, consult Caroline Spurgeon's *Five Hundred Years of Chaucer Criticism and Allusion: 1357–1900*, published in 1925.

Mark Allen and John Fisher's ***The Essential Chaucer: An Annotated Bibliography of Major Modern Studies*** contains 925 studies of selected Chaucer scholarship between 1900 and 1984. The first section of the work provides general treatments, editions and editing, manuscript and texts, canon, apocrypha and lost works, bibliographies, dictionaries, social conditions, biography persona, audience and oral citation, language and prosody, style and rhetoric, poetic self-consciousness and narrative technique, prose technique, and many more. The second section covers the *Canterbury Tales*, the third covers *Troilus and Criseyde*, and the last section examines Chaucer's lesser works. Each entry has an annotation describing the work cited. The book is cross-referenced heavily. Each chapter ends with "see also" entries.

Chaucerian scholarship has a tradition of building upon other scholars' work. Dudley Griffith's *Bibliography of Chaucer 1908–1953* was planned as a supplement to Eleanor Prescott Hammond's *Chaucer: A Bibliographical Manual* (1908, reprinted in 1933) and Caroline F. E. Spurgeon's *Five Hundred Years of Chaucer Criticism and Allusion: 1357–1900*. Lorrayne Baird's *A Bibliography of Chaucer 1964–1973* is a continuation of William Crawford's *Bibliography of Chaucer, 1954–1963*, which in turn was a supplement to Griffith's work listed above. The Chaucerian researcher will need to be aware of this scholarly heritage in order to avoid overlooking something older but still relevant.

MEDIEVAL ENGLISH AUTHOR/GENRE/WORK BIBLIOGRAPHIES AND GUIDES

Andrew, Malcolm. *The Gawain-Poet: An Annotated Bibliography, 1839–1977*. New York: Garland Publishing, 1979.

Blake, N. F. *William Caxton: A Bibliographical Guide*. New York: Garland Publishing, 1985.

Blanch, Robert J. *Sir Gawain and the Green Knight: A Reference Guide*. Albany, NY: Whitston Publishing Company, 1983.

Blanch, Robert J. *The Gawain Poems: A Reference Guide, 1978–1993*. Albany, NY: Whitston Publishing Company, 2000.
Busch, Nathanael, ed. *Bibliography of the International Arthurian Society* (*BIAS*). Berlin: Walter de Gruyter, 2012–. bbsia.cellam.fr/.
Colaianne, A. J. Piers Plowman*: An Annotated Bibliography of Editions and Criticism, 1550–1977*. New York: Garland Publishing, 1978.
Fry, Donald K. Beowulf *and* The Fight at Finnsburh*: A Bibliography*. Charlottesville, VA: University of Virginia, 1969.
Hasenfratz, Robert J. *Beowulf Scholarship: An Annotated Bibliography, 1979–1990*. New York: Garland Publishing, 1993.
Howey, Ann F., and Stephen R. Reimer. *A Bibliography of Modern Arthuriana (1500–2000)*. Rochester, NY: Boydell & Brewer, 2006.
Kinsman, Robert S. *John Skelton, Early Tudor Laureate: An Annotated Bibliography c. 1488–1977*. Boston: G. K. Hall, 1979.
Reinsma, Luke Mins. *Ælfric: An Annotated Bibliography*. New York: Garland Publishing, 1987.
Short, Douglas D. *Beowulf Scholarship: An Annotated Bibliography*. New York: Garland Publishing, 1980.

Some authors, works, and genres are so important that they garner their own volumes. The volumes in this section are selective in nature and reflect the wide variety of topics that have been compiled in bibliographies. Some titles encompass centuries but are highly selective while other bibliographies focus on the last thirty years to supplement earlier scholarship. The researcher will need to pay attention to the scope, coverage, and date ranges of what is collected in each reference work. Reading the introduction to a reference work is essential in saving time, for it can expose the researcher to differences of opinion in the scholarly literature, such as what constitutes "Arthurian" literature.

Beowulf, one of the oldest complete Old English poems in Anglo-Saxon literature, contains 3,182 lines. The one extant manuscript is dated between 975 CE and 1025 CE (the text and story are much older) and is known as the *Nowell Codex*, named after a sixteenth-century scholar. The official name of the manuscript is "British Library, Cotton Vitellius A.xv" as it belonged to Sir Robert Cotton in the mid-1600s. The manuscript survived a fire in 1731. *The Fight at Finnsburh* survives as a fragment of an Old English epic poem (fifty lines) that describes a battle between two groups (the text in *Beowulf* states that they are Danes and Frisians). The fragment has similarities with *Beowulf* so they are often studied together. Donald Fry's **Beowulf *and* The Fight at Finnsburh*: A Bibliography*** is an extensive listing of 2,280 titles published up to 1967. However, scholarly works that merely mention *Beowulf* and *The Battle of Finnsburh* are not included unless they were made before 1850 or by

an important figure. A typical entry will have the standard bibliographic information (e.g., author, title, source) with reviews and references to other entries in the book. In addition, each entry is assigned labels from a classification scheme of forty categories, such as allegory, characters, imagery, mythology, meter, names, symbolism, and style. Searching the book can be cumbersome; for example, the researcher wanting to know about narrative technique would first have to familiarize herself with the classification scheme at the front of the book (in this example, the label *tec* represents narrative technique), consult the subject classification index at the back of the book to locate *tec*, and then flip back and forth between the index and the bibliography (in this case, 103 entries) to locate the relevant information. There is a line index and a short index on derivative works and audio recordings.

Since Fry's work was published in 1969, there has been a need to have periodic updates in *Beowulf* scholarship. This has been largely met by Douglas Short's ***Beowulf Scholarship: An Annotated Bibliography***, published in 1980, and by Robert Hasenfratz's *Beowulf Scholarship: An Annotated Bibliography, 1979–1990*, published in 1993. Short's work in turn builds on the work of Friedrich Klaeber's *Beowulf and the Fight at Finnsburg: Edited, with Introduction, Bibliography, Notes, Glossary, and Appendices* (1950), Elliott Dobbie's *Beowulf and Judith* (*Anglo-Saxon Poetic Records*, volume 4, 1953, see chapter 9), and Charles Wrenn's *Beowulf: With the Finnesburg Fragment* (1953). Short's book is arranged chronologically so that the scholar can perform a historical survey of the literature by tracing the evolving debate of a particular topic. The work is divided into two parts: (1) a selective listing of over two hundred books and articles published between 1705 and 1949 that have been extensively cited in the literature and therefore of great value; and (2) a comprehensive listing of scholarship from 1950 to 1978 dealing with works about prosody, archaeological sites like Sutton Hoo, linguistics, and academic study only touching incidentally on *Beowulf* scholarship (unlike Fry's work). Most of the over 1,100 entries in the bibliography are annotated, with cross-references to citations that may disagree, support, or provide alternative cases to the original source. Short's intent was to identify some of the "back-and-forth" of scholarly debate. There is a list of abbreviations for periodicals and collections, a name index, and a subject index.

Beowulf Scholarship: An Annotated Bibliography, 1979–1990 is a continuation of Short's work. Robert Hasenfratz seeks to be as comprehensive as possible for the years 1979 to 1990; the result is a list of 670 citations, arranged in chronological order with the bulk of the citations to journal articles, book chapters, and monographs. Most annotations are a paragraph or two long with annotations for monographs taking on the length of short book reviews. Furthermore, the citations to monographs list reviews found in journals.

Cross-references may refer either to Short's or Fry's works. For the researcher who is not interested in browsing the citations chronologically, the bibliography ends with indexes for authors, subjects, Old English words, and individual lines.

In addition to consulting these bibliographies, the *Beowulf* scholar is encouraged to consult Robinson and Greenfield's *Bibliography of Publications on Old English Literature to the End of 1972* and the annual bibliographies found in the *Old English Newsletter*, *Anglo-Saxon England*, and *PMLA* (see chapter 5).

The ***Bibliography of the International Arthurian Society*** (***BIAS***) began in 2012, but its origins go back much further. The *BIAS* is a continuation of the *Bibliographical Bulletin of the Arthurian Society / Bulletin Bibliographique de la Société Internationale Arthurienne* that was published from 1949 to 2011. This annual bibliography limits itself to scholarly material—namely, books, reviews, and articles. Thus, peripheral topics, popular works, general surveys found in histories of literature and most studies that deal with the Arthurian legend after the sixteenth century are excluded. Each volume has chapters that cover the scholarship of a country (e.g., Japan) or geographical region (e.g., Germany and Austria). A typical chapter lists editions and translations, critical and historical studies, reviews, and reprints. Volumes I–LI are available online. The International Arthurian Society also publishes the *Journal of the International Arthurian Society* (see chapter 5).

Ann Howey and Stephen Reimer's ***A Bibliography of Modern Arthuriana (1500–2000)*** is a comprehensive study of the Arthurian legend in modern English-language fiction. Works such as novels, short stories, poems, drama, musical drama, music, film, television, games, art, and comics are included, while publications in other languages and English translations are excluded. The authors begin with 1500 "as a convenient starting place, essentially using the various publications of Malory by Caxton and de Worde as the dividing line between the medieval and modern uses of the legend" (x). Arthurian literature is restricted to the presence of essential characters like Guenevere, Merlin, and Lancelot, and objects like Excalibur. The presence of the Grail alone does not guarantee "Arthurian" status. There are more than 4,500 entries with annotations varying in length depending on a work's importance. Each entry has three major sections: a bibliographical description, reprint information, and the annotation. The bibliographical description gives the first time the work appeared in print or book form. There is an index of Arthurian characters and themes.

Malcolm Andrew's ***The Gawain-Poet: An Annotated Bibliography, 1839–1977*** is an excellent source for understanding the evolution of scholarly thinking on the *Gawain*-poet. The four poems in the British Library MS Cotton Nero A.x. manuscript—*Pearl*, *Cleanness (or Purity)*, *Patience*, and *Sir Gawain and the Green Knight*—are thought to have come from one unknown

author, hence the designation "*Gawain*-poet." Beginning with the first edition of *Gawain* edited by Sir Frederic Madden and published in 1839, Andrew has complied a comprehensive listing of the scholarship on these four poems (1,313 citations). The bibliography is divided into three main sections: editions and translations, critical writings, and reference titles covering books, articles, and notes. The focus of the bibliography is on the scholarly nature of the poems themselves, so adaptations such as plays, children's books, records, tapes, and films have been omitted. Annotations of editions, translations, and critical works have references to reviews. There are line indexes for each of the four poems with cross-references to individual annotations.

The Gawain Poems: A Reference Guide, 1978–1993 supplements Andrew's work. An extensive listing of works that focus on all four *Gawain* poems, it contains 942 annotated entries with lengthy explanations on each poem, an informative introduction, and indexes to words, lines, subjects, and authors. The entries are arranged alphabetically by author, editor, translator, or compiler. The number of entries, covering roughly fifteen years, illustrates how much is published annually on the *Gawain*-poet. Robert Blanch has sought to identify both the essential and the peripheral.

Another annotated bibliography produced by Blanch, ***Sir Gawain and the Green Knight: A Reference Guide***, provides a historical overview of the *Gawain* scholarship from 1824 to 1978. The annotations are in chronological order beginning with Thomas Warton's *The History of English Poetry, from the Close of the Eleventh to the Commencement of the Eighteenth Century*, which contains the first passage from *Gawain* ever to appear in print. Blanch excludes brief commentaries in handbooks and anthologies, as well as editions, reviews, and translations that are not interpretive. Entries can be lengthy annotations or short references to obscure topics (e.g., one annotation to the "bob and wheel" stanza in *Gawain* cites two pages in a monograph published in 1906).

John Skelton sits on the cusp of the medieval/Renaissance traditions. He was the tutor to Prince Henry (later Henry VIII) and is considered the first major Tudor poet and playwright. Robert Kinsman's ***John Skelton, Early Tudor Laureate: An Annotated Bibliography c. 1488–1977*** is an extensive overview of Skeltonian scholarship. The annotations cover primary and secondary sources in English, French, German, and Italian and are organized in chronological order. Included are the records and documents of Skelton's life, but Kinsman is careful to explain what he excluded from the bibliography. The value of this work lies in the coverage of almost five hundred years of scholarship in chronological order illustrating Skelton's impact and influence on subsequent English literature. For example, entry 1804 has a short note about how William Wordsworth mentions referencing Skelton's influence

on part of a sonnet he wrote. Given author and title indexes, a researcher can trace the history of a poem or play from when it was first published, in what work, and if it was republished in a journal. Most citations are annotated, and many entries have references to the *Short Title Catalogue* (*STC*), a compilation of all the books published in England, Ireland, and Scotland from 1473 to 1700. The work ends with author and title indexes.

A. J. Colaianne's **Piers Plowman:** ***An Annotated Bibliography of Editions and Criticism, 1550–1977*** is a comprehensive examination of the scholarship surrounding William Langland's poem *Piers Plowman*. Colaianne claims that this is the first systematic attempt to list *Piers* scholarship and mentions some recent works that had certain limitations. The work is divided into four parts with each part beginning with an essay outlining a particular set of problems: "Biographical Studies and the Problems of Authorship," "Editions and Textual Studies: Selections and Translations," "*Piers Plowman*: Critical Interpretation," and "*Piers Plowman*: Style, Meter, and Language." For example, the first chapter examines "the evidence for a biography of Langland and problems related to the authorship of the texts" (vii). Although the work encompasses the period 1550–1977, Colaianne focuses on the years 1875–1977 with select coverage of significant importance before 1875. Works in early literature that mention *Piers Plowman* in passing are excluded. Dissertations, review articles, and book reviews are listed selectively. Most citations come with annotations that describe the work rather than offering a critical interpretation.

William Caxton (1422–1491) was a merchant, diplomat, printer, publisher, and translator. He is most famous for being the first English printer and, specifically, for printing the works of English writers such as Geoffrey Chaucer, John Lydgate, Thomas Malory, and John Gower. He also translated works such as Aesop's *Fables* as well as other writers' texts into English. ***William Caxton: A Bibliographical Guide*** is arranged into several categories: reference works; Caxton's works; selections from Caxton's works; Caxton and his work; language and style; literary background; printing, typography, binding, and bookselling; and historical background. Most entries have brief statements on why the work should be consulted. For example, in Thomas Dunn's 1940 title *The Manuscript Sources of Caxton's Second Edition of the* Canterbury Tales, N. F. Blake writes that "Caxton corrected his first edition against a second manuscript and used the corrected edition as copy for the second edition" (77). Most entries cite works in English, although French and German sources are frequently referenced. Researchers new to Caxtonian studies will find the section on his works particularly useful as the entries are heavily annotated and organized by title. Consequently, the researcher can immediately see the chronological order of each edition. There are indexes of names, titles, and manuscripts for quick consultation.

Ælfric, Abbot of Eynsham (c. 955–c. 1010), wrote his hagiographies, homilies, biblical commentaries, Old English grammar, and other genres in Old English. He is considered the most prolific and influential writer before Chaucer. Despite his influence on medieval English literature, Ælfric was misidentified with the archbishops of Canterbury, York, and Malmesbury by medieval writers who assumed that a mere abbot could not have written the *Homilies* that made Ælfric famous. It was not until the 1850s, through a series of articles by Eduard Dietrich in the *Zeitschrift für historische Theologie*, that his true identity as the Abbot of Eynsham was established. Luke Reinsma's ***Ælfric: An Annotated Bibliography*** has more than eight hundred annotations from the eleventh century to 1982. He pulls from a number of different sources, including Robinson and Greenfield's *A Bibliography of Publications on Old English Literature to the End of 1972*. Reinsma expands upon their work and other earlier bibliographies by adding dissertations on Ælfric, his Latin writings, and publications from 1972 to 1982. Chapters are listed as "Bibliographies"; "Early Scholarship"; "Ælfric: General"; "Histories and Surveys"; "Manuscripts"; Readers and Anthologies"; "Stylistic Studies"; "Syntax and Phonology"; and "Works." "Works" occupies almost half the book and is subdivided into individual works and genres with *Lives of Saints* being the largest section. The index of Ælfric's titles cites those sources listed in Roberta Frank and Angus Cameron's *A Plan for the Dictionary of Old English*, a forerunner to the *Dictionary of Old English* that provided a list of Old English titles from which the words in each title will be incorporated into the dictionary. The index on manuscripts references Neil Ker's *Catalogue of Manuscripts Containing Anglo-Saxon* (see chapter 6); such cross-references assist the researcher in tracing the provenance of a work, manuscript, or scholarly argument.

CONCLUSION

Researching an author, subject, genre, or theme to build a bibliography will require the use of multiple sources. Whether examining a bibliography in a serial monograph, skimming the references in an article in a peer-reviewed journal, performing a keyword search in a general-subject database, or perusing a subject-specific print bibliography, the researcher will need a systematic strategy. Given the "long tail" usefulness of primary, secondary, and tertiary resources in Old English and medieval English studies, the cognizant researcher will not be afraid to use dated bibliographies to uncover hidden or forgotten gems of scholarship, to trace the evolution of a historical debate, or to discover scholarly issues that were important in a particular time. The titles in this chapter are a small yet crucial list of essential bibliographies and indexes.

Chapter Five

Journals and Series

One of the main forms of scholarly communication is the academic journal. While monographs remain the standard-bearer of publication type in the humanities, journals are also important in disseminating scholarly information. Furthermore, journals are an essential medium for publishing new scholarship for scholars needing to establish or to build a presence for seeking tenure and promotion. While monographs may take years to be published, journal articles, book reviews, conference proceedings, etc. can be published much more quickly. Researchers who are seeking the latest information and discovering cutting-edge trends are best advised, then, to peruse the table of contents of journals reflecting their interests. Additionally, researchers can use email alert services by going to the publisher's website for a particular journal and subscribing to the table of contents. Also, vendors such as EBSCO have alert services whereby the researcher can set up a search (e.g., "Chaucer") to have a list of articles emailed to him on a regular basis that have the word or phrase present. This latter method is more productive as multiple databases can be searched at once, lessening the chance of overlooking relevant information. All the journals listed here will cover topics in Old and Middle English language and literature to varying degrees. Most of these journals are indexed in the *MLA International Bibliography* and the *Annual Bibliography of English Language and Literature*, but not all.

Journals serve a twofold purpose: they collect and publish scholarly articles and reviews on topics of concern to scholars who have shared interests, and thus they enhance the discovery of relevant information. Second, journals also provide the budding researcher a conduit for locating promising journals for publishing his own work. Since there are few journals that specialize exclusively in Old and Middle English language and literature topics, the researcher will need to familiarize himself with a wide variety of journals under the heading

"English Literary Studies." This variety can apply across content, time range, scope, and format. Titles that have been around since the 1800s will illustrate the evolution of a particular topic, while journals that are only a few years old will focus on concerns of contemporary research. It is important to understand that since the editorial missions of journals can change, journals that originally published heavily in medieval English subjects may publish little in that field nowadays. The range of topics in some journals may include the entirety of the English literature canon, while others will be concentrated on specific philological, historical, or critical concerns. The journals in this chapter publish medieval English language and literature topics on a regular basis. While the journals primarily publish content in English, some titles do accept articles written in another language. For this chapter, general literature journals will be examined before moving on to period-specific journals.

Monographic series play a more integral part of scholarly work in medieval studies than in other periods of English literature. The purpose of some volumes is to make manuscripts from libraries and museums accessible to a larger audience through facsimile production. Professional societies and associations, such as the Early English Text Society, published such material long before digital surrogates appeared on the web. In addition to primary source material, monographic series can provide critical editions, quality translations, critical studies, conference proceedings, and reference works, such as dictionaries and glosses.

Since the researcher will want to build his reputation, being aware of the quality of these journals and series is important in determining where he eventually will publish. Low-quality journals and predatory publishers are just some of the minefields to be avoided. The journals and series listed here are peer-reviewed, published by university presses and professional associations, and have stellar reputations. In addition to articles and reference works listed above, the print versions of journals and series offer a plethora of advertisements for future conferences, meetings, meeting minutes, society addresses, notices, calls for papers, special thematic issues, and book reviews, among other scholarly endeavors. The new researcher will find many opportunities in indulging his research interests and building his scholarly reputation.

PERIODICAL RESEARCH RESOURCES

Magazines for Libraries. New Providence, NJ: R. R. Bowker, 1969–. www.ulrichsweb.com.

MLA Directory of Periodicals. New York: Modern Language Association of America. Available online by subscription to *MLAIB* and freely available to MLA members at www.mla.org.

Ulrichsweb Global Serials Directory. New Providence, NJ: R. R. Bowker, 2001–. www.ulrichsweb.serialssolutions.com.

Researchers seeking information on a specific journal need look no further than the publisher's website. Typical information includes the scope of the journal (and what content is excluded); the number of articles, book reviews, etc. published; the frequency of publication; the editorial board; submission guidelines; and contact information. Some publishers will show the turnaround time for when an article is received, undergoes editing, and is finally published. For those interested in having their article published in a journal, perusing the contents of current and back issues will provide immediate confirmation on whether the journal is the appropriate avenue for the subject of the article. It should be noted that some journals do expand the subject and topic coverage over time, while other journals have moved away from topics as scholarly interest wanes. Knowing the journal's current focus increases the success of selecting the right journal to approach in gauging interest and, consequently, increases the success of having the article published. The following reference tools can aid in finding the right journal.

The ***MLA Directory of Periodicals*** is the only directory that concentrates exclusively on literary journals and book series; more than six thousand titles are listed. The articles in these titles are indexed in the *MLA International Bibliography*. Each journal and series entry provides information on publication details (publisher, frequency, ISSN, and date of the first issue); journal acronym; editorial policies such as the scope of the journal, peer review, publication language, acceptance of book reviews, abstracts, advertising, and copyright policy; subscription rates; contact information; submission requirements; electronic availability; acceptance rate (i.e., articles received versus accepted for publication); and the time from submission to decision to publication.

Magazines for Libraries assists librarians in collection development by identifying core journals for a particular field. Entries are arranged by subject, giving such details as the proper title, frequency, ISSN, editor contact information, and audience. Each evaluative entry provides the scope of content, the methodological approaches utilized, the types of articles published, and the type of library for which a subscription is best suited. The researcher can browse under the "literature" category or other subject categories if the research topic is multidisciplinary in nature.

Ulrichsweb Global Serials Directory is a comprehensive directory of over 300,000 scholarly, peer-reviewed, and popular journals, magazines, newspapers, newsletters, and many bibliographic indexes. Originally published in print in 1932 (with slightly different titles over the years), the online directory began in 2001 and can be searched by title keyword, subject, ISSN, publisher,

and language. Filtering and faceting options are available to limit results. Each full record displays the following information: title, ISSN, publisher, country, status, frequency, subject areas, abstracting/indexing databases, link to the publisher website, size, language, subscription options, subject, Dewey call number, LC call number, circulation, audience, and contact information. Some titles may have reviews from *Magazines for Libraries*.

GENERAL LITERATURE JOURNALS

ELH: English Literary History. Baltimore, MD: Johns Hopkins University Press, 1934–. Quarterly. ISSN: 0013-8304; E-ISSN: 1080-6547.

English: The Journal of the English Association. Oxford: Oxford University Press for the English Association, 1935–. Quarterly. ISSN: 0013-8215; E-ISSN: 1756-1124. english.oxfordjournals.org.

Literature Compass. Hoboken, NJ: Blackwell, 2004–. Monthly. ISSN: 1741-4113. literature-compass.com.

MLN. Baltimore, MD: Johns Hopkins University Press, 1961–. 5/yr. ISSN: 0026-7910; E-ISSN: 1080-6598.

Modern Language Review. Cambridge: Modern Humanities Research Association, 1905–. Quarterly. ISSN: 0026-7937; E-ISSN: 2222-4319. www.mhra.org.uk/Publications/Journals/mlr.html.

New Literary History (*NLH*). Baltimore, MD: Johns Hopkins University Press, 1969–. 4/yr. ISSN: 0028-6087; E-ISSN: 1080-661X. newliteraryhistory.org/.

Notes & Queries. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1849–. Quarterly. ISSN: 0029-3970; E-ISSN: 1471-6941. academic.oup.com/nq.

PMLA: The Publication of the Modern Language Association. Baltimore, MD: Modern Language Association, 1889–. 5/year. ISSN: 0030-8129. www.mlajournals.org/loi/pmla.

The Review of English Studies. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1925–. 5/year. ISSN 0034-6551; E-ISSN: 1471-6968. res.oxfordjournals.org/.

Speculum: A Journal of Medieval Studies. Cambridge, MA: Medieval Academy of America, 1926–. Quarterly. ISSN: 0038-7134; E-ISSN: 2040-8072. journals.cambridge.org/action/displayJournal?jid=SPC.

Journals in this section fall under two broad categories: general literature journals that cover multiple periods, countries, and languages, and English studies journals that focus on all periods and locations that fall under the umbrella of "English Studies" (e.g., titles from the former and current British Commonwealth countries). Both categories of journals address a sufficient

number of medieval English literary topics, so they are included here. Journals excluded in this section are titles that addressed medieval English topics in their early publication history but ceased doing so in the last twenty years due to a change in editorial focus, and titles such as the annual *Yearbook of English Studies* that sporadically cover medieval English topics (that is, the years 1992, 2003, and 2013 discussed medieval English themes but very little can be found in the intervening years).

The Review of English Studies publishes in all areas of English literature and the English language from the Anglo-Saxon period to contemporary literature. The subjects of the articles can range from manuscript and philological issues to new historical and interpretative insights on individual texts. Each issue has an average of eight articles and more than twenty reviews. There are usually two articles per issue devoted to medieval English topics. Recent articles published in 2017 and 2016 speak to the breadth and depth of the subjects covered: "Updating Ælfric's Homilies around the Year 1200," "Reading the *Exeter Book* Riddles as Life-Writing," "Rewriting Gregory the Great: The Prison Analogy in Napier Homily I," "Monologic Langland: Contentiousness and the 'Z Version' of *Piers Plowman*," "King Arthur in the Classroom: Teaching Malory in the Early Twentieth Century," and "An Analogue to *Wulf and Eadwacer* in the Life of St Bertellin of Stafford."

English: The Journal of the English Association contains literary criticism from the medieval period to modern times. Content includes articles, book reviews, and original poetry. The number of articles, poems, and book reviews can vary widely, from as few as two to as many as seven. The number of issues per volume increased from three to four in 2009. Although a 2015 special issue was titled "Chaucer Reconsidered" and book reviews regularly cover topics in medieval literature, the number of medieval English articles has declined with more attention in recent years focusing on literature from the Renaissance onward. *English* is still useful for finding older articles and reviews on medieval literature topics, works, and writers though. Recent articles included "*Troilus and Cressida* in the Light of Day: Shakespeare Reading Chaucer," "Re-Contextualising the *Romaunt of the Rose*: Glasgow, University Library Ms Hunter 409 and the *Roman de la Rose*," and "Dickens and Chaucer."

The first journal published in North America devoted entirely to medieval studies, ***Speculum: A Journal of Medieval Studies*** encompasses scholarship focusing on the Middle Ages in Western Europe with consideration for Arabic, Byzantine, Hebrew, and Slavic studies. While there is little dealing directly with medieval English literary topics, the journal's greatest strength for the medieval English researcher lies in the broader perspective of historical, cultural, political, and religious themes that can serve as a fundamental background for literary analysis. For example, recent issues have articles

with the following titles that would be useful for someone doing research on medieval and Arthurian romances: "Crusader as Lover: The Eroticized Poetics of Crusading in Medieval France," "'Tails' of Masculinity: Knights, Clerics, and the Mutilation of Horses in Medieval England," and "The Regulation of Sexuality in the Late Middle Ages: England and France." There are usually six articles and more than sixty book reviews per issue. Proceedings of the annual meeting and memoirs of fellows of the Medieval Academy of America are provided as well. There are also sections on brief notices and books received. Given the increased opportunities of creating digital texts and examining physical manuscripts through scientific and digital methods, a special supplementary issue was published in 2017 titled "Digital Middle Ages." Of particular note are "New Light on the *Sir Gawain and the Green Knight* Manuscript: Multispectral Imaging and the Cotton Nero A.x. Illustrations" and "Mapping Illuminated Manuscripts: Applying GIS concepts to Lancelot-Grail Manuscripts." This special issue is open access (www.journals.uchicago.edu/toc/spc/2017/92/S1).

The ***New Literary History*** (***NLH***) examines issues in literary theory, method, interpretation, and history. *NLH* analyzes the relationships between the literary and cultural texts and contemporary issues. Each issue focuses on a particular topic from different perspectives. *NLH* has an international reputation, which has been acknowledged by receiving six awards from the Council of Editors of Learned Journals. Recent special issues were "Political Theory," "Interpretation and Its Rivals," "Styles of Criticism," "The French Issue: New Perspectives on Readings from France," and "A New Europe." The medievalist will save time by searching JSTOR and Project MUSE using author and work searches rather than browsing particular issues. For example, the unobvious title of the article "Art and Orientation" compares types of space using Chaucer's *The Parliament of Fowls* and various works by Seamus Heaney. The number of articles for each issue can range from seven to twelve contributions with each article usually twenty pages or longer. A "books received" section gives a quick overview of what has been published recently.

ELH: English Literary History covers English and American literary criticism since 1934 from historical, critical, and theoretical aspects. The journal provides articles only (no book reviews) with each issue averaging eleven to twenty articles and with most articles over twenty pages long. Medieval literary authors and themes are addressed throughout the run, although there has been a noticeable shift away from medieval literature topics in recent years. Researchers looking for older articles will find *ELH* worth searching. A search for Chaucer covering 1934–2016 yielded 313 articles; *Beowulf* received forty-four hits, Middle English ninety-nine hits, and *Gawain* forty-three hits. Recent articles include "The Sociable Text of the 'Troilus Frontis-

piece': A Different Mode of Textuality," "Sewing Authorship in John Skelton's *Garlande* or *Chapelet of Laurel*," "The Brothers of Beowulf: Fraternal Tensions and the Reticent Style," and "What Spenser Took from Chaucer: Worldly Vanity in *The Ruines of Time* and *Troilus and Criseyde*."

PMLA: The Publication of the Modern Language Association began as the *Transactions and Proceedings of the Modern Language Association of America*, which was the union of the *Modern Language Association of America, Proceedings* (1884–1885) and the *Transactions of the Modern Language Association of America* (1884). Focusing on modern languages, the journal publishes articles, essays, and reviews of interest to scholars and teachers of language and literature. Correspondence, a forum, presidential address, tributes for recently deceased authors (examples include Chinua Achebe and Maurice Sendak), talks from the convention, and the minutes of the MLA executive council and delegate assembly are provided. The journal is published five times per year with the fifth volume being devoted to the association's annual convention. The directory of all members, departments, and program administrators used to be published as a separate issue; it is now part of the third issue each year. English medieval literature has been well represented since the journal's inception. Recent articles from the last five years that demonstrate the variety of topics are "From Literacy to Literature: Elementary Learning and the Middle English Poet," "Bede's Liberation Philology: Releasing the English Tongue," "The Letter of Richard Wyche: An Interrogation Narrative," "The Poetics of Waste: Medieval English Ecocriticism," "The Minster and the Privy: Rereading *The Prioress's Tale*," "Swollen Woman, Shifting Canon: A Midwife's Charm and the Birth of Secular Romance Lyric," "The Forbidden *Beowulf*: Haunted by Incest," and "Vestigial Signs: Inscription, Performance, and *The Dream of the Rood*."

For researchers who are aware of the continental origins of their primary sources (e.g., *Roman de la Rose*), the journal ***MLN*** would be useful. Launched originally in 1886 as *Modern Language Notes*, the name was shortened to *MLN* in 1962. The journal focuses on contemporary continental criticism with each issue devoted to a particular language (Italian, Spanish, German, and French) and a special issue on comparative literature. Articles (ten to fifteen per issue), book reviews, notes, and books received constitute most issues. Articles are written in English or the language of the particular issue. A search of *Roman de la Rose* in Project MUSE yielded seventy-nine hits, mostly on articles in the French and Italian issues. A quick browse of recent reviews in the French issue found such gems as "Saints at Play: The Performance Features of French Hagiographic Mystery Plays" and "Medieval Crossover: Reading the Secular against the Sacred." These results illustrate the benefits for the medievalist researcher in casting his net broadly.

Modern Language Review, published by the Modern Humanities Research Association, focuses on a wide range of topics in medieval, modern, and contemporary literature. The journal seeks to be geographically comprehensive: American, British, English Commonwealth, French, Francophone nations, Germanic, Dutch, Scandinavian, Spanish, Portuguese, Catalan, Galician, Italian, Slavonic, and the East European nations. General studies on linguistics, comparative literature, and critical theory are also covered. Many of the articles are transdisciplinary in content. Recent medieval English articles with such treats as "Gower *Agonistes* and Chaucer on Ovid (and Virgil)," "Medieval Humour? Wolfram's *Parzival* and the Concept of the Comic in Middle High German Romances," and "Language and Society in Post-Conquest England: Farming and Fishing" represent the variety of topics in the journal. Other medieval European literary traditions are present (e.g., "*Clergie*, Clerkly *Studium*, and the Medieval Literary History of Chrétien De Troyes's Romances"). A search for *Canterbury Tales* in JSTOR yielded 349 records going back to 1905, allowing a bird's-eye view of evolving Chaucerian scholarship. Each issue comprises nine to twelve articles and sixty-seven to eighty book reviews.

Literature Compass is an e-journal that covers literary criticism and history within distinct time periods. The monthly journal is divided into ten sections, although not every section makes a monthly appearance. In addition to a "Medieval" section, each volume also publishes "Renaissance," "Shakespeare," "17th Century," "18th Century," "Romanticism," "Victorian," "20th Century and Contemporary," "American," and "Global Circulation Project" sections. Each issue ranges in length of seven to fifteen articles with the occasional issue being devoted to a special topic. Recent special issues included the "Global Middle Ages" and "E-medieval: Teaching, Contemporary and the Net." While the section often deals with medieval studies on a global scale, there is plenty of material for the medieval English scholar. Recent issues include articles titled "Instruction and Information from Manuscript to Print: Some English Literature, 1400–1650," "(Old) English, Anglo-Saxon Legal Texts in the Later 11th to Mid-12th Centuries," "The English Fabliau in the 15th and 16th Centuries," "Humanist Hagiography in England, c. 1480–c. 1520," "'An Unfollowable World': Beowulf, English Poetry, and the Phenomenalism of Language," "New Old English: The Place of Old English in Twentieth- and Twenty-First-Century Poetry," and "Middle English Drama beyond the Cycle Plays."

Notes & Queries is a niche journal in English studies; its focus is on "the asking and answering of readers' questions" in brief. Founded in 1849, topics range across English language and literature, lexicography, history, and antiquarianism. Most entries are short, ranging from a long paragraph to a

couple of pages. A typical issue will have roughly forty or more notes, fifteen to twenty book reviews, and a few readers' queries with replies. Recent notes included "The *Dream of the Rood* Lines 125B–126A," "Lines from Chaucer's *Melibee* in an English Book of Hours, c. 1425–50," and "A Presumed Lost Leaf of Lydgate's *Testament*."

ANGLO-SAXON AND MEDIEVAL LITERATURE JOURNALS

Exemplaria: Medieval, Early Modern, Theory. Leeds, UK: Maney Publishing, 1989–. Quarterly. ISSN: 1041-2573, E-ISSN: 1753-3074.

Leeds Studies in English. Leeds, UK: University of Leeds, 1932–1937, 1952, 1967–. Annual. ISSN: 0075-8566. www.leeds.ac.uk/lse.

Old English Newsletter. Department of English at the University of Massachusetts, Amherst, on behalf of the Old English Division of the Modern Language Association, 1967–. Quarterly. ISSN: 0030-1973. www.oenewsletter.org/OEN/archives.php.

There are few journals that focus exclusively on medieval English literature. Most scholarly material will be in journals that address the broader range of English literature. For the scholar doing research, *MLAIB* and *ABELL* will be necessary to consult for systematic, comprehensive searching. The journals listed here discuss all aspects of English literature from the medieval period. Journals that center on a particular author (e.g., Chaucer) or genre (Arthuriana) are listed below in the authors and genres sections respectively.

Old English Newsletter is published for the Old English Division of the Modern Language Association of America by the Department of English at the University of Massachusetts, Amherst. The newsletter covers a range of topics in Old English including Anglo-Saxon literature, paleography, manuscript studies, textual criticism, history, art, archaeology, and Anglo-Latin and Anglo-Norman themes. Four issues are published annually with each issue centering on a particular theme: the first issue focuses on pedagogy; the second issue has the *Year's Work in Old English Studies*; the third issue lists scholarly resources; and the fourth issue contains the valuable bibliography of Old English (see chapter 4). Contributions comprise articles, essays, reports, and memorials. Reports include updates on the projects *Anglo-Saxon Plant Survey* and the *Dictionary of Old English* (also available on the *DOE* website). Volumes 3 (1979) to 41 (2008) are available online for free. Volumes 1 and 2 will be scanned in the future, and volumes 42 (2009) to the present are embargoed. Recent articles reflect a diversity of topics such as "Teaching Genesis B in the British Literature Survey," "Student-Centered, Interactive

Teaching of the Anglo-Saxon Cult of the Cross," "*Beowulf*, *Harry Potter*, and Teaching the Uses of Literature," "A Handlist of Anglo-Latin Hagiography," "The Library of the Venerable Bede," "Project Report: Studying Judith in Anglo-Saxon England," "Durham Cathedral Library A.IV.19," and "On Saying Yes in Cotton Vitellius Cv." *Old English Newsletter* publishes two notable serials: the new monograph series "Old English Publications" (formerly known as "OEN Subsidia") and the *OEN Bibliography* database. Recent titles of "Old English Publications" include *Germanic Literatures* by Jorge Luis Borges and *A Commentary on the Old English Version of Bede's Ecclesiastical Histor*y, a translation by Valentine A. Pakis of Frederick Klaeber's work. The *OEN Bibliography* database is comprehensive in scope and covers citations from 1973 to 2009; the bibliography also appears in the fourth issue of each volume of the *OEN*. Access is free but registration is required.

The purpose of ***Exemplaria: Medieval, Early Modern, Theory*** is to reexamine the medieval and early modern periods using contemporary critical and cultural theories and techniques. Feminism, queer theory, hermeneutics, post-structuralism, and postmodern (among others) interpretations of medieval themes and texts are examined. Each issue has a book review essay and a range of scholarly articles (from two to six). A combined issue is offered annually that focuses on a timely, special topic; this special issue may have up to twelve articles. On rare occasions, the journal features a book review forum where sixteen or more scholars review a single work, such as in 2013 when *The Swerve: How the World Became Modern* by Stephen Greenblatt was considered. Of note is the special issue in 2015, titled "Medieval Genre," which published such articles as "Dance in a Haunted Space: Genre, Form, and the Middle English Carol," "Mirror, Mirror: Princely Hermeneutics, Practical Constitutionalism, and the Genres of the English *Fürstenspiegel*," and "The Proverb as Embedded Microgenre in Chaucer and *The Dialogue of Solomon and Marcolf*." Recent scholarly articles on medieval English literature include "The 'alderbeste yifte': Objects and the Poetics of Munificence in Chaucer's *The Book of the Duchess*," "Textile Logics of Late Medieval Romance," "Silence in the Exeter Book Riddles," "Chaucer's *Pardoner* and the Jews," "*Similia similibus*: Queer Time in Thomas of Monmouth's *Life and Miracles of St William of Norwich*," "Beyond Nostalgia: Formula and Novelty in Old English Literature," "Wolves' Heads and Wolves' Tales: Women and Exile in *Bisclavret* and *Wulf and Eadwacer*," "The Phenomenology of Attention in Julian of Norwich's *A Revelation of Love*," "Sovereignty, Oath, and the Profane Life in the Avowing of Arthur," and "'Come Who So Wyll': Inclusive Poetics in Skelton's *Elynour Rummynge*."

The publishing history of ***Leeds Studies in English*** is a storied affair. Originally published from 1932 to 1937 under the title *Leeds Studies in Eng-*

lish and Kindred Languages and suspended during World War II, the next two volumes were published in 1952. The journal was reestablished in 1967 under the shorter title *Leeds Studies in English* and continues to be based in the School of English at the University of Leeds. It publishes philology articles on Old and Middle English literature, Old Icelandic language and literature, and the historical study of the English language, and reviews are sometimes included. The 2013 issue was devoted to a single topic: "Magic and Medicine: Early Medieval Plant-Name Studies." Sample articles that cover the period are "The Devil in Disguise? Scribal Remarks on Valgarðr inn grái in *Njáls saga*," "William Barnes and Frisian Forefathers," "What's in a Name? Pinning Down the Middle English Lyric," "Rosemary Proctor, An Edition of *Vainglory*," "Poetic Attitudes and Adaptations in Late Old English Verse," "Chaucer's *Melibee*: What Can We Learn from Some Late-Medieval Manuscripts?," "'Caplimet' in *Seinte Margarete* and 'Eraclea' in the *Croxton Play of the Sacrament*," "Purity and Pueritia: The Anti-Theme of Childhood Innocence in Late Medieval English Courtesy Books," "Reading between the Lines: The Liturgy and Ælfric's Lives of Saints," and "Looming Danger and Dangerous Looms: Violence and Weaving in Exeter Book Riddle." Peer-reviewed articles in each annual can vary from six to thirty-two. Back issues are freely available from the University of Leeds Digital Library at digital .library.leeds.ac.uk/view/lse/ after a two-year embargo. *Leeds Studies in English* also publishes two occasional book series: *Leeds Texts and Monographs* and *Leeds Texts and Monographs Facsimiles*. These series will be digitized and made available through the University of Leeds digital repository.

ANGLO-SAXON AND MEDIEVAL STUDIES JOURNALS

Anglo-Saxon England. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1972–. Annual. ISSN: 0263-6751; E-ISSN: 1474-0532. journals.cambridge.org /action/displayJournal?jid=ASE.

Anglo-Saxon Studies in Archaeology and History. Oxford: School of Archaeology at Oxford University, 1979–. Annual. ISSN: 0264-5254. www.arch.ox.ac.uk/assah.html.

Comitatus: A Journal of Medieval and Renaissance Studies. Los Angeles: Center for Medieval and Renaissance Studies, University of California, Los Angeles, 1970–. Annual. ISSN: 0069-6412; E-ISSN: 1557-0290. www.gsa.asucla.ucla.edu/services/publications/a-journal-of-medieval-and -rennaissance-studies.

Early Medieval Europe. Medford, MA: Wiley, 1992–. Quarterly. ISSN: 0963-9462; E-ISSN: 1468-0254. onlinelibrary.wiley.com/journal/10.1111/(ISSN)1468-0254.

Early Theatre: A Journal Associated with the Records of Early English Drama. Hamilton, Ontario: McMaster University Press, 1998–. 2/yr. ISSN: 1206-9078. Previous title: *REED Newsletter* (ISSN: 0700-9283). www.earlytheatre.org/.

English Historical Review. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1886–. 6/yr. ISSN: 0013-8266; E-ISSN: 1477-4534. academic.oup.com/her.

The Heroic Age: A Journal of Early Medieval Northwestern Europe. St. John's, Canada: Memorial University of Newfoundland, 1999–. Irregular. E-ISSN: 1526-1867. www.heroicage.org/.

Journal of Medieval History. New York: Routledge, 1975–. Quarterly. ISSN: 0304-4181; E-ISSN: 1873-1279. www.tandfonline.com/toc/rmed20/current.

The Medieval Review (*TMR*). Bloomington, IN: Indiana University, 1993–. Ongoing. ISSN: 1096-746X. Previous title: *Bryn Mawr Medieval Review*. scholarworks.iu.edu/journals/index.php/tmr/index.

Medium Ævum. Oxford: Society for the Study of Medieval Languages and Literature, University of Oxford, 1932–. 2/yr. ISSN: 0025-8385. medium aevum.modhist.ox.ac.uk/journal.shtml.

Traditio: *Studies in Ancient and Medieval History, Thought, and Religion*. New York: Fordham University Press, 1943–. Annual. ISSN: 0362-1529; E-ISSN: 2166-5508. legacy.fordham.edu/traditio/.

Studying and researching medieval English language and literature requires having a broader understanding of the British and continental milieu of the time period. The journals in this section deal with historical, linguistic, geographical, and cultural themes. The subjects covered include art, language studies, theater, culture, and history. Many of the articles are interdisciplinary in nature, cover topics that cross multiple geographical boundaries and time periods, and focus on individual, disciplinary topics. The list here is not exhaustive but merely an introduction for the researcher to reflect upon the variety of approaches to examining the secondary literature.

Anglo-Saxon England is the premier journal for the era, covering all interdisciplinary aspects of Anglo-Saxon history and culture ranging from the linguistics and literary to textual studies, from paleographic and archaeological research to religious and artistic themes. Every volume (up to volume 41, 2012) contains a bibliography of scholarly material of every section of Anglo-Saxon studies. A database of the bibliography will be made available soon. Every annual has approximately a dozen articles, ranging in length from

twenty to sixty pages. Authors discussed regularly include Bede, Cynewulf, King Alfred, and Ælfric, with *Beowulf* being the most frequently discussed work. Other topics of interest are reflected in the titles of recent volumes: "The Earliest Modern Anglo-Saxon Grammar: Sir Henry Spelman, Abraham Wheelock and William Retchford," "Old English Poetic Diction Not in Old English Verse or Prose—And the Curious Case of Aldhelm's Five Athletes," "Reading, Writing and Resurrection: Cynewulf's Runes as a Figure of the Body," "Constructing the Monstrous Body in *Beowulf*," "Legends and Liturgy in the Old English Prose *Andreas*," "The Audience for Old English Texts: Ælfric, Rhetoric and 'The Edification of the Simple,'" and "National-Ethnic Narratives in Eleventh-Century Literary Representations of Cnut." A record of the conference of the International Society of Anglo-Saxonists held every three years is included. Along with *Anglo-Saxon England*, Cambridge University Press also publishes *Cambridge Studies in Anglo-Saxon England*, a monographic series that ran from 1990 to 2006.

The primary value of ***Anglo-Saxon Studies in Archaeology and History*** to the medieval English literary researcher is to become acquainted with the broader historical, archaeological, religious, and cultural perspectives found within the linguistic and literary works. Recent volumes have covered Anglo-Saxon literature, architecture, art history, place-name studies, analysis of historical texts, and archaeological surveys.

The Heroic Age: A Journal of Early Medieval Northwestern Europe is an online, open-access, peer-reviewed journal focusing on early medieval Northwestern Europe from the fourth century to the end of the thirteenth century. It covers the literary, historic, archaeological, and folkloric themes that were present in the material culture (artifacts) left behind. Sections include feature articles; editions and translations; essays that reevaluate prevailing theories; a review of publications and discoveries in early medieval archaeology; a review of medieval scholarship published in German, Dutch, and French; philological queries; and reviews of books, films, and television programs. Recent articles include "Her Own Hall: Grendel's Mother as King," "Neorxnawang: Aelfric's Flawed Anglo-Saxon Paradise," and "John Dee, King Arthur, and the Conquest of the Arctic."

There are few scholarly journals available for graduate students and new scholars to practice their craft. ***Comitatus: A Journal of Medieval and Renaissance Studies*** is one of those titles. Published by the Center for Medieval and Renaissance Studies at UCLA, *Comitatus* is geared toward graduate students and scholars who have received their PhD within the past five years and who are interested in publishing peer-reviewed articles in any field of the Middle Ages or the Renaissance. Each annual has on average eight articles and sixty to eighty book reviews. Recent issues have such articles as

"Re-reading Grendel's Mother: *Beowulf* and the Anglo-Saxon Metrical Charms," "A Transcendent Excess: Examining Griselda's Assent in Chaucer's *Clerk's Tale* through Georges Bataille's Atheological Mysticism," "Spectatorship and Vision in *The York Corpus Christi Plays*," and "Gawain and Goliath: Davidic Parallels and the Problem of Penance in *Sir Gawain and the Green Knight*." The run from 1970 to 2001 can be found at the eScholarship Repository at UCLA (escholarship.org/uc/cmrs_comitatus).

Early Theatre: A Journal Associated with the Records of Early English Drama is the premier peer-reviewed journal covering research in medieval and early modern drama and theater history based on the records, documents, and manuscripts of England, Scotland, Ireland, and Wales. Topics include performance history of any artistic, festive, or entertaining form, as well as interpretative and literary articles relating to particular performances. Articles that concentrate on "where English or European travelers, traders, and colonizers observed performances by other peoples" are also published. *Early Theatre* evolved out of the *Records of Early English Drama Newsletter* (1976–1997), as the expanding research interest in dramaturgy in this period demanded a scholarly outlet. While most of the articles published in *Early Theatre* focus on the post-1500s, the medievalist can find valuable information on medieval drama, especially the mystery plays. Recent articles cover such topics as "The Twelfth-Century *Story of Daniel for Performance* by Hilarius: An Introduction, Translation, and Commentary," "Procula's Civic Body and Pilate's Masculinity Crisis in the York Cycle's 'Christ before Pilate 1: The Dream of Pilate's Wife,'" "Aural Space, Sonorous Presence, and the Performance of Christian Community in the Chester Shepherds Play," "From Subject to Earthly Matter: The Plowman's Argument and Popular Discourse in *Gentleness and Nobility*," and "Women and Performance in Medieval and Early Modern Suffolk." The journal publishes about twenty articles, reviews, essays, and book reviews per year. Archived articles older than two years are freely available from the website (www.earlytheatre.org/).

The Society for the Study of Medieval Languages and Literature at the University of Oxford publishes one of the premier journals in medieval studies, ***Medium Ævum***. Submissions can include any topic in Old and Middle English, English history, the Romance languages, the Germanic languages and literature, Latin, and art history. Articles, book reviews, notes, notices, and review articles are the mainstay of the publication. Each issue has on average six scholarly articles and over sixty book reviews and notices. Article length can range from eleven pages to forty-eight pages. Recent articles cover such topics as "Angelus Pacis: A Liturgical Model for the Masculine 'Fæle Friðowebba' in Cynewulf's *Elene*," "Translation Style, Lexical Systems, Dialect Vocabulary, and the Manuscript Transmission of the Old Eng-

lish Bede," "Isidore of Seville and the Old English Boethius," "Revisiting the Textual Parallels and Date of Thomas of Kent's *Alexander* and Jordan Fantosme's *Chronicle*," "Telling a Hawk from an Herodio: On the Origins and Development of the Old English Word *Wealhhafoc* and Its Relatives," and "Alcuin's York Poem and Liturgical Contexts: Oswald's Adoration of the Cross." An informative feature of the journal is that each volume has a five- to six-page review article on recently published critical editions in English, the Romance languages, and the Germanic languages. The Society also publishes the series *Medium Ævum Monographs*; the medievalist researcher can find a number of gems in this series, including *The Metre of Alliterative Verse* by Ad Putter, Judith Jefferson, and Myra Stokes. This work analyzes such classics as *Sir Gawain and the Green Knight*, *The Siege of Jerusalem*, and the Alexander fragments.

Traditio: Studies in Ancient and Medieval History, Thought, and Religion is an internationally distinguished annual that publishes scholarly articles, essays, critical editions, and research tools in history, literature, philosophy, patristics, philology, theology, and history of art from the periods of antiquity and the Middle Ages. An example of a research tool would be catalogs of unpublished manuscripts. The journal accepts submissions in English, French, German, Italian, and Spanish. Each issue has an average of ten articles with each article being approximately twenty pages in length. Some articles include entirely new texts and translations of medieval works and can run seventy pages in length (e.g., "The Miracles of Saint David: A New Text and Its Context"). The website has lists of subject bibliographies of the articles in *Traditio* going back to 1943. A search of *Medieval English and Germanic Literature* and *Medieval Romance Languages and Literature* yielded seventy-two and thirty-three articles, respectively. Browsing the table of contents, the researcher will find that medieval religious and theological themes dominate the contents of the articles and erroneously conclude that there is little to be gained on finding topics in medieval English literature. The inquisitive (and patient!) medieval literary scholar will find relevant articles such as "The Foreign *Beowulf* and the 'Fight at Finnsburg,'" "Thematic Structure and Symbolic Motif in the Middle English Breton Lays," "Chaucer, the 'corones tweyne,' and the Eve of Saint Agnes," "Gower on Henry IV's Rule: The Endings of the *Cronica Tripertita* and Its Texts," and "The Middle English *Life of Saint Dorothy* in Trinity College, Dublin MS 319: Origins, Parallels, and Its Relationship to Osbern Bokenham's *Legendys of Hooly Wummen*."

The ***Journal of Medieval History*** covers all aspects of European medieval history. Founded in 1975, it publishes research articles, historiographical essays, current trends in research, editions of texts, and review articles on historical topics. Most issues contain six articles on average. The literary

researcher will find this journal valuable for the articles that provide the historical and cultural background to events mentioned in literary texts. For example, the article "Recovering the Histories of Women Religious in England in the Central Middle Ages: Wilton Abbey and Goscelin of Saint-Bertin" illustrates a literary culture present in the histories that women religious (women in convents and nunneries) wrote describing their communities.

Early Medieval Europe is another period journal that, at first glance, does not appear to be relevant to the study of medieval English literature. This interdisciplinary journal covers topics in archaeology, numismatics, paleography, diplomacy, literature, onomastics, history, art history, linguistics, and epigraphy from the late fourth-century Roman period to the eleventh century. Articles and book reviews average about four and ten per issue respectively with the occasional review article thrown in. The last two special issues focused on the Carolingian period. Each issue usually has one article on Anglo-Saxon literature or history. Recent articles include "*Angli* and *Saxones* in Æthelweard's *Chronicle*"; "Furnished Female Burial in Seventh-Century England: Gender and Sacral Authority in the Conversion Period"; "Bands of Brothers: A Re-appraisal of the Viking Great Army and its Implications for the Scandinavian Colonization of England"; and "Benedictine Reform and Pastoral Care in Late Anglo-Saxon England."

English Historical Review has been published since 1886 and encompasses the English-speaking world. While the journal focuses predominately on history, there is coverage of the intersection of primary source material for history and literature. For example, the recent article "The Earliest Viking Activity in England?" examines the *Anglo-Saxon Chronicle*, a collection of manuscripts in Old English that historians and literary scholars have found to be an essential source for examining King Alfred's era. Articles, review articles, and book reviews are provided, such as "'Like a Raging Lion': Richard the Lionheart's Anger during the Third Crusade in Medieval and Modern Historiography" and "Thomas Becket and the Royal Abbey of Reading." Many literary topics can be found in the book review section (e.g., *Romance and the Gentry in Late Medieval England*). A list of notices of records, texts, and reference works is supplied annually.

The Medieval Review (***TMR***) (formerly the *Bryn Mawr Medieval Review*) is a born-digital journal first published in 1993. It is devoted to publishing reviews in a wide range of topics in medieval studies. Reviews are between 800–2,500 words and are accepted on an ongoing basis. Book review editors locate scholars for particular titles, and books must be received by *TMR* before they will be considered. Recent reviews cover such literary topics as "Voice in Later Medieval English Literature," "The Psalms and Medieval English Literature," "Chaucer's *Decameron* and the Origin of the *Canter-*

bury Tales," and "The Manuscript and Meaning of Malory's *Morte Darthur*: Rubrication, Commemoration, Memorialization."

PHILOLOGY JOURNALS

Anglia: Journal of English Philology / Zeitschrift für englische Philologie. Boston: De Gruyter Mouton. 1878–. Quarterly. ISSN: 0340-5222; E-ISSN: 1865-8938.

Journal of English and Germanic Philology (*JEGP*). Champaign, IL: University of Illinois Press, 1903–. Quarterly. ISSN: 0363-6941; E-ISSN: 1945-662X. www.press.uillinois.edu/journals/jegp.html.

Modern Philology. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1903–. Biannual. ISSN: 0026-8232; E-ISSN: 1545-6951. www.press.uchicago.edu/ucp/journals/journal/mp.html.

Neophilologus: An International Journal of Modern and Medieval Language and Literature. Springer. 1916–. Quarterly. ISSN: 0028-2677; E-ISSN: 1572-8668.

Neuphilologische Mitteilungen. Helsinki: Modern Language Society of Helsinki, 1899–. 2/year. ISSN: 0028-3754.

Philological Quarterly. Iowa City, IA: Department of English, University of Iowa, 1922–. Quarterly. ISSN: 0031-7977. english.uiowa.edu/philological-quarterly.

Studia Neophilologica. Uppsala, Sweden: A. B. Lundequistska Bokhandeln, 1928–. Biannual. ISSN: 0039-3274; E-ISSN: 1651-2308. www.tandfonline.com/loi/snec20#.VQOuUOHy608.

Studies in Philology. Raleigh, NC: University of North Carolina Press, 1906–. Quarterly. ISSN: 0039-3738; E-ISSN: 1543-0383. www.uncpress.org/journals/studies-in-philology/.

Philology journals are an especially rich source of information that should not be neglected by the serious medievalist. Philology is the study of language through textual criticism, history, and linguistics. The philology journals will have broad appeal to scholars across many disciplines, including English and comparative literature, history, religion, classics, and philosophy. Some tasks of the philologist can be deciphering the etymology of a particular word, tracing the history of a particular word through textual analysis and uncovering its shifting meaning, identifying a text and its location in the literary tradition, and establishing the text's authenticity and original form. The journals listed here are some of the older, established journals in literature; *Anglia: Journal of English Philology / Zeitschrift für englische Philologie* began publishing in

1878. The researcher should note the Germanic influence on Old and Middle English given the number of journal titles in German.

Founded in 1906, ***Studies in Philology*** addresses scholarship in a wide range of disciplines, though traditionally its strength has been English Medieval and Renaissance studies. In recent years, *Studies in Philology* has published articles on British literature written before 1900 focusing on the relationships between British literature and works in the classical, Romantic, and Germanic languages. Since 1987, the emphasis has been on articles that have a British theme (i.e., articles that are non-British in their entirety are excluded). Each issue contains between six and twelve articles. Sample articles that cover the period are "Gender, Vulgarity, and the Phantom Debates of Chaucer's *Merchant's Tale*," "*Sir Gowther*: Table Manners and Aristocratic Identity," "Violence, Excess, and the Composite Emotional Rhetoric of *Richard Coeur de Lion*," "The Middle English *Sir Degrevant* and the Scottish Border," "Middle English Ferumbras Romances and the Reign of Richard II," "Baptism, Conversion, and Selfhood in the Old English *Andreas*," and "Riddling Meaning from Old English *-haga* Compounds."

The scope of ***Modern Philology*** encompasses critical and historical studies of literary works and traditions from the time of Charlemagne to the present. The contributions are in English and cover European and non-European literatures from all modern languages. The journal contains articles, notes and documents, review articles, and book reviews. Each issue has five to twelve articles and seventeen to thirty-six book reviews; notes and documents and review articles appear in most issues. Recent articles include "Dying for a Drink: 'Sleeping after the Feast' Scenes in *Beowulf*, *Andreas*, and the Old English Poetic Tradition," "'*Pearl*' and the Flawed Mediation of Grace," "'We must be tretable': Law and Affect in Lydgate's *Saint Austin at Compton*," "Faith and Forfeiture in the Old English *Genesis* A," "The World as Woman: Two Late Medieval Song-Poems on Frau Welt by Michel Beheim," "The Chapter Headings of the *Morte Darthur*: Caxton and de Worde," "'Books Tell Us': Lexomic and Traditional Evidence for the Sources of *Guthlac* A," and "Gower's Chronicles of Invention: Historiography and Productive Poetry in Book 4 of the *Confessio Amantis*."

Philological Quarterly publishes articles, review essays, and book reviews in medieval European and modern literature and culture. In addition to literary criticism, the articles cover physical bibliography, the sociology of knowledge, the history of reading, reception studies, and other fields of inquiry. Issues range from five to ten articles, and each article is between ten and thirty pages. Recent articles demonstrating the variety of scholarly output in medieval studies are "Giving the Head's Up in Ælfric's *Passio Sancti Edmundi*: Postural Representations of the Old English Saint," "Writing Speaks:

Oral Poetics and Writing Technology in the Exeter Book Riddles," "Gower's Public Outcry," "Lost Books: Abbess Hildelith and the Literary Culture of Barking Abbey," "The Elevation of the Apostles in Cynewulf's *Christ II: Ascension*," and "A Latin Model for an Old English Homiletic Fragment." Each volume has a special issue; for example, the 2008 special double issue is titled "New Work on the Middle Ages" and contains articles such as "Fashioning Change: Wearing Fortune's Garments in Medieval England," "Corporeal Anxiety in *Soul and Body II*," "Is There a Minstrel in the House? Domestic Entertainment in Late Medieval England," "Choreographing Mouvance: The Case of the English Carol," "'As mote in at a munster dor': Sanctuary and Love of the World," "Holy Familiars: Enclosure, Work, and the Saints at Syon Abbey," "Modern and Medieval Books," and "The New Fifteenth Century: Humanism, Heresy, and Laureation."

Established in 1928, ***Studia Neophilologica*** has an international reputation for publishing articles on English, German, and Romance languages and literatures covering the medieval period to the present. The emphasis is on either the philological/linguistic analysis of particular problems or the analysis of specific texts. Articles are accepted in English, German, French, Spanish, Portuguese, and Italian. The journal is published on behalf of the Society of Studia Neophilologica, which is based out of the Department of Modern Languages at Uppsala University in Stockholm, Sweden. The number of articles and book reviews average about seven and four, respectively. There is a special supplement issue each year. Recent themes have included apocalyptic narrative, manuscript studies, and codicology. Issues have had more than one article on medieval English, which suggests a focus on new scholarship such as "Number Symbolism in *Pearl*: Lines 720–721," "Gower's Amans and the Curricular Maximianus," "Exploring the Relationship between Emotions, Language and Space: Construals of Awe in Medieval English Language and Pilgrimage Experience," "Recursivity and Inheritance in the Formation of Old English Nouns and Adjectives," "Old English Negators as Equivalents of a Clause," "Morphological Relatedness and the Typology of Adjectival Formations in Old English," and "On a Crux in *Beowulf*: The Alliteration of Finite Verbs and the Scribal Understanding of Metre."

Beginning in 1897 as the *Journal of German Philology*, the journal's title was changed to the ***Journal of English and Germanic Philology*** (***JEGP***) in 1902 to reflect a broader perspective of Germanic philology. *JEGP* focuses on the medieval literature from the northern European countries, mainly the British, Germanic, and Celtic regions. The journal is published quarterly with four to seven articles and five to fourteen reviews in each issue. Recent titles include "Bee-Wolf and the Hand of Victory: Identifying the Heroes of *Beowulf* and *Vǫlsunga* Saga," "The Refashioning of Christ's Passion in an Anonymous

Old English Homily for Palm Sunday (HomS 18)," and "Trance of Involvement: Absorption and Denial in Fifteenth-Century Middle English Pietàs."

The oldest journal in English studies was established in Germany in 1878: ***Anglia: Journal of English Philology / Zeitschrift für englische Philologie***. *Anglia* covers the whole field of English language and linguistics, English and American literature and culture from the Middle Ages to the present, new British Commonwealth literatures, comparative literary studies, and aspects of cultural and literary theory. Articles are in English and in German. Book reviews are included in every issue. Recent issues have articles and reviews on medieval English literature, such as "Debt and Sin in the Middle English 'Judas,'" "Dialect and Word Choice in Old English: Two Case Studies with Old English Perception Verbs," and "Riddling and Reading: Iconicity and Logogriphs in Exeter Book Riddles 23 and 45." Reviews are as varied as the following examples: the annual *Arthurian Literature*, a colloquium on Anglo-Norman research, Old English plant names, and the twelfth-century reception of the Anglo-Saxon Illustrated Hexateuch from the Cotton Claudius B. iv manuscript.

Neophilologus: An International Journal of Modern and Medieval Language and Literature began in 1916 and covers modern and medieval language and literature, linguistics, literary theory, and comparative literature. The journal publishes original articles only, usually eight to ten articles per issue in English, French, German, Italian, and Spanish. Articles can examine particular poems ("The Insular Landscape of the Old English Poem *The Phoenix*") to methodological issues surrounding analysis of texts ("On the Epistemology of Old English Scholarship"). Recent articles include "Illness as a Burden in Anglo-Saxon England"; "The Insular Landscape of the Old English Poem *The Phoenix*"; "Reading the Allegory of *St. Erkenwald*"; "An Old Norse Analogue to Wiglaf's Lament (*Beowulf* Lines 3077–3086)"; "Intimacy, Interdependence, and Interiority in the Old English Prose *Boethius*"; and "English Past and English Present: The Phrase 'Old English' in Middle English Texts."

Neuphilologische Mitteilungen is the bulletin of the Modern Language Society of Helsinki. Beginning as a quarterly in 1899, this multilingual, refereed journal publishes twice a year on topics in philology and linguistics. Given its international scope, articles can be in English, German, and the Romance languages. Recent articles include "Pronoun Placement and Pronoun Case in Old English," "His-Genitive as a Morphological Variant of S-Genitive: An Analysis of Early Examples in the Otho Manuscript of Laȝamon's *Brut*," and "Tracing the Generational Progress of Language Change in Fifteenth-Century English: The Digraph <th> in the 'Paston Letters.'"

AUTHOR JOURNALS

The Chaucer Review: A Journal of Medieval Studies and Literary Criticism. University Park, PA: Pennsylvania State University Press, 1966–. Quarterly. ISSN: 0009-2002; E-ISSN: 1528-4204. www.psupress.org/journals/jnls_chaucer.html.

Publications of the John Gower Society. International John Gower Society. Cambridge, UK: D. S. Brewer, 1987–. Irregular. ISSN: 0954-2817.

Studies in the Age of Chaucer (*SAC*). St. Louis, MO: New Chaucer Society, Department of English, St. Louis University, 1975–. Annual. ISSN: 0190-2407; E-ISSN: 1949-0755. newchaucersociety.org/pages/entry/sac.

Yearbook of Langland Studies. Turnhout, Belgium: Brepols, 1987–. Annual. ISSN: 0890-2917. www.piersplowman.org/yearbook/editor.htm.

Scholarly societies will often be devoted to the work of a singular author. The purpose of the society will be to promote the scholarship about the author and provide a community of like-minded scholars for exchanging ideas. On occasion, the abundance of scholarship surrounding the author will necessitate the publishing of a journal. Such journals are especially valuable in that not only will they publish the standard scholarly fare such as articles and book reviews, but also they will publish the "paperwork" of the society including meeting minutes, newsletters, conference proceedings, presidential addresses, calls for papers, and other material that may be of interest to the scholar in generating ideas for future development.

The New Chaucer Society (NCS) publishes significant works in Chaucerian scholarship: the semiannual newsletter for members, the NCS annotated bibliography database from the University of Texas at San Antonio, and the annual ***Studies in the Age of Chaucer*** (***SAC***) that also contains the aforementioned annotated bibliography (see chapter 9 for a detailed description). The articles focus not only on Chaucer, his predecessors, contemporaries, and successors, but also general English culture and writing covering the period 1200 to 1500. Each annual has a range of articles (six to fifteen), book reviews (averaging twenty-two to twenty-eight), and a list of books received. The society has a presidential address and Chaucer lecture that are published in the *SAC* every two years. Issues have such articles as "Vital Property in *The Wife of Bath*'s Prologue and Tale," "Noise, Soundplay, and Langland's Poetics of Lolling in the Time of Wyclif," "Scribes, Misattributed: Hoccleve and Pinkhurst," "The *Pearl*-Poet Manuscript in York," "Of Judges and Jewelers: *Pearl* and the Life of Saint John," "Lydgate's Jailbird," "Dictators of Venus: Clerical Love Letters and Female Subjection in *Troilus and*

Criseyde and the *Rota Veneris*," "The Legend of Thebes and Literary Patricide in Chaucer, Boccaccio, and Statius," "Practices of Satisfaction and *Piers Plowman*'s Dynamic Middle," "Dismal Science: Chaucer and Gower on Alchemy and Economy," and "When Scribes Won't Write: Gaps in Middle English Books."

First published in 1966, ***The Chaucer Review: A Journal of Medieval Studies and Literary Criticism*** is the premier journal devoted to Chaucerian scholarship. It "publishes studies of the language, sources, historical and political contexts, social milieus, and aesthetics of Chaucer's poetry, as well as associated studies on medieval literature, philosophy, theology, and mythography relevant to an understanding of the poet, his contemporaries, his predecessors, and his audiences." Published quarterly, each issue contains five to ten articles. The journal occasionally publishes special issues; the last two special issues addressed *The Legend of Good Women* and the theme titled *Women's Literary Culture and Late Medieval English Writing*.

Published by the International Piers Plowman Society, the ***Yearbook of Langland Studies*** is the only journal dedicated exclusively to the poem *Piers Plowman.* Each volume publishes peer-reviewed essays and reviews on aspects of the poem's literary, historical, codicological, and critical dimensions. The articles average eight to ten per volume with several reviews given. The length of the articles can range from fifteen to forty pages. A sampling of articles demonstrates its breadth: "Guy of Warwick and the Active Life of Historical Romance in *Piers Plowman*"; "Covetousness, 'Unkyndenesse', and the 'Blered' Eye in *Piers Plowman* and 'The Canon's Yeoman's Tale'"; "Compilational Reading: Richard Osbarn and Huntington Library MS HM 114"; and "Medieval Political Ecology: Labor and Agency on the Half Acre." Each volume also contains an annotated bibliography covering the previous year's scholarship. The bibliography is usually sixteen to thirty pages in length. The bibliography is searchable on the website and includes some material published before the yearbook began in 1987.

Societies and organizations that are named after an influential writer usually publish scholarly journals and bibliographies. Since 1987, the International John Gower Society has issued a series titled ***Publications of the John Gower Society*** based on the works of the fourteenth-century poet John Gower. The latest volume was published in 2017 titled *John Gower: Others and the Self*, which is a collection of essays from a 2014 conference. In addition, the society issues the *John Gower Newsletter* (www.wcu.edu/johngower/jgn.html); membership in the society is required to receive the newsletter. The society is based out of Western Carolina University.

ARTHURIAN JOURNALS

Arthurian Literature. Buffalo, NY: Boydell & Brewer, 1981–. Annual. boydellandbrewer.com/series/arthurian-literature.html.

Arthurian Studies. Woodbridge, Suffolk, UK: Boydell & Brewer, 1981–.

Arthuriana. West Lafayette, IN: Purdue University, subsidiary of Scriptorium Press, 1994–. Formerly *Quondam et Futurus*. Quarterly. ISSN: 1078-6279.

Journal of the International Arthurian Society (*JIAS*). Berlin: Walter de Gruyter, 2013–. Annual. E-ISSN: 2196-9353. www.internationalarthuriansociety.com/.

One of the most popular and scholarly topics in medieval studies is the Arthurian legend. Studying the various authors is a veritable who's who of medieval English literature: Layamon's *Brut* was the first time Alfred and the Knights of the Round Table were rendered into English poetry. Before Layamon, Geoffrey of Monmouth's *Historia regum Britanniae* traced the battles of a king against the Romans. Wace's *Roman de Brut* expanded on Monmouth's *Historia* by adding a round table and naming the sword "Excalibur." Chrétien de Troyes presented the idea of the Grail and the romance of Lancelot and Guinevere. The Vulgate Cycle or the Lancelot-Grail Cycle expanded on the Arthurian legend by introducing Christian themes such as the Grail. And last, Sir Thomas Malory's *Morte d'Arthur*, the first English-language prose version of the Arthurian legend, expanded on the tale with the *Gareth* story. In addition to the journals listed below, the researcher is encouraged to review chapter 7 (Genres), specifically the "Medieval Romance and Arthurian Literature" section.

The journal ***Arthuriana*** has undergone a number of title changes and publishers since its inception in 1968: *Interpretations* (1968–1985), *Quondam et Futurus: Newsletter for Arthurian Studies* (1980–1993), and *Arthurian Interpretations* (1986–1990, 1991–1993). *Arthuriana* is the quarterly journal for the International Arthurian Society–North America Branch, and it is published by the Scriptorium Press at Purdue University. *Arthuriana* is a peer-reviewed journal dealing with all aspects of the Arthurian legend, chivalry, romance, and other medieval themes from the Middle Ages to the present. Articles, book reviews, brief notices on medieval and Arthurian subjects, and formal notices of the activities of the International Arthurian Society are contained in every issue. Recent special issues of the journal include "The Arthurian Revival in the Nineteenth Century," "Renaissance Arthurian Literature and C. S. Lewis," and "German Arthurian Literature."

Another publication from the International Arthurian Society (the North America branch) is the ***Journal of the International Arthurian Society*** (***JIAS***). *JIAS* publishes articles on all aspects of Arthurian literature written in medieval, post-medieval, and modern times. Contemporary adaptations in film and art are welcome if they adhere to or reflect the literary texts. The *Bibliographical Bulletin of the Arthurian Society/Bulletin Bibliographique de la Société Internationale Arthurienne* (*BBIAS / BBSIA*) was continuously published since 1949 before separating into the *JIAS* and the *BIAS* (*Bibliography of the International Arthurian Society*—see chapter 4) in 2012. Many articles reflect the enduring appeal of the Arthurian legend through the ages: "Approaches to Arthurian Studies: From Tradition to Innovation," "Stemmatics and the Old French Prose Arthurian Romance Editions," "Paving the Way for the Arthurian Revival: William Caxton and Sir Thomas Malory's King Arthur in the Eighteenth Century," "Jessie Weston and the Ancient Mystery of Arthurian Romance," and "Between the Carnal and the Spiritual: The Parsifal of T. W. Rolleston." The International Arthurian Society hosts an international congress every three years.

Arthurian Literature is an annual that offers critical studies of the Arthurian legend in Europe in the medieval and early modern periods. First published in 1982, *Arthurian Literature* has a wide range of material, from editions and translations of medieval manuscripts, to studies about scholars from later eras (examples include the photographic illustrations of poet Tennyson's *Morte d'Arthur* and the translator J. A. Giles's critique of Aaron Thompson's English translation of Geoffrey of Monmouth's *Historia regum Britanniae*). *Arthurian Literature* averages about six articles per issue, which allows an in-depth analysis of a topic, especially unexplored new topics. There are notes, short items of less than 5,000 words, and updates on earlier articles. Recent essays have such topics as "From 'The Matter of Britain' to 'The Matter of Rome': Latin Literary Culture and the Reception of Geoffrey of Monmouth in Wales," "Chrétien's British Yvain in England and Wales," "Edward III's Abandoned Order of the Round Table Revisited: Political Arthurianism after Poitiers," "'Thanked Be God There Hath Been but a Few of Myne Auncytours That Hathe Dyed in Their Beddes': Border Stories and Northern Arthurian Romances," "T. H. White's Representation of Malory's Camelot," and "ΙΠΠΌΤΗΣ Ο ΠΡΕΣΒΥΤΗΣ: *The Old Knight*—An Edition of the Greek Arthurian Poem of Vat. Gr. 1822."

Another prolific series is ***Arthurian Studies***; the publishers Boydell & Brewer have published eighty-five volumes so far with the focus on historical studies, critical editions, and translations. The two most recent volumes—*The Manuscript and Meaning of Malory's 'Morte Darthur': Rubrication, Commemoration, Memorialization* and *Publishing the Grail in Medieval and*

Renaissance France—reflect the European tradition of the Arthur legend and the interplay with English sources. The researcher is advised to peruse all the volumes in this valuable series. Other subjects include Layamon's *Brut*, the life of Thomas Malory, Chrétien de Troyes, Arthurian poets, the idea of Camelot, and the *Gawain*-poet.

SERIES

Anglo-Norman Texts. Oxford: Published and distributed by the Anglo-Norman Text Society, 1937–.

Cambridge Studies in Medieval Literature. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1989–.

Early English Text Society. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1864–. Irregular. users.ox.ac.uk/~eets/.

Medieval and Renaissance Texts and Studies (*MRTS*). Tempe, AZ: Arizona Center for Medieval and Renaissance Studies, Arizona State University, 1981–.

Publications of the Manchester Centre for Anglo-Saxon Studies. Buffalo, NY: Boydell & Brewer, 2003–. Irregular. ISSN: 1478-6710.

Studies in English Medieval Language and Literature. 2 to 4 volumes/year. ISSN: 1436-7521. Frankfurt am Main: Peter Lang Publishers, 2002–.

Studies in Medieval Romance. Buffalo, NY: Boydell & Brewer, 2003–. boydellandbrewer.com/series/studies-in-medieval-romance.html.

TEAMS Middle English Texts. Russell Peck, general ed. Kalamazoo, MI: Medieval Institute Publications at Western Michigan University, 1990–.

Toronto Anglo-Saxon Series (*TASS*). Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 2009–.

Knowledge of monographic series is an essential part of the medieval English researcher's arsenal. Series can contain a wide variety of scholarly material: facsimile reproductions of original manuscripts, critical editions, translations, commentaries, critical studies, dictionaries, glossaries, bibliographies, handbooks, catalogs, Festschrifts, and conference proceedings, to name some of the more common types. The series listed here are compiled and published by major societies.

A scholar of Old and Middle English will not get far before using a volume in the series ***Early English Text Society***. Established in 1864, the purpose of the Early English Text Society was to make accessible to students and scholars a whole range of unprinted Middle English material, usually facsimiles of original manuscripts, transcriptions, and translations. In 1867, another series,

the *Extra Series*, was created to republish texts that were defective in some way or hard to obtain (this series was discontinued in 1921 with an output of 126 volumes). In 1970, a *Supplementary Series* was added to publish texts that became available (twenty-two volumes). To date, five hundred volumes have been published in total with most still in print. Some of the volumes were facsimiles of manuscripts; these have been superseded by digital reproductions (see chapter 9). Given the date range of the material published, the researcher is wise to determine if the volume he is using in the series is the best edition of the text; older material may have been superseded by better editions later in the series or by a different publisher. For example, the versions of *The Vision of Piers Plowman* by William Langland were published in various volumes between 1867 and 1884 and reprinted between 1963 and 2002; however, one would be advised to consult a newer, scholarly edition by A. V. C. Schmidt, *Piers Plowman: A Parallel-Text Edition of the A, B, C, and Z Versions*, published in three volumes by the Medieval Institute at Western Michigan University in 2011. The Early English Text Society does provide on its website a list of what titles have been reprinted and updated.

Medieval and Renaissance Texts and Studies (***MRTS***) was originally begun at the Center for Medieval and Early Renaissance Studies (CEMERS) at the State University of New York-Binghamton from 1978 to 1996 before moving to Arizona State University as the Arizona Center for Medieval and Renaissance Studies. The series has published more than 516 volumes of translations, reference works, critical editions, monographs, Festschriften, and essay collections. Sample books that cover English studies are *Studies in John Gower* (2016), *A Commentary on the Old English Version of Bede's Ecclesiastical History* (2015), *An Introductory Grammar of Old English with an Anthology of Readings* (2014), *The Maritime World of the Anglo-Saxons* (2014), and *Staging Salvation: Six Medieval Plays in Modern English* (2014). The series is divided into subseries: *The French of England Translation Series* (FRETS), *MRTS Texts for Teaching*, *Essays in Anglo-Saxon Studies*, and *The Other Voice in Early Modern Europe: The Toronto Series*.

Cambridge Studies in Medieval Literature began in 1989 with the goal of publishing literary criticism on prose, poetic, and dramatic works written in the European vernaculars, Latin, and Greek, from c. 1100 to 1500 with the goal of understanding their relationships with the contemporary culture of the time. Ninety-eight volumes have been published so far, with most topics focusing on medieval England. Volumes published just in 2018 include *Chaucer's Scribes: London Textual Productions, 1384 to 1432*; *Middle English Mouths: Late Medieval Medical, Religious, and Literary Traditions*; *Chaucer and the Subversion of Form*; and *The Experience of Education in Anglo-Saxon Literature*.

Publications of the Manchester Centre for Anglo-Saxon Studies, published at the University of Manchester, covers paleographical, literary, religious, and historical topics pertaining to Anglo-Saxon England. Begun in 2003, this monographic series has fourteen titles so far. Recent titles include *English Vernacular Minuscule from* Æthelred *to Cnut, circa 990–circa 1035* and *A Conspectus of Scribal Hands Writing English, 960–1100*. The latter title is a reference tool providing an annotated list of Anglo-Saxon scribal hands associated with their place and manuscript.

Medieval romance continues to be of great interest to scholars and laypersons alike. ***Studies in Medieval Romance*** covers the critical analysis of medieval romance, its place in medieval literary history, reading and writing, cultural norms, and social structures. Studies, critical editions, and reference works define the type of material in the series. Coverage ranges from the Middle Ages into the Renaissance. Nineteen volumes have been published so far with some notable titles such as "The Orient in Chaucer and Medieval Romance," "Cultural Encounters in the Romance of Medieval England," "The Idea of Anglo-Saxon England in Middle English Romance," "Sir Bevis of Hampton in Literary Tradition," "A Companion to Medieval Popular Romance" (described in chapter 7), and "Women's Power in Late Medieval Romance."

An important historical aspect of studying medieval English literature is knowing the influence that Norman French had on the British Isles after the Norman Conquest of 1066. Anglo-Latin and Anglo-Norman became the dominant literary languages, while Old English receded in influence as the Normans took over the courts, lands, and trade. Old English continued to be the vernacular language of the populace, but the English aristocracy was forced to learn Anglo-Norman. As the governing and aristocratic elite, the Normans gradually developed their own distinctive language from French on the continent during the twelfth and thirteenth centuries (1066–1204). Anglo-Norman texts continued to be produced until the mid-fourteenth century. Many modern English words have their origins in the Anglo-Norman language. In addition, a body of texts emerged from this culture that influenced Middle English literature. With the gradual assimilation of the Norman aristocracy into English society and Old English evolving from a primarily oral tradition into a written one as "Middle English," the rise of Middle English literature became prevalent in the fourteenth century. The Anglo-Norman Text Society has been publishing ***Anglo-Norman Texts*** since 1937 in order to meet this scholarly interest. The society publishes three series of texts on literary, linguistic, historical, and legal topics: *Annual Texts* (seventy-three volumes), *Occasional Publication* series (eight volumes), and the *Plain Text* series (nineteen volumes). These volumes include works by Béroul, Thomas of Britain, Gaimar, Marie de France, and others who regaled their readers

with chronicles, fabliaux, fables, hagiographies, epics, romances, plays, and didactic literature. Volume 3 in the *Occasional Series* is *Anglo-Norman Literature: A Guide to Texts and Manuscripts* (see chapter 7), which the researcher will find useful in furthering his studies.

The ***TEAMS Middle English Texts*** are published by the Medieval Institute Publications at Western Michigan University for TEAMS (The Consortium for the Teaching of the Middle Ages) in association with the University of Rochester by Medieval Institute Publications, Western Michigan University, Kalamazoo, Michigan. The purpose of the *TEAMS Middle English Texts* series is to provide teachers and students with quality teaching student editions that retain the integrity of the original text with modern conventions to assist student learning. Each volume has a glossary for difficult words, a history of the work, and a short bibliography. Eighty-nine volumes have been published so far with another forty-five titles planned. Full text of most volumes in the series are available online (d.lib.rochester.edu/teams/catalog) with an alphabetical list of individual works in the volumes available for quick consultation (d.lib.rochester.edu/teams/text-online). For example, *The Complete Harley 2253 Manuscript* is available in three volumes. Edited and translated by Susanna Fein with David Raybin and Jan Ziolkowski, the set presents a complete edition and translation of a fourteenth-century English manuscript that contains secular love lyrics, religious lyrics, contemporary political songs, saints' lives, and other literary works in Middle English, Anglo-Norman, and Latin. The volumes have explanatory and textual notes, indexes of first lines, manuscripts cited, proper names, and bibliographies.

Toronto Anglo-Saxon Series (***TASS***) is a new series published by the University of Toronto Press centering on Anglo-Saxon history, culture, and literature. *TASS* publishes scholarly monographs, essay collections, critical editions, and translations with commentary. Old English is well represented. Works focus mainly, though not exclusively, on the areas of social history, myth and religion, prose and poetry, oral history, literacy, manuscript studies, art and material culture, law, entertainment, science and medicine, and weapons and warfare. Recent books published include *New Readings in the Vercelli Book*; *From Lawmen to Plowmen: Anglo-Saxon Legal Tradition and the School of Langland*; *Anglo-Saxon Manuscripts: A Bibliographical Handlist of Manuscripts and Manuscript Fragments Written or Owned in England up to 1100* (see chapter 6); and *Old English Literature and the Old Testament*.

The goal of ***Studies in English Medieval Language and Literature*** is to provide a setting for studying the English language, literature, and linguistics. Focusing on historical linguistics, Old and Middle English grammar, and linguistic influences from other medieval languages, the content can vary greatly depending on whether the volume is a critical edition, collected es-

says, or conference proceedings. Fifty-one volumes have been published so far, with the publishing rate being two to four volumes per year. The series has an ISSN, and each individual volume has its own ISBN. Some volumes are original works by a single author: examples include *Culinary Verbs in Middle English* and *The Synonyms of Fallen Woman in the History of the English Language*. Other volumes are edited works with contributions from scholars on a particular theme or from a particular conference. These titles are *Sawles Warde and the Wooing Group*, *Approaches to Middle English*, and *Essays and Studies in Middle English* (Ninth International Conference on Middle English, Philological School of Higher Education in Wrocław, 2015). There are volumes that have valuable tools: for example, *Recording English, Researching English, Transforming English* has the first complete list of Old English runic inscriptions.

CONCLUSION

The journals and series listed here are representative but by no means exhaustive. They provide the opportunity to keep current by identifying new research trends in medieval English literature. Furthermore, many of these journals have book reviews, lists of books received, and special issues on current scholarly topics. Most journals have email alert services and content platforms such as EBSCO that enable the researcher to set up specific search inquiries across multiple databases with the results emailed back on a regular basis. Last, searching bibliographies and indexes identified in chapter 4 will help in constructing a comprehensive review of the literature. New scholars will find that building a scholarly presence involves a combination of the tactics listed above to ensure that relevant material is not missed.

Chapter Six

Manuscripts

Medieval England was a manuscript culture. Without printing presses to easily produce copies of written works, the painstakingly crafted manuscripts were the only method of transmitting written literature. While some works still exist today in many copies and fragments spread over large geographic areas and dates of origin, others have survived in single handwritten copies tucked away in private collections with few clues to their authors or the time and place of their origins. Our understandings of the poems and prose of the time period can be influenced by how these works have been passed down to us. We cannot look at *The Pearl* without also examining the three other compositions attributed to its anonymous author. These four poems each exist in a single surviving manuscript—Cotton Nero A.x.[1] This manuscript is not simply a copy of the literary text but a presentation of the four distinct works as a coherent collection with decorative initials and colorful illustrations. To think of manuscript transmission as a primitive form of photoduplication meant simply to preserve or disseminate information is to overlook the creativity and care reflected by these artifacts.

In England, manuscripts were produced in multiple languages, but Latin remained the dominant language of academia, the courts, and the Church. The emergence of vernacular English manuscripts in the tenth century marks a shift to a wider audience. Though literacy rates were very low by modern standards, texts could be read aloud and understood in the common language of the people. Surviving examples show a diversity of style and genre, from translated devotional works to bawdy lyrical poetry and riddles. The volume of surviving copies is a testament not only to the care with which they were treated, but also to the wide demand for reading material.

Modern readers are primarily exposed to literature from these periods by way of critical editions and translations. Critical editions seek to reconstruct

an "original" version of a work using multiple available manuscripts, early printed editions, and even near-contemporary versions in other languages. Accepted scholarly standards are applied to determine the best reading, which becomes the accepted text. For those who simply want to read the literature, these editions suffice and give the reader a reconstruction of the author's intent, if not their exact wording. Further, due to the linguistic differences between modern and Middle English, many readers prefer more readable updated language. In the case of the Anglo-Saxon works, translation to modern English is almost always necessary.

So, what then is the value of going back to manuscript editions? Manuscripts allow researchers to reproduce the experience of their original readers. Variant readings are often relegated to footnotes in critical editions, but these can present new interpretations. The interaction between the text and decorations can offer insights into how a text may have been understood or used by the manuscript's original owner. The physical materials and the quality of calligraphy can speak to the value placed on the work in its time. A manuscript is more than a sum of its parts, and studying these artifacts can give researchers a deeper understanding of a composition's historical and cultural context.

Recent trends toward digitization have greatly increased our access to manuscript material. Though printed facsimile editions and published microfilm of some manuscripts have existed for many years, their print quality was not always good enough for detailed use. Modern high-resolution digital manuscripts can allow researchers not only to access texts and closely examine their printing but also to apply digital methods to identify hidden secrets of manuscripts such as rule lines, colophons, and even erased writing—further illuminating the manuscript-creation process. While physical interaction with manuscripts can still be very valuable, the cost of travel and limitations to access can make this impossible. Digital surrogates are the next best thing, helping to balance the need for preservation with the importance of scholarship. This chapter will explore print and electronic sources to assist in identifying, locating, using, and understanding manuscripts.

GENERAL WORKS

Brown, Michelle P. *Anglo-Saxon Manuscripts*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1991.

Brown, Michelle P. *Manuscripts from the Anglo-Saxon Age*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 2007.

Hanna, Ralph. *Introducing English Medieval Book History: Manuscripts, Their Producers and Their Readers*. Liverpool: Liverpool University Press, 2013.

Johnston, Michael, and Michael Van Dussen, eds. *The Medieval Manuscript Book*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2015.
Richards, Mary P., ed. *Anglo-Saxon Manuscripts: Basic Readings*. New York: Garland Publishing, 1994.

Before getting lost in the intricacies of shelf marks and script irregularities, it is a good idea to get a firm footing on what kinds of manuscripts are out there and how they can be used in scholarship. Manuscripts of Anglo-Saxon and medieval England have much in common with contemporary Latin and vernacular manuscripts from throughout Europe, but the limited geographic and linguistic scope allows scholars to present a very complete picture of this corpus and highlight its unique features and cultural significance.

Anglo-Saxon Manuscripts: Basic Readings, a collection of essays edited by Mary P. Richards, covers several aspects of manuscript studies ranging from broad overviews to more in-depth examinations of specific manuscripts. The most helpful for new researchers will be the first chapter: "Using Anglo-Saxon Manuscripts" by Alexander Rumble. This essay defines many of the key terms common in manuscript studies, but it also provides basic guidance to help newcomers find and understand manuscript information as presented in some of the more complicated sources discussed below. Practices for creating transcriptions and using facsimiles are also laid out. This essay is meant as a gateway, presenting an overview of techniques without fully expounding on any of them. It allows readers to move forward and understand the other essays, including an interesting discussion of Neil R. Ker's massive contributions to English manuscript studies and how to approach his seminal works.

Michelle Brown, former curator of Western manuscripts at the British Library, has written numerous articles and books on Anglo-Saxon manuscripts. The two listed here cover much of the same content but present it differently. ***Anglo-Saxon Manuscripts*** (1991) is a well-illustrated survey of Anglo-Saxon manuscripts and the culture that produced them. This book can serve as a great introduction to those just beginning to delve into the subject, but it can also provide supplemental background information to more seasoned researchers. While the chapters are brief, many manuscript images—some in color—are used to illustrate and contextualize the points being made. Topics include book-making, paleography, and illumination technique. These are not intended as full investigation of the material, but the visual examples are helpful. This is particularly true where Brown discusses some of the ways we can examine basic script differences or illumination techniques to determine when and where it was likely to have been created. The short glossary of bibliographic and paleographic terms and list of further readings are a good starting point for further research on physical manuscripts.

Brown followed up this work in 2007 with ***Manuscripts from the Anglo-Saxon Age***. The highlight of this volume is the more-than-one-hundred color images of Anglo-Saxon manuscripts. Most, but not all, of these come from the British Library's collection. While the text may be secondary to the images, Brown offers specific manuscript examples to illuminate the place of books in Anglo-Saxon England and how we use the unique features of these examples to gain an understanding of the items.

Introducing English Medieval Book History: Manuscripts, Their Producers and Their Readers by Ralph Hanna presents a view of English manuscript culture in the medieval period. Rather than an organized discussion of methodologies, the chapters in this book each ask a different question about a manuscript or set of manuscripts. The questions do not necessarily seek answers but offer a glimpse of the types of research done on manuscripts. They also focus on the context of the works rather than the text itself. For example, the first chapter looks at *Beowulf* not by itself but considers the significance of its placement in Cotton Vitellius A.xv—between descriptions of fantastical beasts and the biblically inspired Anglo-Saxon poem "Judith." In this way, we see that those who compiled this famous manuscript were not simply copying but thematically framing these stories about different kinds of monsters and heroes and implying a parallel between a Nordic pagan hero and a Judeo-Christian heroine. Thus, the essay's author demonstrates how manuscript studies can inform the understanding of the literature. Other essays examine how both uniqueness from and similarity to a corpus are used to gain meaning from single examples of more common works and the tangled web of medieval provenance and what it does and does not tell us about the care and keeping of books.

While not limited to English manuscripts, ***The Medieval Manuscript Book*** is a thoughtful collection of essays edited by Michael Johnston and Michael Van Dussen that makes the assertion that medieval manuscripts are fundamentally different from the print works that replaced them. The first essay presents manuscripts not as fixed objects but as a process that evolved and changed over time, being edited, excised, re-bound, and appended through many years. This, the editors assert, is a benefit of manuscript culture rather than a problem, moving the control of information from the original producers to the readers and copyists. The other essays examine different points in the manuscript life cycle, including the transition to the more uniformly consistent world of the printing press. Because of the scope, a few chapters digging into French and Italian manuscript literature may not be terribly relevant, but other chapters offer interesting considerations of topics such as the circulation of manuscripts and compilers and authors. These viewpoints force the reader to see manuscripts as living documents, moving and changing, rather than as historical artifacts to be seen but not touched.

LOCATING MANUSCRIPTS AND COLLECTIONS

Foster, Janet, and Julia Sheppard. *British Archives: A Guide to Archive Resources in the United Kimgdom*. New York: Palgrave, 2002.

Gneuss, Helmut, and Michael Lapidge. *Anglo-Saxon Manuscripts: A Bibliographical Handlist of Manuscripts and Manuscript Fragments Written or Owned in England up to 1100*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 2014.

Ker, Neil R. *Catalogue of Manuscripts Containing Anglo-Saxon*. 2nd edition. Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1990.

Ker, Neil R. *Medieval Libraries of Great Britain: A List of Surviving Books*. London: Offices of the Royal Historical Society, 1964. *Supplement*, Andrew G. Watson (editor), 1987.

Ker, Neil R. *Medieval Manuscripts in British Libraries*. London: Oxford University Press, 1969–1992. *Volume V*, Ian Cunningham and Andrew G. Watson (editors), 2002.

Before we can locate a manuscript, it is helpful to know what manuscripts might be of interest. In many cases, this is a straightforward task. For example, if we are studying the works of a well-known author, consulting a reference source such as *The Cambridge Companion to Medieval English Literature 1100–1500* or the *Oxford Dictionary of National Biography* (see chapter 2) would give us an overview of that author's surviving manuscripts, as well as a bibliography that may list published facsimile editions. The *Cambridge Companion* article for Thomas Hoccleve, for example, points out that there are extant manuscripts of his works written in his own hand—a great rarity! That entry's bibliography further shows that a facsimile edition of these manuscripts was published in 2002: *Thomas Hoccleve: A Facsimile of the Autograph Verse Manuscripts*, edited by John Anthony Burrow and Anthony Ian Doyle. Thus, with minimal effort, we not only have identified which manuscripts might be worth investigating, but we also have found a readily accessible published source. While we might not always be so lucky, reference books, journal articles, and secondary monographs will frequently include bibliographic references that can help identify, at the very least, relevant manuscripts by name or collection number. Critical editions, and some translations, will also contain information about manuscript sources used. While this might not lead directly to a usable copy, it is a valuable breadcrumb that can be followed. Digging into these trails and finding where these editions are housed can require some more detailed and comprehensive resources.

Though dated, Neil Ker's ***Catalogue of Manuscripts Containing Anglo-Saxon*** remains the standard source for locating Anglo-Saxon manuscripts. Exhaustive as it could be, the manuscripts listed here make up the accepted

corpus of surviving Anglo-Saxon writings. It should be noted that this is not limited to works composed in Anglo-Saxon but also many manuscripts whose text is primarily in a different language (usually Latin), yet with Anglo-Saxon writing present—sometimes as insignificant as scribbled marginalia. Though the manuscripts are presented by location and collection, they are painstakingly indexed by content. The introduction alone is invaluable, as it thoroughly discusses the intricacies of Anglo-Saxon language and script and reflects the passion of its author. Additions and corrections to this work were printed in a supplement published in volume 5 of the journal *Anglo-Saxon England* (1976). Later, a short list of "Further Addenda and Corrigenda" was included in *Anglo-Saxon Manuscripts: Basic Readings* (Richards, 1994, described previously).

Medieval Manuscripts in British Libraries, while similar to the above source, has a different scope. The four-volume work describes a longer time period and includes manuscripts composed in Latin, French, and other languages common in England at the time, alongside those in various forms of English. Once again, Ker organizes the listings by the location of the manuscripts. Many of the manuscripts are biblical or other liturgical and devotional works, mostly in Latin. A fifth volume, edited by Ian Cunningham and Andrew Watson and released in 2002, contains appendixes and addenda, many taken from Ker's notes. This volume is very much intended as an essential companion to the original with some additional indexes to the main set, making it easier to locate relevant entries.

The third work of Ker's presented here, ***Medieval Libraries of Great Britain: A List of Surviving Books***, is another ambitiously comprehensive project with the focus this time not on the manuscripts themselves but on the libraries that housed them, dating back to the Middle Ages. By looking at the known provenance and contemporaneous catalogs, Ker has attempted to reconstruct major collections. Though not critical to all researchers, this information can be very helpful in establishing the context of medieval access to works and can show how widely books were (or were not) available in their own time. Because of the nature of the project, more reliable information can be presented on later manuscripts than anything from before the Norman Conquest. Entries are arranged by medieval libraries with additional information and any published catalogs noted. Surviving books and manuscripts are listed under these entries but arranged alphabetically by their most recently known location. The annotations for each manuscript can be informative, although their compact nature and reliance on abbreviations can make them difficult to decipher clearly. Certainly, this work is neither for the casual reader nor the faint of heart. The 1987 supplement includes many corrections and additions. Though it was published a few years after Ker's death, it is based largely on his own notes and should be used alongside the original to ensure that the best

possible information is being consulted. A searchable online version of this work, dubbed *MLGB3*, is being developed and hosted by Bodleian Library at Oxford. Though it is currently in "beta" status, it can be accessed at mlgb3.bodleian.ox.ac.uk.

The extensive ***Anglo-Saxon Manuscripts: A Bibliographical Handlist of Manuscripts and Manuscript Fragments Written or Owned in England up to 1100*** compiled by Helmut Gneuss is the culmination of a half-century-long project to identify every known manuscript produced or owned in England during the Anglo-Saxon period, defined as roughly seventh century through 1100 CE. The scope is geographic rather than language-based, so many of the entries are for manuscripts with text in Latin or other languages. The volume is organized by the library known to contain the item, but it is fully indexed by each work's title and author (if known). A preliminary version of this list was published in the journal *Anglo-Saxon England* in 1981, but the full version was first published under the current title in 2001. The 2014 edition assembled by Gneuss and Michael Lapidge expands upon the original as details continue to emerge and corrections and updates are made. References to available digital editions of some manuscripts have been added alongside information on publications of facsimile editions or transcriptions. This ambitious tool can serve dual purposes: assisting in finding the "current" location of an item and also providing information about its origin and past travels. This title fits nicely alongside the works of Ker listed above in painting a detailed picture of the corpus of English manuscripts.

Now in its fourth edition, ***British Archives: A Guide to Archive Resources in the Uniged Kingdom*** by Janet Foster and Julia Sheppard remains an authoritative survey of archival collections in the UK. Entries for each archival collection include location and contact information, standard access policies, and a usually brief account of its historical background. Depending on the size and significance of the collection, you may find a more detailed discussion of key collections and highlights, but many entries do not attempt to describe the contents of the collection. This guide is more useful for researchers who have already found a manuscript or collection through another source and are looking to pay it a visit. The short introductory chapter on using archives is certainly a good primer for those unfamiliar with archival work. More experienced visitors of archives will be comfortable going directly to the listings, which are very straightforward and easy to understand. The 2002 edition added a great deal of information on digital access to archives as well as an expanded list of helpful websites, but these links are in need of updating as digitization has accelerated in the intervening years and many of the listed web sources have disappeared or have not been updated for some time.

ONLINE RESOURCES

Archive Finder. Chadwyck-Healey through ProQuest. archives.chadwyck.com.
British Library's Manuscript and Archive Catalogue. British Library. search archives.bl.uk/ (accessed 17 May 2019).
British Literary Manuscripts Online: Medieval and Renaissance. Farmington Hills, MI: Gale. www.gale.com.
Digital Bodleian. Bodleian Libraries, University of Oxford. digital.bodleian.ox.ac.uk/ (accessed 19 May 2019).
Digital Scriptorium. University of California Berkeley Library. www.digital-scriptorium.org/ (accessed 17 May 2019).
Parker Library on the Web. Stanford University Libraries. parker.stanford.edu/parker/ (accessed 17 May 2019).
Schoenberg Database of Manuscripts (*SDBM*). Schoenberg Institute for Manuscript Studies, University of Pennsylvania Libraries. sdbm.library.upenn.edu/ (accessed 17 May 2019).

Recent digital projects have made locating and accessing manuscripts much easier than ever before. Generous grant programs have allowed some of these resources to be offered freely over the web, but some content is still included only as part of subscription databases. While certainly not every manuscript is accessible online (freely or otherwise), improved library catalogs and digital tools have at the very least made many items discoverable to researchers around the world. Even so, due to the limited and disjointed nature of these projects, there is no single overarching search location to find everything. Some patience and strong searching strategies (see chapter 1), combined with the extensive print tools, can yield very fruitful results. The selected resources presented here are not meant to be comprehensive but are examples of significant collections or tools for locating relevant materials. Additional websites are described in chapter 9, including some stand-alone manuscripts of particular note.

When searching for a manuscript, one of the simplest sources also happens to be one of the best. The ***British Library's Manuscript & Archive Catalogue*** runs on the same search interface as the British Library's main catalog (described in chapter 3) and offers a wealth of information. As would be expected, searches can be done based on authors and works, as well as manuscript names if known. The resulting records include metadata such as the manuscript's provenance, materials of composition, size, access restrictions, and a listing of any published copies. The level of detail presented varies based on the amount of known information. Manuscripts available digitally from the British Library are noted in the record with URLs, but this is not indicated in the results list and searches cannot be limited to only results that include links. The scope of this

catalog is obviously limited to the British Library's physical collection, which is significant but not exhaustive. Since the British Library is the most significant collection of early English manuscripts, it should certainly not be overlooked.

The colleges of Oxford University have vast special collections that house, among many other things, thousands of medieval manuscripts. Over the last two decades, digitization projects and exhibits have made images from these collections available online but scattered across multiple websites and online repositories. The ***Digital Bodleian*** is the university library's attempt to bring together these images under one interface for search and access. The result is a smooth, user-friendly portal that can quickly connect researchers with high-resolution images from manuscripts. There is no advanced search option, but search results can be filtered by language or collection. In the Western Medieval Manuscripts collection, there are more than 250 manuscripts with Middle or Old English text. Some highlights are the *Cædmon Manuscript* and the *Vernon Manuscript*, a lengthy thirteenth-century volume containing more than 300 works of poetry and prose, both of which are completely digitized.

While some manuscripts are fully scanned, many others have only a page or two available, often focusing on illuminations or page decorations. It must also be noted that the *Digital Bodleian* is not meant to represent the full manuscript holdings of the university. *Medieval Manuscripts in Oxford Libraries* (https://medieval.bodleian.ox.ac.uk/) is a separate catalog that should be used for more comprehensive searching.

The University of Pennsylvania's ***Schoenberg Database of Manuscripts*** (***SDBM***) is an ambitious project to track manuscripts (in any language) sourced from published manuscript catalogs and sales records. Supported by a grant from the National Endowment for the Humanities, the *SDBM* relies on a crowdsourcing model to fill and verify data. This source is certainly still a work in progress with major gaps, and it sometimes provides confusing or contradictory results. Because the data is being pulled from sources that may use different standards, things such as language filters can be tricky. Anglo-Saxon and Old English are both listed as options with little overlap. Additionally, many manuscripts with texts in Old or Middle English are recorded simply as English, leaving some ambiguity about the actual language of the manuscript. Even so, it contains a great deal of information on relevant manuscripts such as known chains of custody and physical descriptions. Researchers have the opportunity to help improve this database by registering as contributors. As the project continues, it could become a more valuable source for identifying and locating manuscripts not easily found in other sources. The project has attracted an active community of editors devoted to curating the best information possible. Many entries from Ker and Gneuss's works have been cataloged to varying degrees of completeness at this time.

Chadwyck-Healey's ***Archive Finder*** is a subscription database with records for more than 200,000 archival collections in the US, UK, and Ireland. While the bulk of records describe personal papers and document collections from the last two hundred years, manuscripts and other earlier material can be found. Though this resource is not focused on literature, there are other non-literary documents from the Anglo-Saxon and medieval period and later that can be helpful to establish historical context of a work. Documentation that provides information about authors or other contemporary figures may also be located in archival collections. Each collection lists a brief description with keywords, but these can lead to search results that are not immediately clear. For example, we found Thomas Hoccleve listed as a subject for the papers of early twentieth-century American politician George William Norris. A call to the US Library of Congress confirms that this inclusion is an error that should soon be corrected in the database. Results of searches here will often be the beginning of a search rather than the end, pointing researchers in a particular direction without clarity on exactly what the archival materials are.

British Literary Manuscripts Online is a large collection of digitized manuscript images. Two collections have been released by Gale, with the first limited to manuscripts dated after 1660, and the second focused on earlier samples. The database covers thousands of works from 1120 to 1660, defining "literary" broadly to include some historical documents, letters, and other writings. The records contain brief descriptions of the text, manuscript locations, and the source of the digital images. The images themselves have been digitized from microfilm collections, notably *British Literary Manuscripts from the British Library*. Though the images are high resolution, the microforms on which they are based were black-and-white copies, not always of the best quality. This leads to some pages, and even entire manuscripts, that are very difficult to read. As many institutions, including the British Library, move to providing their own full-color digital copies of the original manuscripts, the content here becomes less valuable, but its breadth is still unmatched as a single source for digital access to English manuscripts of this era.

Primarily housed at Corpus Christi College, the Parker Library collection contains more than five hundred manuscripts. Many of these were salvaged from shuttered monastic libraries by Matthew Parker, who was Queen Elizabeth's first Archbishop of Canterbury in the late sixteenth century. In 2009, ***Parker Library on the Web*** was launched after a multiyear digitization project carried out by Corpus Christi and Stanford University. This initial version of *Parker* was a subscription database available through Harrassowitz (harrassowitz.de/parker-library.html). Though widely hailed for its high-definition scans and its usability, the price and relatively narrow scope made it somewhat difficult to access for many scholars. Early in 2018, this changed with the launch of *Parker on the Web 2.0* as a freely available web portal. Users anywhere can now access

this digitized collection, while additional download and usage rights allow for greater exposure. Some features, such as linked text in the manuscript descriptions and full-text secondary material, are still available only in the subscription service, but for the majority of readers the new iteration is more than enough to view the works and get basic background information like dates and locations of the manuscripts.

Among the manuscripts digitized here, Old and Middle English are present in fewer than one hundred, with the majority being Latin. Many of these texts are historical or ecclesiastical in nature, so they may not be of critical importance to researchers. But one literary highlight is Chaucer's *Troilus and Criseyde* (MS 061), one of the earliest extant copies of this work. The quality of the scans is the real draw of this collection, as the text can be very closely examined without loss of fidelity. *Parker* should serve as a model for future manuscript portals.

Digital Scriptorium is a searchable repository of images from manuscripts located in US institutions. The site is hosted by the University of California Berkeley with major content contributions from Yale University, Harvard University, Columbia University, and New York Public Library. The scope of the database is broad, defined as the medieval and Renaissance periods with no limitations on language or content. Though a few of the manuscripts are available as fully digitized image collections, most have just one or two image examples. This does not limit the tool's usefulness in locating manuscript editions that are part of participating collections. Links out to the home institutions do sometimes lead to more robust scanned copies hosted locally.

Cataloged entries give the reader some valuable pieces of information about the item, such as dates, scribal identification, and subject headings. A notes field may contain a physical description and an identification of texts included, but the detail of this information varies. Manuscripts can be browsed by home location or language. While Old English and Middle English are both available as filters, neither returns any results. Under "Advance Search," selecting the language field and entering *oldenglish* or *middleenglish* (note the lack of spacing) will be more effective, but still other relevant material is classified simply as English. Like many free online resources for manuscript studies, *Digital Scriptorium* is an incomplete tool but one that is worth a look for anyone trying to track down potentially unique examples of medieval or early modern works.

DICTIONARIES

Beal, Peter. *Dictionary of English Manuscript Terminology 1450–2000*. New York: Oxford University Press, 2008.

Brown, Michelle P. *Understanding Illuminated Manuscripts: A Guide to Technical Terms*. Los Angeles: J. Paul Getty Museum, 2018.
Pearce-Moses, Richard. *A Glossary of Archival and Records Terminology*. Chicago: Society of American Archivists, 2005.

Researchers new to manuscripts and other archival materials are likely to benefit from a subject dictionary or two. While there are several sources both in print or freely online that can handle basic definitions, the examples described here are good starting points with a focus on the kinds of manuscript and archival terms applicable to the relevant era and locations. Michelle Brown applied her experience with manuscripts at the British Library to produce ***Understanding Illuminated Manuscripts: A Guide to Technical Terms***. This is a concise glossary of terms associated with illuminated manuscripts, as the title suggests, but most are not specific to the illuminations. Plentiful color illustrations and a clean layout make this guide incredibly easy to use. Though it is not lengthy, it contains definitions ranging from basic book-making materials and text features to brief explanations of the kinds of religious works common throughout the Middle Ages. This glossary is a great tool for anyone already working with scholarly research. The illustrations are largely pulled from the J. Paul Getty Museum and, not surprisingly, the British Library's manuscript collection. Though compact in places, they offer nice visual examples of some of the physical features and techniques being described. The original 1994 edition was updated and expanded by Elizabeth Teviotdale and Nancy Turner with additional terms and illustrations. The new edition also includes very helpful cross-references between related terms.

With a different scope, Peter Beal's far more comprehensive ***Dictionary of English Manuscript Terminology 1450–2000*** provides scholarly definitions of well over a thousand terms related to the production, transmission, collection, and study of English manuscripts. With a combination of short definitions on topics like "quires" and longer, scholarly surveys of more complicated concepts like "paleography," there is information here on a wide range of terms related to book-making, illumination, and paleography. Since the date range falls almost entirely in the age of the printing press, some of the manuscript concepts are described more in line with modern archival interpretations than how they may relate to the monastic scriptoriums creating our handwritten editions. This would not be the ideal starting place for getting information on specific terminology, but the detailed articles on subjects such as forgery can be very helpful to those looking into questions of authenticity and provenance that are more universal to manuscript studies.

Published by the Society of American Archivists (SAA), ***A Glossary of Archival and Records Terminology*** by Richard Pearce-Moses updates previ-

ous editions targeting professional archivists with an edition meant to appeal to anyone working with archival materials. The scope of coverage is extensive, but entries, especially for more basic terms, are written very accessibly. The definitions here apply almost exclusively to civil records and personal document collections that one might find in a municipal or national archive. The SAA has made this dictionary available for free online at files.archivists.org/pubs/free/SAA-Glossary-2005.pdf.

PALEOGRAPHY AND OTHER TOOLS

Moorman, Charles. *Editing the Middle English Manuscript*. Jackson, MS: University Press of Mississippi, 1975.

Parkes, M. B. *English Cursive Book Hands, 1250–1500*. Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1969.

Roberts, Jane. *Guide to Scripts Used in English Writings up to 1500*. London: British Library, 2015.

Scragg, Donald. *A Conspectus of Scribal Hands Writing English, 960–1100*. Cambridge: Boydell & Brewer, 2012.

The term *paleography* can strike fear in the hearts of researchers. Yet it is nearly impossible to engage in meaningful work with a manuscript without first dedicating time to learning its script. While professional scribes were capable of beautifully precise and consistent scripts, we are not always so lucky. When approaching a handwritten copy for the first time, letters might look unintelligible, but time spent reading will reveal peculiarities and patterns. Fortunately, we are not left on our own with this task, and we can rely on the dedication and study of others to provide background and help us dig deeper into the text.

The scripts used in a manuscript are a key factor in determining its age and can uncover clues about its origins and purpose. The ***Guide to Scripts Used in English Writings up to 1500*** delivers detailed descriptions of handwriting styles found in English manuscripts. Littered with specific examples and large photographs, this is a good starting point for anyone trying to decipher a manuscript page or looking to place an example in its historic context. The photographic reproductions of the manuscripts are accompanied by transcriptions and discussions of particular paleographic features. Researchers will benefit from learning about the intricacies involved and the variety of scripts commonly found across time and geographic area. The survey focuses on some of the more famous text and manuscript examples in order to ground readers in familiar territory. A previous edition was published in 2005.

As its title suggests, ***English Cursive Book Hands, 1250–1500*** has a specific focus on the later medieval cursive scripts—primarily those commonly

identified as *Anglicana* and *Secretary*. So while this short work does not cover the full range of scribal peculiarities found in English literary manuscripts, the cursive forms covered within have their own unique features that are explored in more depth than in a general survey. Anglicana, also known as "English Court Hand," receives special attention as an original English script. It was heavily used in note-taking and public documents but saw growing acceptance among professional scribes during the period, and it began to show up more frequently in literary or religious manuscripts found in notable collections. This book was originally published in 1969; a 1979 second edition has been reprinted multiple times as a testament to its importance to the field.

A Conspectus of Scribal Hands Writing English, 960–1100 is an intensive work aiming to bring together Ker and Gneuss's painstaking indexing projects with an overlay of their identifiable scribal hands. The time period selected is where the bulk of surviving Anglo-Saxon manuscripts originate and where there is enough extant evidence to apply such a project. While Ker's work did, on occasion, identify common scribal hands, it was certainly not his focus, and this information is often delegated to footnotes. This volume seeks to catalog and locate the hands both chronologically and geographically. The data presented are a bit overwhelming. Using a combination of shelf marks and numbers from Ker's catalogs, manuscripts are identified, dated, and assigned to a numbered or named scribe. The information packed into these tables requires some context and frequent cross-referencing to the lists of abbreviations and notes. This resource should be approached only by those who have already familiarized themselves with the manuscript landscape and are looking to contextualize an example or find potential connections between editions copied by a common scribe or institution. A digital interface to allow searching, as is found on the *Late Medieval English Scribes* site (described in chapter 9), would open up this great source of information to more scholars.

The work that went into this volume seeks to draw attention to the often-overlooked scribes and to ensure that their contribution to the dissemination and survival of period literature is seen as more than just a means of mass-production. The sheer number of different hands identified in surviving manuscripts, and the relatively small number of scribes assigned to multiple examples, hint at the vast number of lost books that must have existed in the time period but did not survive.

A thin gem of a mere one hundred pages, ***Editing the Middle English Manuscript*** strives to provide a crash course in the preparation of a critical edition of a manuscript. While its walk-through is not nearly enough to actually develop a critical edition, it is a lively and fascinating look at the process. Chapters on paleography and Middle English grammar show some of the basic challenges of working with manuscripts of this time without getting too bogged down in the monotonies. The chapter on textual criticism is a perfect

introduction for those unfamiliar with the process of taking multiple manuscripts with scribal distinctions and synthesizing them into the "best possible" single coherent reading. Researchers who regularly rely on critical editions can certainly benefit from the perspective of the editor charged with piecing them together. The work shows a lasting reverence for manuscript sources while also demonstrating how modern critical editions can both represent and fail to represent the works on which they are based.

CONCLUSION

While manuscripts can prove difficult to access and use effectively, they offer a unique window into the time and place that produced them. For most researchers, translations and critical editions will remain the primary access points to early English literature, but these forms fix the text in particular readings or interpretations. Only by looking at the surviving sources can we start to understand how these works were presented to contemporary readers. Even to those who have not yet attained the prowess to read and understand the archaic languages, the manuscripts can serve as artifacts of their periods. Characteristics such as the quality of material, the presence of illuminations or other decorations, and the evident skill of the scribe can show us the relative value placed on the book. We should not look at manuscripts as imperfect copies of original texts but as collaborations across time between the authors and those who read and valued their works.

As digital tools become more sophisticated, manuscripts are receiving renewed scholarly interest. Improved access has allowed individual copies to be available throughout the world while also keeping the original safe from damage. Cooperative projects such as the *Schoenberg Database* are seeking to use crowdsourced metadata to create the next level of indexing on the groundwork laid by Ker and others. Advanced imaging can be applied to look beyond the readable text to discover clues to the production process, while software-assisted data mining offers fascinating possibilities to create enhanced critical editions and delve deeper into the study of scribal variation. After centuries in guarded libraries and private collections, medieval and Anglo-Saxon manuscripts are being brought into the light and becoming an essential tool for literary study.

NOTE

1. The Cotton Nero A.x manuscript is owned by the British Library and can be accessed online through the University of Calgary's *Cotton Nero A.x Project* at gawain-ms.ca/.

Chapter Seven

Genres

Having read the previous chapters, the medieval English researcher will have a deeper understanding and appreciation of the rich tableau of literary topics, problems, issues, themes, and languages that reflect the period. Studying a particular work in medieval English literature involves not only understanding the milieu in which the work is based but also the deep tradition that surrounds it. Genre is a category of works characterized by a particular form, style, or purpose, and it can apply to many disciplines in the humanities, especially art, music, and literature. The *Oxford English Dictionary* records the first instance of the word *genre* in 1770 in a private letter from Charles Jenner to the actor David Garrick.[1] The types of genre included in this chapter represent the broad variety of literature written in the medieval era and of which the researcher must be cognizant. They include hagiography, poetry, prose, drama/theater, medieval romance, folklore, and other literary traditions that directly bear on studying medieval English literature. It should be noted that these distinctions are often arbitrary. For example, an Old English poem such as Cædmon's *Hymn* can be studied either as alliterative verse or as a religious work. These sources are useful introductions to the complexity of each genre, allowing the researcher to go beyond general abstracts, bibliographies, and indexes into the detailed analysis of each genre.

HAGIOGRAPHY

Morey, James H. *Book and Verse: A Guide to Middle English Biblical Literature*. Urbana, IL: University of Illinois Press, 2000.

Rauer, Christine. *The Old English Martyrology: Edition, Translation and Commentary*. Cambridge: Boydell & Brewer, 2013.

Remley, Paul G. *Old English Biblical Verse: Studies in* Genesis, Exodus *and* Daniel. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1996.
Scahill, John, ed., with Margaret Rogerson. *Middle English Saints' Legends*. Cambridge: D. S. Brewer, 2005.
Szarmach, Paul E., ed. *Holy Men and Holy Women: Old English Prose Saints' Lives and Their Contexts*. Albany, NY: State University of New York Press, 1996.

The preponderance of medieval English literature consists of religious works that fall into a variety of categories, such as biblical verses, hagiographies (narrations of the lives of saints and Jesus), devotional writings, contemplative writings, pastoral writings (sermons and homilies), catechetical texts, martyrologies, and memoirs. These categories are not distinct, and individual titles can cross over if they fall into more than one genre. These works are part of the ecclesiastical tradition; consequently, the reader will need a solid grasp of Latin as many titles have not been translated.

Researchers interested in broadening their understanding of Middle English biblical literature will appreciate James Morey's ***Book and Verse: A Guide to Middle English Biblical Literature***. The work begins with four chapters giving an overview of the medieval notion of the Bible, how the biblical literature permeated English culture at the time, the place of English after the Norman Conquest, and the genres, audience, and modes of self-representation where biblical literature was characterized. The rest of the book contains main entries detailing where in Middle English literature parts of the Bible can be found. Each entry includes the title (or variant titles); references to the *Index of Middle English Verse*, the *Index of Printed Middle English Prose*, and the *Manual of the Writings in Middle English*; the list of manuscripts with editions when available; studies on the biblical content; a discussion of what constitutes biblical literature, its dramatic setting, and citation of its sources; and a summary of the contents such as events, names, quotations, and biblical citations. The Old and New Testament entries reference the Latin Vulgate. The entries are divided into a number of topics, including sections on the Psalter, canticles and hymns, temporale and passion narratives, lectionaries, prose Gospel commentaries, epistles, and versions of the Book of Revelation. For example, the section on passion narratives lists *Passion of Our Lord*, the *Northern Passion*, and John Lydgate's *Christes Passioun*. The book ends with a thirty-page bibliography; an index of biblical chapters; an index of biblical people, places, and events; an index of manuscripts; and a general index.

Volume VIII of the *Annotated Bibliographies of Old and Middle English Literature* series, ***Middle English Saints' Legends*** covers the scholarship written in English, French, and German from 1801 to 2000. John Scahill

focuses on Middle English saints' legends and what he calls the "borders" of romance, sermon, and biblical narrative. Types of works consist of reviews, literary histories, linguistic studies, and accounts of individual authors. The thirteen chapters include general works, geographical areas (e.g., South English Legendary), collections, individual works (e.g., John Mirk's *Festial*), John Capgrave's *Saints' Legends*, and independent legends. Three indexes address scholars and critics, Middle English texts, and manuscripts. The volume does not treat several legends because they are included in other volumes of the series; for example, the legends of the Katherine Group can be found in Ancrene Wisse, *the Katherine Group, and the Wooing Group* (volume II).

The *Junius* manuscript is important to Old English scholars as it contains the sole surviving copies of four poems on biblical themes, which modern scholars have called *Genesis*, *Exodus*, *Daniel*, and *Christ and Satan*. Scholars interested in studying these biblical texts can start with Paul Remley's ***Old English Biblical Verse: Studies in* Genesis, Exodus *and* Daniel**. The introductory essay (ninety-three pages) provides an excellent overview of the lost traditions of the *Junius* poems; their biblical background; the influence of biblical texts on the *Junius* poems; how these poems fit into the traditions of the other major manuscripts (*Cotton Vitellius*, *Exeter*, and *Vercelli*); a detailed analysis of *Genesis*, *Exodus*, and *Daniel*; and the use of these poems in biblical instruction. This volume is part of the series *Cambridge Studies in Anglo-Saxon England*. Other titles in the series include *Religion and Literature in Western England, 600–800*; *The Metrical Grammar of Beowulf*; *The Irish Tradition in Old English Literature*; and *The Spirituality of Old English Poetry*.

Paul Szarmach edited ***Holy Men and Holy Women: Old English Prose Saints' Lives and Their Contexts***, an introduction to studying Old English prose hagiography with several essays focusing on the works of Ælfric. The introductory essay by E. Gordon Whatley has an overview of sources for researching saints' lives. The essay has four sections: a list of all texts of individual saints' lives in Old English prose; material for studying Old English prose saints' lives; resources for studying the Latin sources of saints' lives from non-native saints and native English saints; and a list of Latin manuscripts of English provenance up to 1100 CE that contain hagiographic texts. The book is divided into two main parts: the first part is a broad, multidisciplinary overview of the historical context for studying saints' lives, and the second part places this broader context in the realm of literary criticism. The book ends with three indexes of manuscripts, saints, and subjects.

Christine Rauer's ***The Old English Martyrology: Edition, Translation and Commentary*** is a valuable resource in studying the lives of the saints (more than 230 hagiographies), feast days, time measurement, seasons, biblical events, and cosmology. The last complete translation was written by Georg

Herzfeld in 1900 (volume 116 in the *Early English Text Society* series), so a new translation—which takes into account new scholarship and two manuscripts of which Herzfeld was unaware and new scholarship—was sorely needed. The *Old English Martyrology* was composed between 800 CE and 900 CE and drew much of its material from Latin sources. Six manuscripts survived, and Rauer discusses their contents and relationships at length. The *Martyrology* is organized by the days of the calendar with December 25 as the first day. The original Old English is accompanied by a critical apparatus; the modern English translation is on the facing page for a quick comparison. After the calendar year is complete, Rauer gives a detailed commentary on each day with a discussion of the content, how particular Old English words are used, and a bibliography pertaining to that particular feast day. Three appendixes provide further information regarding the manuscripts. There is a glossary of Old English, Latin, and Greek terms with references to hapax legomenon (words that appear only once in a work or language). Indexes include personal names, primary sources, place-names, and geographical terms mentioned in the *Old English Martyrology*. Last, there is a select bibliography referring the reader to the companion website that features a much larger annotated bibliography titled *The Old English Martyrology: An Annotated Bibliography* (described in chapter 9).

POETRY

Duncan, Thomas G., ed. *A Companion to the Middle English Lyric*. Cambridge: D. S. Brewer, 2005.

Duncan, Thomas G., ed. *Medieval English Lyrics and Carols*. Cambridge: D. S. Brewer, 2013.

Klinck, Anne L. *The Old English Elegies: A Critical Edition and Genre Study*. Montreal: McGill-Queen's University Press, 1992.

Krapp, George Philip, and Elliott Van Kirk Dobbie, eds. *The Anglo-Saxon Poetic Records: A Collective Edition* (*ASPR*). 6 volumes. New York: Columbia University Press, 1931–1953.

Muir, Bernard J. *The Exeter Anthology of Old English Poetry: An Edition of Exeter Dean and Chapter MS 3501*. 2nd edition. Exeter, UK: University of Exeter Press, 2000.

Williamson, Craig, trans. *The Complete Old English Poems*. Philadelphia: University of Pennsylvania Press, 2017.

While most Anglo-Saxon literature was composed between 650 CE and 1100 CE, the bulk of Old English poetry can be found in the four extant

manuscripts written between 975 CE and 1000 CE: *The Vercelli Book*, *The Exeter Book*, the Cotton Vitellius A.xv, and the *Junius* manuscript. Old English poetry can be divided into two broad types: (1) the heroic sagas with their origins in pre-Christian Germanic myth, history, and custom; and (2) the Christian tradition through the evangelization of the Anglo-Saxons in pre-Conquest Britain. The majority of Old English poets are anonymous. The topical range of Middle English poetry is much greater. The period can be divided into three periods: the Early Middle English (1100 CE–1250 CE), exemplified by the work of Geoffrey of Monmouth's *Historia regum Britanniae*; the Middle English (1250 CE–1400 CE), with Chaucer's *Canterbury Tales* being the pinnacle of the period; and the Late Middle English (1400 CE–1500 CE), with Gower, Lydgate, and Hoccleve representing an eroding "rustic" view of medieval sensibilities. The two main categories from this era includes romantic narratives and religious/didactic poetry, with lyric form being the dominate poetical form.

Researchers relied on individual facsimiles and translations through the centuries until these manuscripts were first collected and published from 1931 to 1953 in George Krapp's six-volume set ***The Anglo-Saxon Poetic Records: A Collective Edition*** (***ASPR***). The set contains all Old English poetry, including the manuscripts listed above, as well as other sources. The volumes are organized as such: *The Junius Manuscript* by George Philip Krapp, ed., vol. 1 (1931); *The Vercelli Book* by George Philip Krapp, ed., vol. 2 (1932); *The Exeter Book* by George Philip Krapp and Elliott Van Kirk Dobbie, eds., vol. 3 (1936); *Beowulf and Judith* by Elliott Van Kirk Dobbie, ed., vol. 4 (1953); *The Paris Psalter and the Meters of Boethius* by George Philip Krapp, ed., vol. 5 (1932); *The Anglo-Saxon Minor Poems* by Elliott Van Kirk Dobbie, ed., vol. 6 (1942).

While there are later editions of individual works and collections, *ASPR* remains the standard work for Old English poetry. A concordance to the *ASPR* was published in 1978 (superseded by the *Dictionary of Old English*, see chapter 8) and the complete set can be downloaded and used for text mining from the *Oxford Text Archive* (ota.ox.ac.uk/desc/3009).

Bernard Muir's ***The Exeter Anthology of Old English Poetry: An Edition of Exeter Dean and Chapter MS 3501*** is the first new edition since the *ASPR* was published in 1936. *The Exeter Book* is the earliest and largest collection of vernacular poetry from the period. Muir's work is divided into two volumes; the first provides the text of each poem, and the second has the commentary. The introduction in volume 1 is a detailed overview of the problems, issues, and concerns that a scholar needs to address in examining a medieval manuscript: the date, provenance, and authorship; its codicology; the transcripts, catalog descriptions, facsimiles, and major editions; the

preparation of the folios; defective and damaged folios; drawings, decorative patterns, and letter forms; marginalia, interlinear glosses, and foliation; the author, anthologist, scribes, and script; and the spelling and punctuation. The 160-page bibliography is divided into four sections: "Primary Sources and Facsimiles," "Critical Literature," "Reference Works Consulted," and "Index to Bibliography of Critical Literature." The volumes can be opened side by side, with the reader consulting the commentary for a detailed explanation as he reads the primary source. Each chapter in the commentary begins with a discussion of the source material of the poem. For example, Muir begins the commentary for the poem *Soul and Body II* by referencing the longer version found in the *Vercelli* manuscript. Muir often comments on the analysis in the *ASPR*; through this process, the researcher becomes aware of the issues and interpretations that accompany a particular passage of text. A DVD was released in 2006 that contained facsimile pages of the complete manuscript and Muir's critical edition. Features on this DVD included comparisons of the original manuscript and the transcripts, hyperlinked commentaries, bibliographies, and a video discussing the history of the manuscript.

Medieval English Lyrics and Carols is a revised edition of two previous anthologies: *Medieval English Lyrics, 1200–1400* (1995) and *Late Medieval English Lyrics and Carols, 1400–1530* (2000). This anthology, by Thomas G. Duncan, offers a representative range of medieval English lyrics and carols with pre-Chaucerian love lyrics in part 1, with part 2 consisting mostly of lyrics from the fifteenth and early sixteenth century. The extensive introduction gives an overview of the types of medieval English lyrics and carols, an analysis of lyric stanza and meters, a guide to metrical reading, manuscript sources, and a short pronunciation guide. The lyrics and carols are ordered by theme. Part 1 consists of love, penitential, moral, and devotional lyrics, while part 2 contains all these types, as well as courtly and doctrinal lyrics. Last, each part has a section on miscellaneous lyrics that don't fall neatly into any category. On the left-hand side of each page is the lyric in its medieval form, with a gloss on the right-hand side to assist in the reading of the original text. Many of the pre-Chaucerian lyrics have been normalized into a fourteenth-century London English dialect to make sense of the rhythm. The book ends with a select bibliography and an index of lyrics.

A Companion to the Middle English Lyric makes a significant contribution to the critical studies of the lyric. The medieval lyric poetic form is not concerned with feelings of personal love expressed intimately but rather as feelings publicly voiced by the typical man. Middle English poetry distinguishes itself from Old English form where "rhyme scheme and stanza form alike were unknown" (xiii). As Thomas Duncan points out, two new themes of love began to dominate the lyrical form: the secular lyric as an expression

of "absolute devotion and service to a lady" (xiii) and the devotional lyric as an expression of Christ's love for humanity. Duncan explains why the lyric form did not receive a wider audience: the variety of Middle English dialects; inconsistent textual transcriptions; the anonymity of authors; and the brevity of the form leading to the loss of original sources. These and other issues resulted in keeping the study of the lyrical form restricted. The chapters are written by a variety of scholars covering manuscripts, editorial practices, love lyrics before Chaucer, courtly lyrics, religious lyrics, political lyrics, and lyrics in Middle Scots. The book ends with an extensive bibliography of works, an index of manuscripts, and an index of the lyrics cited in the book.

An elegy is a type of poem notable by its somber reflection on such topics as lamentations for the dead, being in exile, desolation, and the brevity of life's delights. Anne Klinck's ***The Old English Elegies: A Critical Edition and Genre Study*** provides an analysis of nine elegies: *The Wanderer*; *The Seafarer*; *The Riming Poem*; *Deor*; *Wulf and Eadwacer*; *The Wife's Lament*; *Resignation*; *The Husband's Message*; and *The Ruin*. Each poem is presented in full and accompanied by an introduction, a critical apparatus, and extensive notes. There is an appendix on analogues with Latin, Old Welsh, and Old Icelandic (Norse) sources. The seventy-page bibliography is broken down into headings for easy consultation. Some of the headings include "Poetics and Genre Theory," "Greek Literature," "Classical Latin Literature," "Christian and Medieval Latin Literature," "Early Welsh and Irish Poetry," "Early Germanic Literature and Culture (contains Norse)," and the poems listed above. There is a glossary and word index pertinent to the poems discussed. Each headword is in Old English, and each entry has a short translation and reference to the particular elegy.

For students looking to immerse themselves in Old English poetry but are not yet fluent in the language, Craig Williamson's translations in ***The Complete Old English Poems*** is an excellent place to start. As Tom Shippey states in the introduction, this is the first time that the complete corpus of Old English poems has been translated by a single author into one volume. After Williamson lays out the challenges of translating Old English poetry, he breaks his book into sections based on the manuscript tradition: the *Junius* manuscript, *The Vercelli Book*, *The Exeter Book*, *Beowulf and Judith*, the Metrical Psalms of the *Paris Psalter* and the *Meters of Boethius*, the Minor poems, and last, additional poems. Williamson used the *Anglo-Saxon Poetic Records* as a checklist for what he included in his volume. The work concludes with an appendix of possible solutions to *The Exeter Book* riddles and an index of poem titles. Williamson wrote an earlier work, *The Old English Riddles of the "Exeter Book*," in 1977 that goes into greater detail regarding the historical criticism of each riddle with extensive notes evaluating the work of earlier critics.

PROSE

Edwards, A. S. G. *A Companion to Middle English Prose*. Cambridge: D. S. Brewer, 2004.
Edwards, A. S. G., ed. *Middle English Prose: A Critical Guide to Major Authors and Genres*. New Brunswick, NJ: Rutgers University Press, 1984.
Hollis, Stephanie, and Michael Wright, eds. *Old English Prose of Secular Learning*. Cambridge: D. S. Brewer, 1992.
Quinn, Karen J., and Kenneth P. Quinn. *A Manual of Old English Prose*. New York: Garland Publishing, 1990.
Swanton, Michael James. *Anglo-Saxon Chronicles*. 2nd edition. New York: Routledge, 1998.

Prose has a broad definition—writing that is non-rhyming narrative. Early works of prose were non-literary: laws, wills, and charters going back to King Aethelberht I of the sixth century. Literary prose began to appear in the ninth century with King Alfred translating religious works such as *Pastoral Care* by Saint Gregory the Great and Boethius's *The Consolation of Philosophy*. The *Anglo-Saxon Chronicle* appeared during this time. It is considered a cultural document that chronicled the political and historical events of the period and is a valuable linguistic source for studying Old English prose. One of the earliest works of secular prose is *Apollonius of Tyre*, an Old English translation of a Latin manuscript (which in turn was translated from a lost Greek manuscript). The sole manuscript survived in Wulfstan's homilies, and later John Gower had a version of the story in his poem *Confessio Amantis*. Religious and secular prose reemerged in the early fourteenth century with writers such as Richard Rolle (*The Commandment* and *Meditations on the Passion*) and Walter Hilton (*Scale of Perfection*). Secular prose became prominent in the late fourteenth century with Chaucer's *Tale of Melibeus* and John Mandeville's *The Voyage and Travels of Sir John Mandeville*. The fifteenth century had Layamon's *Brut* and Sir Thomas Malory's *Morte d'Arthur*. This section lists recent scholarship that provides an overview of Old and Middle English prose. For more comprehensive searches, the researcher is encouraged to examine *The Index of Middle English Prose* and the *Corpus of Middle English Prose and Verse* (chapter 9).

Michael Swanton's ***Anglo-Saxon Chronicles*** is a translation of the seven manuscripts recorded between the late ninth century during the reign of Alfred the Great and shortly after the death of King Stephen in 1154. The dates in the *Chronicles* cover the Roman occupation of Britain in 62 CE to the end of Stephen's reign. It is the largest single source of Old English prose. While editions have appeared over the centuries, Swanton's work is the first

since G. N. Garmonsway's edition in 1953. The work has maps, genealogical tables, and illustrations, and it allows ready access to one of the prime sources of English national culture. The listing of the seven main manuscripts (with accompanying letter designation and location) is based on the manuscript tradition laid out in *The Chronicles and Memorials of Great Britain and Ireland during the Middle Ages* (*Rerum Britannicarum medii aevi scriptores*), published from 1858 to 1911 (see table 7.1).

While the *Anglo-Saxon Chronicles* has a common core of texts, each manuscript has many individual texts with local variations depending upon where and when a manuscript was written. For example, *The Peterborough Chronicle* has the earliest known use of Middle English.

A. S. G. Edwards's work ***Middle English Prose: A Critical Guide to Major Authors and Genres*** is an authoritative guide to major writers for the period. Although at first glance the book appears to be dated (published in 1984), the researcher will find this work educational in terms of the problems and challenges of Middle English studies. Each chapter contains a survey of scholarship, a "statement of desiderata," and ideas "for possible avenues of future inquiry." For example, the chapter on John Trevisa gives an overview of his life and works and an analysis of the manuscript tradition—with Edwards lamenting that many of Trevisa's works (*The Gospel of Nichodemus*, for example) do not have modern editions or have been largely ignored by scholars. This chapter lists the manuscript and print editions of each work with a bibliography of secondary sources. While *Middle English Prose* seeks to be comprehensive, it is not exhaustive. Works such as *Morte d'Arthur* were not covered because Edwards felt that the scholarship on this and other specific titles was well represented elsewhere.

With the advent of interest in Middle English codicology stemming from the creation of the *Index of Middle English Prose*, A. S. G. Edwards has compiled ***A Companion to Middle English Prose*** to orient new and experienced researchers to the manuscript tradition in Middle English prose. Each chapter, written by a different scholar, focuses on either a writer or a genre, such as the writers of the *Ancrene Wisse*, the Katherine Group, and the Wohunge Group; Richard Rolle; Walter Hilton; Nicholas Love; Julian of Norwich; Margery Kempe; Sir John Mandeville; John Trevisa; Reginald Pecock; and John Fortescue. Genres discussed include romances, saints' lives, private letters, sermon literature, historical prose, devotional writings, Wycliffite prose, various forms of technical writing, and a final chapter on Caxton and printing. Each chapter ends with a bibliography of authoritative texts, manuscripts sources, and secondary works, as the particular writer or genre warrants. There is a short index to the manuscripts at the end of the book.

Table 7.1. The seven manuscripts of the *Anglo-Saxon Chronicles*

The Winchester Chronicle [A] Cambridge, Corpus Christi College MS 173, ff. Iv–32r [A²] British Library MS Cotton Otho Bxi, 2
The Abingdon Chronicles (I and II) [B] British Library MSS Cotton Tiberius Aiii, f. 178 + Avi, ff. I–34 [C] British Library MS Cotton Tiberius B, ff. II5v–64
The Worcester Chronicle [D] British Library MS Cotton Tiberius Biv, ff. 3–86
The Peterborough Chronicle [E] Oxford, Bodleian Library MS Laud 636
The Canterbury Bi-Lingual Epitome [F] British Library MS Cotton Domitian Aviii, ff. 30–70

Tracking down a particular text can be a time-consuming process. One resource that will save the researcher time is Karen and Kenneth Quinn's ***A Manual of Old English Prose***. The scope of the manual includes all literary prose. However, the works of Ælfric and Wulfstan, charters, inscriptions, wills, and legal documents are omitted. The manual is divided into five sections: manuscripts, texts, editions, criticism, and indexes. A typical entry contains the text number (based on Frank and Cameron's *A Plan for the Dictionary of Old English*), the modern title, the manuscript title, the first line (incipit), the plan number, the manuscript number (based on Ker's *Catalogue of Manuscripts Containing Anglo-Saxon*; see chapter 6), the description of the text detailing the subject matter and relationship to other texts, the editions where one can find a text, and the variety of criticism that can be found in journal articles and books.

While the study of Old English prose has been dominated by homiletic, devotional, and hagiographical works, Stephanie Hollis and Michael Wright's ***Old English Prose of Secular Learning*** spotlights the secular prose of proverbs (*Dicts of Cato* and Durham), dialogues (*Solomon and Saturn* and *Adrian and Ritheus*), romance (*Appllonius of Tyre*, *Alexander's Letter to Aristotle*, and *Wonders of the East*), Byrhtferth of Ramsey and Computus, and magico-medieval literature (lapidary, leechbook, lacnunga, recipes, folklore, herbal and *Peri Didaxeon*, and miscellaneous studies). Each entry lists the manuscript sources, descriptions, and provenance; references to Frank and Cameron's *A Plan for the Dictionary of Old English* and Ker's *Catalogue of Manuscripts Containing Anglo-Saxon*; facsimiles, editions, and English translations; and commentaries.

DRAMA AND THEATER

Beadle, Richard, and Alan J. Fletcher, eds. *The Cambridge Companion to Medieval English Theatre*. 2nd edition. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2008.

Berger, Sidney. *Medieval English Drama: An Annotated Bibliography of Recent Criticism*. New York: Garland Publishing, 1990.

Lancashire, Ian. *Dramatic Texts and Records of Britain: A Chronological Topography to 1558*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1984.

Records of Early English Drama (*REED*). Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1979–. reed.utoronto.ca/.

Wagonheim, Sylvia Stoler, ed. *Annals of English Drama, 975–1700*. 3rd edition. New York: Routledge, 1989.

Medieval English theater covers the period roughly from 970 CE with the *Visitatio Sepulchri* (*The Visit to the Sepulchre*) in the *Regularis Concordia* of Æthelwold of Winchester to the last performance of Chester plays in 1575 CE. Given this broad range of time, it should be of no surprise that theater could be divided into many subgenres: liturgical drama, mystery plays, morality plays, secular plays, farces, pageants, and masques. The challenge of doing research is inherent in the nature of the genre itself: ephemeral performances were naturally emphasized over the textual tradition. In other words, dramatists were more concerned with providing thoughtful performances rather than adding to the historical record. Furthermore, researchers are challenged to make sense of this broad genre from a small yet wide variety of extant texts and records.

Richard Beadle and Alan Fletcher's ***The Cambridge Companion to Medieval English Theatre*** contains an excellent overview. They note that the phrase "medieval English theatre" is problematic in that "medieval" does not refer to the mystery plays that were performed well into the modern period; "English" does not cover Scottish, Irish, and Cornish plays from this period; and "theatre" does not refer to plays performed in the streets (not in a theater) with their emphasis on being seen and heard, not read. It is not until later periods that the reading (stagecraft) of plays was given equal footing. The volume has a series of essays covering the types of plays, including the York Corpus Christi Play, the Chester cycle, the Townley pageants, the N-Town plays, non-cycle plays, morality plays, and saints and miracles. A chapter by John McKinnell discussing modern productions of medieval English drama notes that such modern productions are experimental in nature since the lack of a complete production history leaves us with only a reasonable guess about how the original staging and production methods for a given play were imple-

mented. Many photographs of these modern interpretations are provided for context. The last chapter is a guide to the criticism of medieval English theater with an emphasis on the developments since 1994 when the first edition of this volume was published. A select bibliography for each chapter makes this work a useful reference.

Tracking down early dramatic texts can be a time-consuming process. Original source material may be lost, found in multiple manuscript renditions, or performed by different theatrical groups and companies in different locations. The ***Annals of English Drama, 975–1700*** corrals and organizes this material for easier consultation. The subtitle exemplifies the nature of this work: "*An analytical record of all plays, extant or lost, chronologically arranged and indexed by authors, titles, dramatic companies & c*." The original editor was Alfred Harbage, who produced the 1940 edition; Samuel Schoenbaum did the second edition (1964) and the supplements with Harbage. The third edition was revised and expanded on research done since 1970 by Sylvia Stoler Wagonheim. The chronology section is displayed in chart form with the following headings: date, author, title, limits, type, auspices (location), earliest texts, and latest texts. For example, an entry for John Lydgate lists Lydgate, John; *A Mumming at Windsor*; 1427–1430; Verses, for Mumming; Court; MSS; and last, a blank entry for latest text. Many of the medieval plays are anonymous and lost. The book has indexes for English playwrights, English plays, a selective list of medieval drama texts, foreign playwrights, foreign plays translated or adopted, and dramatic companies. The index of dramatic companies contains the active dates of the company, the patron who supported it, chief actors, and the theaters that hosted the plays. Last, there are lists for theaters and extant play manuscripts from 975 CE to 1700 CE with their locations and catalog numbers. The third edition of *Annals* contains new content since the last supplement in 1970. However, the work has not received favorable reviews as omissions, inaccuracies, and other problems plague the compilation. Consequently, the diligent researcher should refer also to the second edition (1964) by Harbage and Schoenbaum and the 1966 and 1970 supplements to ensure that information is not missed.

Records of Early English Drama (***REED***) is published by the University of Toronto Press. The works in this series are products of scholars working "to locate, transcribe, and edit historical documents containing evidence of drama, secular music, and other communal entertainment and ceremony from the Middle Ages until 1642 when the Puritans closed the London theaters" (*REED* website). Twenty-six volumes have been published so far, with the first nineteen titles available on the *Internet Archive*. Each volume provides the heritage of a particular city, town, shire, county, and geographical region (e.g., Wales). Titles include *York*; *Chester*; *Coventry*; *Newcastle upon Tyne*;

Norwich 1540–1642; *Cumberland/West Moreland/Gloucestershire*; *Devon*; *Cambridge*; *Herefordshire/Worcestershire*; *Lancashire*; *Shropshire*; *Somerset (including Bath)*; *Bristol*; *Dorset/Cornwall*; *Sussex*; *Kent: Diocese of Canterbury*; *Oxford*; *Wales*; *Cheshire (including Chester)*; *Ecclesiastical London*; *Lincolnshire*; *Lancashire including Isle of Man addenda*; *Inns of Court*; *Civic London to 1558*; *Staffordshire*; and *Berkshire*, the latest title, which was published in 2018. Of special note is the volume *Wales: Records of Early Drama*, which encompasses Welsh theater from the beginning and extends coverage to 1660 since Wales was not subject to the Puritan edict of 1642 that closed London theaters. A typical record contains the place and date or date range to which the record relates; document title; archive and shelf mark; language and spelling; unreadable text; abbreviations and contractions that the scribe used; and omitted text. Another twenty-six collections are in the publication queue.

Dramatic Texts and Records of Britain: A Chronological Topography to 1558 is an excellent tool for tracing a text, when its performances were given, and where it was performed. The work is divided into several sections for quick reference. This work provides a chronological list of dramatic texts, a topographical list of dramatic records, illustrations and maps, doubtful texts and records, and appendixes that index playing companies, playwrights, playing places and buildings, and important dates. The depth of each entry varies considerably. A typical entry for a dramatic text contains the name of the work, the date of creation and/or the performance dates, and the location(s) of the performances. Additional information for each entry will have the name of the playwright if available, the acting troupes, the official sanction from the authorities, and anything else regarding the performance that is extant. When necessary, a list of published editions, texts, or manuscripts is given. The time frame is broad—encompassing the beginning of the Roman occupation in the first century to the early Renaissance period. The entries encompassing the Roman period denote the archaeological digs and scholarly references regarding the ancient amphitheaters. Someone doing research on the Chester Corpus Christi mystery play, for example, would look at the entries under the heading Chester (Cheshire) in the topographical list to find when the play was first performed (1422–1474), the scholarship cited, and its relationships to other religious plays performed in Chester. The bulk of the records in this reference work covers England, but Wales, Scotland, and Ireland are represented as well.

Sidney Berger wrote ***Medieval English Drama: An Annotated Bibliography of Recent Criticism*** as an extension, update, and expansion of Carl Stratman's *Bibliography of Medieval Drama* (1972). Berger's work includes more than 1,900 annotated citations of editions, collections of plays, books,

and articles of criticism. In addition, Berger has added subsequent titles published between 1970 and 1990. Berger also expanded the bibliography by including tertiary works that were related to the primary and secondary material that constituted the mystery, morality, and miracle plays. Other additions have literary criticism containing performance reviews and liturgical and musical works that were cited in the context of the plays. Furthermore, Berger covers early Renaissance plays as they pertain to morality plays, since the line between the medieval and Renaissance eras is fuzzy at best. He lists Bale, Medwall, and Rastell as examples of this transition. The book has three appendixes. The first appendix has the cycle plays—Chester, N-Town, Wakefield, and York. The second appendix covers plays by known authors and anonymous late plays. The last appendix is an early version of the *Records of Early English Drama* (*REED*) projected publication list**,** which is now outdated.

MEDIEVAL ROMANCE AND ARTHURIAN LITERATURE

Archibald, Elizabeth, and Ad Putter, eds. *The Cambridge Companion to the Arthurian Legend*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2009.

Brewer, Derek, and Jonathan Gibson, eds. *A Companion to the Gawain-Poet*. Cambridge: D. S. Brewer, 1997.

Fulton, Helen, ed. *A Companion to Arthurian Literature*. Malden, MA: Blackwell, 2009.

Krueger, Roberta L., ed. *The Cambridge Companion to Medieval Romance*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2000.

Lacy, Norris J., ed. *Medieval Arthurian Literature: A Guide to Recent Research*. New York: Garland Publishing, 1996.

Lacy, Norris, Geoffrey Ashe, and Debra N. Mancoff, eds. *The Arthurian Handbook*. 2nd edition. New York: Garland Publishing, 1997.

Lupack, Alan, ed. *The Oxford Guide to Arthurian Literature and Legend.* Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2005.

Rice, Joanne A. *Middle English Romance: An Annotated Bibliography, 1955–1985*. New York: Garland Publishing, 1987.

One of the most enduring literary genres is medieval romance; however, the phrase "medieval romance" is inaccurate. The term "romance" derives from the Old French expression "metre en romanz," which has come down to us as the French word "roman." The vernacular tradition of the romantic narratives first appeared in French courts in the twelfth century. Romances usually had romantic, chivalric, and magical themes that often involved quests for objects

or people. Originally written in verse, later works were written in prose. The early romantic works were vernacular Old French translations of ancient Latin and Greek epics. As the stories were brought to other courts (including England), they inspired new stories.

The purpose of ***The Cambridge Companion to Medieval Romance*** is not to provide a comprehensive survey but to focus on the origins, forms, and contexts of medieval romance with special emphasis on the dominance of medieval French origins. Essays cover translation, romance and other genres, the manuscript tradition, courtly love, chivalry, gender, and relationships between men and women. The final section covers the manifestation and impact of medieval romance on later French prose romance; German romance; British and Italian chivalric themes; Middle English romantic notions of family, marriage, and intimacy; and medieval Spanish themes, including Cervantes's revisions. A selective chronology on European romance lists the approximate year a work was composed and the original language. The chronology provides the researcher with an immediate snapshot of the influence of the works and languages on one another. For example, Geoffrey of Monmouth's *Historia regum Britanniae*, composed in Latin in 1138 CE, is followed by eight works in Old French (including Anglo-Norman) composed between 1147 CE and 1165 CE. In fact, a quick survey of the chronology reveals the dominance of Old French works on the genre as twenty-nine of the forty-one works listed between 1138 and 1200 were written in Old French. Layamon's *Brut* was the first work in Middle English, appearing between 1200 CE and 1225 CE. The chronology ends with Cervantes's *Los trabajos de Persiles y Sigismunda* published in 1617. The section on editions and translations has information on different critical editions, select translations into English or another modern language, editions that have the original text and a facing-page translation, and whether a romance has been translated into a modern language.

Middle English Romance: An Annotated Bibliography, 1955–1985 fills an important gap in this period as it is an expansion of Severs's *A Manual of the Writings in Middle English, 1050–1500* (volume 1) published in 1967. Most chapters in Joanne Rice's work begin with a reference number to a particular section in Severs's work for easy consultation. *Middle English Romance* covers more esoteric titles and lesser-known authors (Chaucer, Malory, *Sir Gawain*, and ballads are excluded) of the genre, with Rice dividing the 1715 citations into two categories: verse and prose romances. The alphabetical table of contents enables the researcher to locate information quickly. The annotations can vary from short summaries to listings of the table of contents for monographs. Entries for primary works have a catalog of the original manuscripts and subsequent editions (including the original language), followed by an extensive inventory of secondary criticism. Most

of the journals, series, and monographs can be found in *MLAIB* and *ABELL*. The value of Rice's work lies in the annotations, which delve into greater detail than these two resources and provides a non-judgmental summary of each work. Annotated bibliographies that cover a specific range of years are useful as they capture a certain interpretation of scholarship at that time. For example, they may cover a journal that had great promise but ultimately had a short publication run. *Avalon to Camelot* was a journal that ceased publication in 1986 after only eight issues. It is indexed only in the *MLAIB* (with no annotations) and not in *ABELL*. Its contents are found in Rice's work.

An important subgenre of medieval romance is Arthurian literature. The texts that have focused on Arthur as a literary character can be loosely arranged as chronicles, romances, and fantasies. In the twelfth century, Geoffrey of Monmouth mythologizes Arthur in *Historia regum Britanniae* (*History of the Kings of Britain*), chronicling Arthur as an actual historical figure with regal authority. Geoffrey influenced later writers such as Chrétien of Troyes and Sir Thomas Malory. Chrétien of Troyes, the French poet, established the romantic theme by creating the love affair between Lancelot and Guinevere (a relationship that is unknown in the chronicle tradition) in *Le Chevalier de la Charrette* (*The Knight of the Cart*). The fantasy subgenre can be seen in early Welsh versions such as *Culhwch ac Olwen* (*Culhwch and Olwen*), where various characters use magic to make themselves talk to or turn themselves into animals.

An excellent place to start Arthurian research is ***The Oxford Guide to Arthurian Literature and Legend***. This volume is divided into seven chapters: early accounts of Arthur, chronicles, and historical literature; the romance tradition; Malory, his influence, and the continuing romance tradition; the Holy Grail; Gawain; Merlin; and Tristan and Isolt. The analytical table of contents assists the researcher in quickly locating information. There is a bibliography of basic resources for the study of the Arthurian legends at the beginning of the volume, with each chapter ending with a detailed bibliography. Each chapter traces the historical tradition of that particular topic to present-day writers and contemporary thought. For example, the first chapter, titled "Early Accounts of Arthur, Chronicles, and Historical Literature," begins with early references to Arthur, Arthur in Welsh literature, saints' lives, Geoffrey of Monmouth, the chronicle tradition in England and Scotland, Arthur's death and survival, historical verse, historical drama, and a final section on historical novels written up to date of publication. The volume ends with an index of short descriptions of Arthurian people, places, and things.

Complementing *The Oxford Guide* is ***The Cambridge Companion to the Arthurian Legend***. The editors Elizabeth Archibald and Ad Putter argue that, while *The Oxford Guide* seeks to be comprehensive by being descriptive

rather than analytical, *The Cambridge Companion* seeks a balance between the descriptive and the analytic. Consequently, *The Cambridge Companion* is comprised of thirteen essays that are divided into two parts: first, the chronology of the Arthurian legend from the beginning of Welsh tradition through the exploration of history and the myth to shifting views of the legend from the twelfth to twenty-first century. The second part explores a variety of themes including Arthurian ideals, ethics, imperialism, adultery, religion, magic, and geography. There is a selective chronology of events and a map of Arthurian Britain.

A Companion to Arthurian Literature, edited by Helen Fulton, comprises a set of thirty-five essays examining the history of Arthur, the Celtic origins of the Arthurian legend, the continental Arthurian traditions, Arthur's presence in medieval English literature, Arthur in the ensuing centuries, Arthur in the modern age, and Arthur on film. Fulton argues that the essays demonstrate that there is no "original" Arthur or "authentic Arthurian legend." Rather, concepts such as leadership, kinship, empire, identity, religion, and power manifest themselves through the Arthurian characters. Each chapter ends with notes, primary sources, references, and further reading (the chapters dealing with cinema have a filmography).

Norris Lacy, Geoffrey Ashe, and Debra N. Mancoff's ***The Arthurian Handbook*** is a critical survey of all periods and topics of the Arthurian legend. Arthur's origins are discussed in detail in the early chapters with later chapters on the literature and the impact of the Arthur legend on "manuscript and book illustration, painting, sculpture, tapestry, opera, film, and other media" (xi). Each chapter ends with a section on notes that refer to the bibliography at the end of the book. A detailed glossary runs eighty-four pages. A chronology has the most important events, authors, and works of art ascribed to the legend. There are genealogy charts for Arthur, Galahad, and Parzival as documented by Geoffrey of Monmouth, Sir Thomas Malory, the French Vulgate Merlin, the French Vulgate, and Wolfram von Eschenbach. A short section on heraldry has drawings of Arthur's and Gawain's coats of arms and shields as described in various works. The highly selective bibliography lists mostly books with a general focus and is organized/arranged by chapter for quick reference. Last, there are over seventy illustrations (drawings, images from manuscripts, photographs, and stills from movies) spread throughout the volume, making it a pleasure to thumb through.

Medieval Arthurian Literature: A Guide to Recent Research takes a broader, European perspective. Written by scholars familiar with Arthurian myth, each chapter concentrates on a particular country or region (e.g., England and Scandinavia). A typical chapter begins with a narrative bibliography of recent literature followed by an enumerative bibliography. Each of these

bibliographies consists of citations to bibliographies, editions, translations, and critical studies. The researcher will want to consult this work if he is focusing on tracing the tradition in a particular country, for example, Spain or Portugal. The editor, Norris Lacy, ends the work with a chapter on Arthurian translation.

The essays in ***A Companion to the Gawain-Poet*** provide the researcher with a solid foundation for studying the four poems attributed to the *Gawain*-poet: *Sir Gawain and the Green Knight*, *Patience*, *Pearl*, and *Cleanness* (sometimes called *Purity*). Written at the end of the fourteenth century in the English Midlands, the poems appear in one extant manuscript, the Cotton Nero A.x. The author (some scholars suggest there was more than one) is unknown, and scholars refer to the poet as the "*Gawain*-poet" or "*Pearl*-poet." Although the poet was a contemporary of Chaucer, Langland, and Gower, the temperament, style, and dialect of the poems are different. The editors, Derek Brewer and Jonathan Gibson, suggest that the poet had a different intended audience. The essays include topics on authorship, gender, the materials of culture (castles, feasts, jewels, hunts, and armor), manuscripts, scriptural sources, and later versions of Sir Gawain in novels, opera, and film. The book contains illustrations of the landscape and geography, castles, armor, and the illustrations from the Cotton manuscript, as well as a list of annotated editions.

FOLKLORE

Alexander, Marc. *A Companion to the Folklore, Myths and Customs of Britain*. Stroud, UK: Sutton Publishing, 2002.

Baer, Florence E. *Folklore and Literature of the British Isles: An Annotated Bibliography*. New York: Garland Publishing, 1986.

Simpson, Jacqueline, and Steve Roud. *A Dictionary of English Folklore*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2000.

"Folk-lore" refers to the "Lore of the People" in Anglo-Saxon, specifically the traditional beliefs, customs, legends, and practices of the people. Medieval English literature is saturated with references to the local and national folklore. For example, Layamon's *Brut* is based on the mythical founder of Britain, Brutus of Troy. In fact, many of these folkloric references in such legendary and apocryphal stories as Robin Hood, medieval romances (e.g., *Bevis of Hampton*), and the Arthurian romances are obscure, and, given the passage of time, their origins can be difficult if not impossible to trace. While many contemporary texts will have glossaries that the reader can consult quickly, the

resources listed here will assist the reader in providing a deeper understanding of the broader cultural contexts found within many medieval texts.

Florence Baer's work ***Folklore and Literature of the British Isles: An Annotated Bibliography*** focuses on the study of English folklore. Including material cited from 1890 to 1980, Baer limits the 1,039 citations to works written only in Old, Middle, and Modern English. As an example, she writes that citations to Layamon's use of folklore is included while influences on the Latin works of Geoffrey of Monmouth are excluded. To ensure that her work is consistent with the broader folklore scholarship, Baer uses the standard folklore classifications found in Antti Aarne's *The Types of the Folktale*, Stith Thompson's *Motif-Index of Folk Literature*, and Francis James Child's *The English and Scottish Popular Ballads*. The citations are drawn from journal articles, chapters of books, books, and dissertations that deal significantly with English literature and folklore. Each citation is listed alphabetically by author with a short annotation describing the work.

A Dictionary of English Folklore is a quick reference guide covering a variety of specific English genres (oral and performance), calendar customs, life-cycle customs, supernatural beliefs, and superstitious beliefs and practices. Entries range from a few lines to almost a page. The medievalist will find this work beneficial in tracking down the origin of a particular idea or person. For example, in researching Robin Hood, the stories of his exploits have been around since the fourteenth century, and there exists a rich history of the legend, although the man himself probably never existed. Rhymes of his exploits go back to the 1370s, and there are thirty-eight ballads about him dating between the fifteenth and seventeenth centuries. The bibliography is worth browsing (alas, it is in alphabetical order by author's last name and not by subject) for suggestions to other works. For example, titles on Robin Hood list R. B. Dobson and J. Taylor's *Rymes of Robyn Hood* (1976) and J. C. Holt's *Robin Hood* (1982).

A *Companion to the Folklore, Myths and Customs of Britain* is a general introduction to the traditional beliefs and customs of Great Britain. Beginning in the pre-Celtic era, Marc Alexander traces the various traditions, beliefs, festivals, and celebrations that constitute the customs of Britain. The entries vary in length from a couple of sentences to a few pages. An appendix on the "Folklore Year" provides a quick reference on what day a dance, festival, procession, etc. is celebrated each month (fixed and flexible dates), while an appendix on "Folklore Sites" lists locations for ancient monuments, Christian rites, witchcraft, fairy sightings, and sites associated with King Arthur. There are few "see also" references; the annotations generally stand on their own.

OTHER LITERATURES

Dean, Ruth. *Anglo-Norman Literature: A Guide to Texts and Manuscripts*. London: Anglo-Norman Text Society, 1999.

Dover, Carol, ed. *A Companion to the Lancelot-Grail Cycle*. Cambridge: D. S. Brewer, 2003.

Lacy, Norris J., ed. *Lancelot-Grail: The Old French Arthurian Vulgate and Post-Vulgate in Translation*. 5 volumes. New York: Garland Publishing, 1993–1996.

Rigg, A. G. *A History of Anglo-Latin Literature, 1066–1422*. New York: Cambridge University Press, 1992 (reprint 2006).

The works listed in this section reflect the complex interactions of languages, themes, geography, and history that comprise the medieval English literature landscape. A researcher will not get far in comprehending these interactions in the literature without being able to trace the origin of a particular title through the corpora of Anglo-Norman and Anglo-Latin history. After the Norman Conquest, Latin was the most popular language, followed by Anglo-Norman. The materials in this section are reference tools designed to identify and locate extant works in these languages.

A History of Anglo-Latin Literature, 1066–1422 aims to be a comprehensive, chronological history of medieval Anglo-Latin writings. According to A. G. Rigg, this history represents nine-tenths of the literary writing from this period. The common opinion that England's literary history declined after the Norman Conquest—and revived only in the fourteenth century with Chaucer, Langland, and the *Gawain*-poet—does not consider the tradition of Latin literature during this period. Authors such as Geoffrey of Monmouth, John of Salisbury, Gerald of Wales, and John Gower contributed greatly to England's literary reputation in continental Europe. The writings encompass epic, lyric, comedy, satire, prose anecdote, romance, saints' lives, and devotional texts. Rigg provides samples of each writer's work (with a modern English translation) against the backdrop of the historical, political, religious, and literary forces that brought about the work. Details of even the minor writers are enticing. For example, Elias of Thriplow (died before 1251 CE) is listed as a "newly discovered" grammarian whose entire oeuvre has been reexamined and updated in 1981. A critical edition and translation of his work *Serium senectutis* was published in 1995.

Researchers unfamiliar with the thirteenth-century French *Lancelot-Grail Cycle* (or *Vulgate Cycle*) can begin their studies with ***A Companion to the Lancelot-Grail Cycle***. The *Cycle* brings together the stories of Arthur with the quest for the Holy Grail and is a major source of Arthurian legend for Thomas

Malory's *Morte d'Arthur*. The *Cycle* is embodied in a corpus of five main prose works: the *Estoire del Saint Graal*; the *Estoire Merlin*; the *Lancelot*; *Queste del Saint Graal*; and *Mort Artu*. *A Companion to the Lancelot-Grail Cycle* consists of a series of essays touching on themes of the social and ideological milieu of the work, how it relates to history, and the evolution of each work. There are chapters devoted to each of the individual romantic works. There is a section focusing on how the *Lancelot-Grail Cycle* developed in certain countries: England has two chapters, one on the influence the *Cycle* had on Malory and his predecessors and the other chapter describing the manuscript tradition in England and Wales (of the 220 surviving manuscripts of the *Cycle*, approximately a third have been in England or Wales at some time). Other chapters examine Lancelot in Italy, Germany, Spain, Portugal, and the Lowlands. The editor, Carol Dover, ends the *Companion* with an examination of three movies that remain faithful to the original story by placing Lancelot and not Perceval as the hero of the *Cycle*: *Les Chevaliers de la Table Ronde* (1990), *Lancelot du Lac* (1974), and *Monty Python and the Holy Grail* (1975).

A good quality English translation of the works can be found in the ***Lancelot-Grail: The Old French Arthurian Vulgate and Post-Vulgate in Translation***, published under the general direction of Norris J. Lacy. With multiple translators contributing, this is the first complete English translation of the *Cycle*. The Old French source texts from which the prose is translated are indicated throughout; textual variants, philological issues, and translation difficulties are brought to the reader's attention in the footnotes. The five-volume set covers *The History of the Holy Grail*, *The Story of Merlin*, *Lancelot*, *The Quest for the Holy Grail*, *The Death of Arthur*, *The Post-Vulgate Cycle*, and *The Merlin Continuation*. There is a convenient section on chapter summaries for quick reference. An index of proper names contains individuals and places in the *Cycle.* Researchers seeking more in-depth information on a particular entry can go to the corresponding entry in G. D. West's *An Index of Proper Names in French Arthurian Prose Romances* (University of Toronto Press, 1978).

Like so many reference works listed in the present volume, ***Anglo-Norman Literature: A Guide to Texts and Manuscripts*** is an update for a work that appeared decades before—in this case, Johan Vising's *Anglo-Norman Language and Literature* published in 1923. Anglo-Norman refers to the French language used in the British Isles from the Norman Conquest to the end of the fifteenth century. However, the editor Ruth Dean takes a broader cultural and literary perspective by examining English, Irish, and continental authors; French works that were known in England at the time; authors such as Marie de France who wrote at the English court but considered herself distinct from English society by retaining her continental heritage writing style; prose, poetry, science and technology, fables, translations, historical, devotional, and

homiletical works; and esoteric works such as advice for the estate manager and the lovelorn. There are 986 citations that range from complete works to a single folio leaf. Each citation has a brief introduction to the work, an incipit, an inventory of manuscripts, and a highly selective list of secondary literature. There are indexes to manuscripts, titles, sources, and patrons including a concordance to Vising and a useful index of incipits.

CONCLUSION

The works in this section should provide a comprehensive plan for gaining an understanding of a particular genre. However, the researcher should keep in mind that the genres blend and overlap; religious drama and historical prose are just two examples of the need to take an expansive view of the literature. Another example is the distinction between religious and secular prose. The medieval period is dominated by Christian themes, and making this distinction is, in some ways, artificial. Secular prose can have religious themes (e.g., Christian love in the Arthurian romances) yet can be distinguished from works with overtly religious topics (e.g., stories of the Apostles). Each work listed in this chapter has limitations; the researcher is advised to read each introduction to determine how the author or editor defined and contextualized the genre and to build a relevant bibliography by consulting general abstracts, bibliographies, and indexes in conjunction with reviewing this chapter's works.

NOTE

1. "genre, n." *OED Online*. Oxford University Press, July 2018. November 1, 2018. C. Jenner *Let.* 5 May in D. Garrick *Private Corr.* (1831) I. 384. "With regard to the *genre*, I am of opinion that an English audience will not relish it so well as a more characteristic kind of comedy."

Chapter Eight

Dictionaries, Lexicons, Thesauri, Etymologies, Paleographies, and Text-Mining Tools

Studying the languages and texts of Old and Middle English means not only working in these languages but also having a good grasp of the other medieval languages, including Latin, Anglo-Norman, and Old French. Other languages of the British Isles that the researcher may encounter include Brittonic, Pictish, Scottish, Irish, Celtic, and Welsh. To compound matters, the researcher should be aware of the linguistic tools available and the training necessary for working with them in the language of the original text. This chapter will introduce the researcher to dictionaries, lexicons, thesauri, etymologies, and paleographical tools that are indispensable for the scholarly study of medieval material. There is a section on text mining for those researchers who would like to delve further into the digital humanities. Many of the resources listed here are incomplete or at first glance may be considered "dated" by someone with an uninformed eye. For example, one of the best tools for understanding Old English, the *Dictionary of Old English Online*, remains incomplete, with the entries covering the letters *A* to *I* (*I* was completed in 2018). The question becomes this: what scholarly titles can the researcher turn to for the rest of the Old English alphabet? For Middle English, the confusingly titled *A Dictionary of the Old English Language* by Francis Henry Stratman (later editions were renamed *Middle English Dictionary*) has been the standard for over one hundred years.

In addition to working in a variety of languages, the researcher will need to develop the skills of accurately reading manuscripts and deciphering the writing. Manuscripts have variances in spelling (mistakes, intentional changes by the transcriber, etc.), cryptic abbreviations, and other problems and the researcher will need the right tool to navigate these perilous shores. The tools of the trade have different purposes, although some functions will overlap. The types of dictionaries are many, including "defining" dictionaries that contain

semantic (and in some cases etymological as well) explanations, "translating" dictionaries that provide translations into modern English and explanations, and "thematic" dictionaries that gather and explain the specific vocabulary of given fields. Lexicons are similar to dictionaries but usually focus on an ancient language (e.g., Latin) or on the special vocabulary of a field of study or of a particular author. In linguistics, the lexicon can be all the words that carry meaning (called "lexemes"). Lemmas are a subset of lexemes and are the headwords in a dictionary. A headword is the heading for an entry in a dictionary or encyclopedia.

Researching the etymology of words is often necessary in order to appreciate fully a writer's use of a particular word. Etymologies study the history of words and how their meanings can change over time. Thesauri list words grouped together with similarity in meaning (i.e., synonyms and antonyms) and related concepts, and they are different from dictionaries in that they do not give the meaning of words. Paleography is the study of historical handwriting with a focus on deciphering, reading, and dating manuscripts, how manuscripts were produced, and the scripts used. The advent of digital humanities means that English studies researchers have a greater variety of tools to study individual texts and groups of texts. Developing such a skill set means locating relevant datasets, analyzing the datasets and understanding their limitations, cleaning data, working on data-analysis projects, and developing project-management skills necessary for steering digital humanities projects to completion. Researchers should be aware of such potential contributions to the scholarly literature.

ENGLISH ETYMOLOGIES AND THESAURI

Alexander, Marc, ed. *Historical Thesaurus of English*. Glasgow: University of Glasgow, 2009–. ht.ac.uk.

Kay, Christian, and Michael Samuels, eds. *Historical Thesaurus of the Oxford English Dictionary*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2009.

Klein, Ernest. *A Comprehensive Etymological Dictionary of the English Language*. 2 volumes. Amsterdam: Elsevier Scientific Publishing, 1966.

Onions, Charles Talbut, George W. S. Friedrichsen, and R. W. Burchfield. *The Oxford Dictionary of English Etymology*. Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1966.

Roberts, Jane, and Christian Kay, with Lynne Grundy, eds. *A Thesaurus of Old English* (*TOE*). Glasgow: University of Glasgow, 2005–. oldenglishthesaurus.arts.gla.ac.uk.

Simpson, John, and Edmund Weiner, eds. *Oxford English Dictionary* (*OED*). 2nd edition. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2000–. www.oed.com.

A dictionary is a collection of words in one or more specific languages, arranged alphabetically, which will often include information on definitions, usage, etymologies, thesauri, pronunciations, and translations. Dictionaries can be focused on one work, one author, a particular period of time, or a geographical area. Etymologies are useful tools for historians, linguists, and philologists for tracing the history of what a word means, how it spread from one language to another, and how it sounded when spoken. While a typical entry of a word may appear to provide a definition, etymologies are not definitions. Another related research tool is the thesaurus. Thesauri are useful in clarifying the meaning of an unfamiliar word when its definition in a dictionary can not be understood. A non-native speaker will find thesauri useful since the range of synonyms offered by a thesaurus will usually contain one or more words that he already knows.

The single most important resource for the study of the English Language is the ***Oxford English Dictionary*** (***OED***). In 1857, the Philological Society of London called for a new English dictionary. The project was completed in 1928 under the title *New English Dictionary on Historical Principles* and contained more than 400,000 words and phrases in ten volumes. A supplement was published in 1933, and the name was changed to the *Oxford English Dictionary*. Another supplement of four volumes was published between 1972 and 1986 to account for new twentieth-century words and words from the English Commonwealth and from the United States. The second edition of the *OED* was published in 1989 in twenty volumes. In 1992, a CD-ROM was published. Three volumes of additions were added between 1993 and 1997. The *OED* is available online through subscription with over 600,000 words and 3.5 million quotations included. The editorial board is working on the third edition.

The *OED* can be searched online in a number of ways. First, there is the simple search, whereby the record for the headword is retrieved. The advanced option allows searching the entire database by entries, senses, and quotations. The results can come from an entry name, a part of another word's definition, a lemma, variant spellings, definition, etymology (language or cited form), label, quotation, or the first quotation, or by a quotation's date, author, title, and text. If the researcher is unsure how words may be related, the proximity searching function has the option of finding nearby words that are one, five, ten, and up to one hundred words apart. Using the quick search option for the Old English word *anwealda* yields zero hits. However, using the advanced option and searching in the full text yields one hit: "to think one is God almighty: to have a greatly exaggerated opinion of one's own." The record

retrieved demonstrates the beauty and complexity of the *OED*. At the top of the screen, you have audio pronunciation of the word "almighty," forms the word took in Middle English, origin and frequency, etymons listed (i.e., God and almighty), and the etymology. In this case, the word has been used as a noun, adjective, and adverb, although the noun form is the oldest citation. The first instance of the word is in the *Codex Aureus Inscription, Christ Church, Canterbury* (Sawyer 1204a) and printed in D. Whitelock's *Sweet's Anglo-Saxon Reader* (1967), page 205. There are links to the *Historical Thesaurus of the OED* and the "Categories" section. Last, the record provides a date for when it was last updated (June 2014) and whether it appeared in earlier versions of the *OED* (the earliest version was in 1900). The user can browse categories by subject, usage, region, timeline, thesaurus, and origin. The *OED* is extensive in its coverage of definitions, synonyms, and etymologies, but it is not exhaustive.

Once a scholar researching the etymological roots of a word has consulted the online database *Oxford English Dictionary*, thoroughness demands that he examine two earlier dictionaries devoted exclusively to etymology: *A Comprehensive Etymological Dictionary of the English Language* and *The Oxford Dictionary of English Etymology*, both published in 1966. Ernest Klein's ***A Comprehensive Etymological Dictionary of the English Language*** is a unique and comprehensive account of English etymology. Klein's purpose is "not only to give *the history of words*, but to give also *History in words*. This dictionary is the first attempt *to give the history of human civilization and culture condensed in the etymological data of words*" (x). A transliteration of Semitic words is provided; etymologies of personal and mythological names are included as well (e.g., Arthur and Lancelot have entries). The work comprises terms used both in the humanities and in the sciences. Klein emphasizes the importance of tracing as many variants of a word through the Indo-European tree. Hybrid words and loan translations (i.e., words taken from other languages and adopted) are included; many grammatical terms in the modern languages are derived from Latin, which in turn were loan translations from Greek.

Charles Onions, George Friedrichsen, and R. W. Burchfield's ***The Oxford Dictionary of English Etymology*** is not as comprehensive as Klein's work. Onions and Friedrichsen worked on the first edition of the print *Oxford English Dictionary*; Onions was the fourth editor. The introduction of *The Oxford Dictionary of English Etymology* gives a short overview of the travails of tracking down the origins of a particular word. Many words in English are traced back to Latin or French origins, which is true especially of many Middle English words that have Anglo-Norman and Old French origins, as seen by their peculiar spellings. However, other etymologies are uncertain.

For example, the word *evident* has a similar word in Old French (évident) and in Latin (ēvident) so it is unclear from which language the word is derived. This work provides a key to the pronunciation of vowels and consonants.

In comparing Klein, Onions, and the *OED*, the word *bred* serves to illustrate the differences between the three resources, with Klein's work giving a much more detailed analysis in this example. Klein lists *bred* as the past tense of the past participle of *breed* from the Middle English *bredde*, which came from the Old English *brēdde* (the infinitive, *brēdan*); there is a "see also" reference to *breed* with a corresponding detailed reference. Onions' work lists only the infinitive *breed*. The *OED* is more comprehensive than Klein and Onions in listing the various verb forms, but the etymology is shorter: like Klein, the past tense and past participle are given, *bred* with the forms of the infinitive given over the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries (*brede*, *breede*, *breed*); the Middle English *bredde*, *bred*, past tense *breded* and past participle *breden*; and the etymology listing Old English *brédan* being equated with Old High German *bruotan*. What is interesting about the entry in the *OED* is that it contains a note stating that the entry has not been updated fully since 1888. Consequently, the researcher is advised to review all three etymological sources for a complete and authoritative answer.

The ***Historical Thesaurus of the Oxford English Dictionary*** is a taxonomic classification of the senses and lemmas of most words in the *OED Online*, what *OED* calls a "kind of semantic index to the contents of the *OED*" (www.oed.com/view/th/class/29206). It seeks to be the first comprehensive historical thesaurus produced for any language. The *Thesaurus* has 800,000 words and meanings in 235,000 entry categories. It is based on the second edition of the *OED* and *A Thesaurus of Old English*. The thesaurus was conceived and compiled by the Department of English at the University of Glasgow. Researchers can search the thesaurus as part of the *OED Online* subscription or separately at the open-access website ***Historical Thesaurus of English***. The thesaurus allows researchers to find synonyms for individual words in the *OED* and trace their development from Old English to the present. The thesaurus allows researchers to chronicle the linguistic evolution of an object, concept, or expression with reference to the *OED* definition. The *Historical Thesaurus* groups the senses and words in the *OED* according to their subject, and results are ordered by the date of first use. For example, a search for the word *manred* returns six thesaurus classes. The first entry has the taxonomy: the world > physical sensation > sexual relations > sexual activity > sexual intercourse > [noun] *manred* (c. 1275). The short citation gave "In extended use: sexual submission. Obsolete. rare." Clicking on this link provides the source material and sentence the word appears in: "Laʒamon *Brut* (Calig.) (1978) l. 12932 He wolde mon-radene [c1300 Otho manradene]

habben wið þan maiden." Old English words use the modern *OED* spelling rather than their "original" form. It should be noted that *OED*'s policy is not to include words that died out before 1150 CE. Consequently, the researcher will need to consult the *Historical Thesaurus of English* for a more complete picture of these linguistic outliers. The *Historical Thesaurus of English* is based on the *Oxford English Dictionary* with some material taken from *A Thesaurus of Old English*. The first edition was published in print as the *Historical Thesaurus of the OED* by Oxford University Press in 2009.

Jane Roberts and Christian Kay's ***A Thesaurus of Old English*** (***TOE***) database is based on the second edition of the 2000 print edition. The database debuted in 2005 with frequent updates. The words are arranged by subject rather than in alphabetical order. The researcher can search for an Old English word or phrase, for a word in modern English, or by flags that denote whether a word is uncommon or rare. Browsing a list of category headings is an option. The structure of the classification is hierarchical, so terms proceed from the most general to the specific. Furthermore, the meaning of a word is derived from its place in the hierarchy, specifically the words above and below it in the structure. The *TOE* uses the definitions found in the Bosworth-Toller and Clark Hall dictionaries (described below) in order to build its taxonomy. Since the *OED* omits words that had dropped out of use by 1150 CE, the *TOE* plays a critical role in filling those gaps.

MEDIEVAL ENGLISH DICTIONARIES

Bosworth, Joseph, and T. Northcote Toller. *An Anglo-Saxon Dictionary*. Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1898. Supplement, 1921.

Cameron, Angus, Ashley Crandell Amos, Antonette diPaolo Healey, et al. *Dictionary of Old English: A to I Online* (*DOE*). Toronto: Dictionary of Old English Project, 2018–. tapor.library.utoronto.ca/doe.

Clark Hall, J. R., with a supplement by Herbert D. Meritt. *A Concise Anglo-Saxon Dictionary*. 4th edition. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1960.

Middle English Dictionary (*MED*). Lewis, Robert E., et al., eds. Ann Arbor, MI: University of Michigan Press, 1952–2001. 13 volumes. Online edition in *Middle English Compendium*. Frances McSparran, et al., eds. Ann Arbor, MI: University of Michigan Library, 2000–2018. quod.lib.umich.edu/m/middle-english-dictionary.

Sweet, Henry. *The Student's Dictionary of Anglo-Saxon*. Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1967 (1991).

Periodic dictionaries are helpful in providing the researcher with an overarching view of a language. Given that words will change over time (orthographic, phonological, morphological, and lexical variations are examples), the challenge of such dictionaries is to document these chronological changes. Furthermore, the regional diversity of a language over a significant period of time remains a challenge for the researcher in grasping how to use the word.

The ***Dictionary of Old English: A to I Online*** (***DOE***) began in 1968 to replace the Bosworth-Toller's *Anglo-Saxon Dictionary* with the first fascicles produced in 1986 and the online version going public in 2000. While most other dictionaries are indebted to dictionaries from previous eras, the editors of *DOE* decided to start from scratch by using the database of the *Dictionary of Old English Corpus* (*DOEC*) to determine the headwords, definitions, and quotations for the *DOE*. The *DOE* covers the vocabulary of the first six centuries (600 CE–1150 CE) and contains 15,981 headwords in the 2018 release. The *DOEC* includes 3,037 texts, with at least one copy of each extant text in Old English. The words from the *DOEC* are incorporated into the *DOE* and are cross-referenced. These surviving texts were written on parchment, carved in stone, and inscribed in jewelry. The texts are made up of prose, poetry, glosses to Latin texts, and inscriptions, with prose being the largest category. The range of prose covers "saints' lives, sermons, biblical translations, penitential writings, laws, charters and wills, records (of manumissions, land grants, land sales, land surveys), chronicles, a set of tables for computing the moveable feasts of the Church calendar and for astrological calculations, medical texts, prognostics (the Anglo-Saxon equivalent of the horoscope), charms (such as those for a toothache or for an easy labour), and even cryptograms" (*DOE* website).

There is a myriad of options for searching the *DOE*, including headword, attested spelling, part of speech, occurrence, definition, citation reference, citation, parenthetical material, cross-reference, Latin cross-reference, secondary cross-reference, additional material, and name. A headword search for the term *dæg* retrieved the modern English translation of "rarely," its identification as a noun, the standard paradigm (dæg | dæges | dæge | dagas | daga | dagum), and a list of records showing the spelling variants in various abbreviated works. The researcher can then switch to the *DOEC* to read the particular work.

Since the *DOE* is completed only to the letter *I*, other Old English dictionaries will need to be consulted. The largest, most complete dictionary used for Anglo-Saxon is Joseph Bosworth and T. Northcote Toller's ***An Anglo-Saxon Dictionary*** published in 1838 by Bosworth with a revision by Toller in 1898. A supplement was published in 1921 by Toller, and another supplement by Alistair Campbell in 1972 contained additions and corrections. The original

source material was based on the manuscript collections of Bosworth and so was, in a sense, incomplete. The dictionary covers the Anglo-Saxon language used by the Anglo-Saxons in the British Isles between 700 CE and 1100 CE. An entry includes part of speech, definition, Latin equivalent, passages from texts, etymology, and cross-references to variant forms. For example, "æálá" is an interjection meaning "Oh! Alas!" and can be found in the *Meters of Boethius*. Since the *DOE* is incomplete, Bosworth-Toller's essential work, though dated in some respects, will continue to be used for years to come. There is an online searchable version of Bosworth-Toller's dictionary with results pointing to a scanned copy of the original print version. Researchers should note that the online database (http://bosworth.ff.cuni.cz/) does not include the Campbell supplement. The website by the German Lexicon Project allows for the entire dictionary to be downloaded as a text file (http://lexicon.ff.cuni.cz/texts/oe_bosworthtoller_about.html).

J. R. Clark Hall's ***A Concise Anglo-Saxon Dictionary*** was first published in 1894 with the fourth edition published in 1960. Due to the *DOE* being incomplete, the book has been reprinted numerous times, indicating its continuing importance for Old English studies. The fourth edition has a supplement by Herbert Meritt that includes source material since the third edition was published in 1931, the year Clark Hall died. The volume has a list of signs and abbreviations with explanations referring to occurrences, grammar (e.g., verbs), edited Old English works, manuscripts, and authors. For example, the entry for the word "āwacian," *to wake*, Æ, refers to Ælfric in the list with the entry expounding on the different editions of the *Homilies* and other works. The entry also has a "see also" entry for ÆT that refers to another entry, Ælfric *Heptateuch*. Another hidden feature of the list is the references to cited works that contain glossaries, word indexes, glossaries with a word index but no references, and glossaries that are partial or incomplete.

The serious student of Anglo-Saxon will have a number of Henry Sweet's works in her personal library. Sweet wrote a collection of books in the late nineteenth century that are still used by students of Old English today, including *The Anglo-Saxon Reader in Prose and Verse*; *The Anglo-Saxon Primer with Grammar, Notes, and Glossary*; and ***The Student's Dictionary of Anglo-Saxon***. Originally published in 1896, *The Student's Dictionary* has been revised and reprinted numerous times (the latest imprint from Clarendon Press is from 1991). Designed as an abridgement to Bosworth-Toller, Sweet outlines a number of difficulties in dealing with Anglo-Saxon lexicography that resonate to this day. Many manuscripts are poorly edited and carelessly written, which makes ascertaining words and derivatives hard if not impossible. An obscure word found in one manuscript may simply be a variant of a more common word. Furthermore, determining if a word was Anglo-Saxon or a misspelled

Latin word can be difficult to confirm. Previous Anglo-Saxon dictionaries were incomplete, included many words from the transition period (Old English to early Middle English) 1100 CE–1200 CE, and had words that were Middle English. Sweet's dictionary is in alphabetical order with the headwords in the early West-Saxon dialect. Variations on spelling and a basic chart on the grammatical inflections of nouns, adjectives, verbs, etc. are provided.

Although there were many dictionaries of Middle English compiled in the nineteenth century, most were brief and incomplete. The completion of the ***Middle English Dictionary*** (***MED***) in 2001 was a crowning achievement for a project begun in 1952. Consisting of thirteen volumes, the *MED* covers words from source material originating during the period 1100 CE to 1476 CE. This period reflects the fact that there was little written in Middle English from the Norman Conquest at the end of the eleventh century to the introduction of printing into England in 1476. Words from texts written in English during this period in England, Wales, and Ireland are included, while Middle Scots texts are excluded because they can be found in the *Dictionary of the Older Scottish Tongue*. The second edition of *The Plan and Bibliography* supplement published in 2007 outlines in greater detail the future amendments to be made. This supplement has a list of regional texts and manuscripts from which the words are drawn. The *MED* began as a print edition, published by the University of Michigan Press and issued through 115 fascicles from 1952 to 2001. The online version was published in 2000. The database consists of over 900,000 quotations and 56,000 entries.

LATIN, FRENCH, AND NORMAN DICTIONARIES

Database of Latin Dictionaries. Turnhou, Belgium: Brepols, 2005–. www.brepolis.net.

Dictionary of Medieval Latin from British Sources (*DMLBS*). Turnhout, Belgium: Brepols, 2015–. www.brepolis.net.

Etymological Dictionary of Old French / Dictionnaire étymologique de l'ancien français (*DEAF*). Heidelberg: Heidelberg Academy of Sciences, 2010–. www.deaf-page.de.

Niermeyer, J. F., and C. van de Kieft. *Mediae Latinitatis Lexicon Minus*. 2nd edition. 2 volumes. Boston: Brill, 2002.

Rothwell, William, ed. *Anglo-Norman Dictionary* (The Anglo-Norman On-Line Hub). 2006–. www.anglo-norman.net.

The manuscript and source traditions of Anglo-Saxon and Middle English texts necessitate being familiar with Latin, Anglo-Norman, and Old French.

Latin was the dominant language of the religious clergy, ecclesiastical church, and state courts followed by Anglo-Norman. As shown in *The Cambridge Companion to Medieval Romance* (see chapter 7), a survey of the literature from the medieval period demonstrated that the majority of works in Old French (twenty-nine of forty-one titles) dominated the thirteenth century in England. These dictionaries will assist the medieval English researcher in developing the required language comprehension.

While Anglo-Norman is the term used for the type of French used in Britain between 1066 and the middle of the fifteenth century, recent scholars consider "Anglo-French" to be a more accurate reflection of the language. Like many medieval dictionaries listed in this chapter, the ***Anglo-Norman Dictionary*** (***AND***) took years to produce. Begun in 1945 by Louise Stone, it was completed in 1992. A second edition was published in 2005, and an online version under the editorship of William Rothwell has been available since 2006. The online version is continually updated, and the editors have adopted and revised earlier entries from the print edition; the researcher is advised to consider the online version as the final authoritative resource. There are 26,100 entries with over 154,000 citations to Anglo-Norman texts. The researcher can browse the dictionary by headword or search for a particular word by searching English glosses and translations, semantic or usage labels, or texts consulted in creating the *AND*. The researcher can also perform a concordance search or a proximity search.

Since Anglo-Norman is a narrow and perhaps incomplete characterization of Old French, the researcher may want to consult the ***Etymological Dictionary of Old French / Dictionnaire étymologique de l'ancien français*** (***DEAF***) for a broader and authoritative perspective. Old French was the dominate language in Europe for many centuries. *DEAF* covers the period from 842 CE to the middle of the fourteenth century. The articles are arranged in alphabetical order and contain the words grouped by etymological families. The dictionary is useful for finding an English word that was borrowed from Old French. The sources used for constructing the database can be found in an accompanying bibliography. In 2018, the data from the database was converted to RDF (Resource Description Framework) in order to provide linked open data to the scholarly community.

For understanding medieval Latin words, the researcher has a cornucopia of sources, each with its own quirks and emphasis on coverage. The researcher can start with the ***Database of Latin Dictionaries*** published by the Centre "Traditio Litterarum Occidentalium" (CTLO) with the support of the Fonds National de la Recherche Scientifique and the Comité National du Dictionnaire du Latin Médiéval. Brepols digitized twenty-two dictionaries that cover classical Latin, regional dialects, translations (e.g., Latin to Middle French), and geographical source material. The titles most beneficial to the medieval

English researcher will be Albert Blaise's *Lexicon latinitatis medii aeui* (1975), Du Cange's *Glossarium mediae et infimae latinitatis* (1883–1887), and the ***Dictionary of Medieval Latin from British Sources*** (***DMLBS***). The last source deserves special recognition. Published in print from 1975 to 2013 by the British Academy at the University of Oxford, it became available electronically in 2015. The British sources are mainly Latin texts written in Great Britain during the period 540 CE to 1600 CE by British authors or by authors who lived in Britain. The database includes English authors such as Alcuin or Wynfrith (alias Boniface) who wrote from abroad, as well as texts from English territories such as Ireland and Normandy and Latin documents sent to English authors. The database can be searched by headwords, Latin wordforms, non-Latin wordforms, lemmas, and full text. A quick search using *auctor* displays the results by period (antiquity, patristics, and the Middle Ages), by theme, and by medieval subject. One can immediately see which dictionary has the most referential sources. *DMLBS* is from the *Logeion website* and is free to search, but is limited to searching by headwords.

One work that should not be overlooked for tracking down medieval Latin words is J. F. Niermeyer and C. van de Kieft's ***Mediae Latinitatis Lexicon Minus***. The *Lexicon* draws on various historical sources, such as chronicles, annals, histories, diplomas, monuments, charters, letters, lives, miracle collections, passions, martyrologies, royal and ecclesiastical acts, statutes, and collections of civil, customary, and canon laws. The period covers the post-classical Latin language in Western Europe from 550 CE to 1150 CE. Most entries are basic, with a translation of the Latin word into French, English, and German. Some entries will provide multiple meanings when necessary and are accompanied usually by an abbreviated citation to the relevant sources. Indexes include authors, anonymous and non-hagiographical sources, hagiographical and biographical commentaries, and editions.

MEDIEVAL ENGLISH GRAMMARS, GLOSSES, HANDBOOKS, AND TRANSLATIONS

Ellis, Roger, ed. *The Oxford History of Literary Translation in English, Volume 1: To 1550*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2008.

Hogg, Richard M. *A Grammar of Old English*. 2 volumes. Cambridge, UK: Blackwell, 1992–2011.

Lendinara, Patrizia. *Anglo-Saxon Glosses and Glossaries*. Aldershot, Hampshire, UK; Brookfield, VT: Ashgate Publishing, 1999.

Mossé, Fernand. *Handbook of Middle English*. 5th edition. Baltimore, MD: Johns Hopkins University Press, 1968.

Handbooks, grammars, glossaries, and translations assist the researcher in understanding the languages found in a text. Knowing and understanding the dialects of Old English (West-Saxon, Mercian, Kentish, and Northumbrian) can assist the researcher in dating and pinpointing the origin of the manuscript. A gloss found in a particular manuscript may provide fresh insight on a topic and relate to another manuscript's gloss from a different time. Translations offer a window into a particular period that would not be possible without a reading knowledge of the language.

The ***Handbook of Middle English*** is an English translation of volume 2 of Fernand Mossé's *Manuel de l'anglais du Moyen Age*, originally published in 1952. The English translation was published in 1954, with corrections and additions added in the fifth edition in 1968. The tenth printing of the work was in 1991, which suggests it is a work of enduring value for students studying Middle English. The handbook is divided into two parts: grammar and texts. The first part covers the basics of grammar (e.g., pronunciation, verbs, pronouns), the dialects, how sentence structure was conceived, and how the medieval reader approached the language. The section on texts is not meant to be exhaustive but merely representative of Middle English. Each of the twenty-nine texts begins with an introductory overview, a select bibliography, manuscript data, grammatical analysis in the notes, and a glossary. Mossé divides the selections from the texts into three categories of difficulty: easy (e.g., *The Peterborough Chronicle*), moderately difficult (e.g., *Ancrene Wisse*), and difficult (e.g., The *Poema Morale*).

For a current standard work in studying Old English grammar, Richard Hogg's ***A Grammar of Old English*** is highly recommended. Since understanding of linguistic developments has evolved over the latter part of the twentieth century, Hogg's work can be seen as extending the work of Alistair Campbell's *Old English Grammar*, originally published in 1959. Volume 1 on phonology was published in 1992, with volume 2 on morphology published posthumously in 2011 under the guidance of R. D. Fulk. Volume 1 lays out the orthography and phonology of Old English by tracing the Germanic origins of the West-Saxon, Mercian, Kentish, and Northumbrian dialects. Fulk analyzes the language through changes in sound, scribal elements, and orthographic elements and delineates three main types of Old English: prehistoric or proto-Old English, which has little or no extant material; standard or classical Old English, which covers the period 700 CE to circa 1000 CE; and transitional or late Old English from 1000 CE to after the Norman Conquest. Examination of Germanic and Old English vowels and consonants is provided in volume 1, while volume 2 sets out the vocalic stems, consonantal stems, and declensions

of the nouns, verbs, adjectives, adverbs, and numerals. Both volumes have an Old English word index using Late West-Saxon norms.

Anglo-Saxon Glosses and Glossaries is a useful guide for understanding the purpose of glosses and glossaries. Patrizia Lendinara provides a detailed introduction to what glosses and glossaries are, their layout on a page, the five types of glosses, the historical impact of the Latin glosses on Old English glosses, and the three types of glossary available in Anglo-Saxon England (collected glosses, class glosses, and alphabetical glosses). Many of the chapters were published previously in Italian and have been translated and minimally corrected for this volume. Topics of these chapters include the glossator's editorial choices, tracking down the source of a lemma, misunderstanding a gloss, and a variety of case studies including the *Liber Monstrorum* and Anglo-Saxon glossaries, John Scotus Eriugena and biblical glossaries, the Old English gloss that accompanied the *Scholica Graecarum Glossarum*, and a comparison of Ælfric's *Colloquy* with his student Ælfric Bata's *Colloquy*. Also provided are helpful indexes for manuscripts, lemmata, and Old English *interpretamenta* (the words that describe the lemma).

The Oxford History of Literary Translation in English is a unique five-volume set (volume 5, 1900–2000, has not been published yet) covering the challenges of translation from 597 CE (the arrival of Augustine as the first Archbishop of Canterbury) to the year 2000. Volume 1 (2008) is edited by Roger Ellis and covers the period up to 1550. The value of having international works translated into English was critical to the development of English literature. Medieval English literary culture was particularly dependent on the importance of translation due to the influx of Latin by Christian missionaries before the Norman Conquest and the subsequent interplay of Latin, French, and Anglo-Norman translations and their impacts on English society and culture as Middle English gradually emerged in the fourteenth century. To add to this difficulty, versions of original manuscripts often varied and compounded the number of translations, leading to different and new works. Furthermore, writers' own translations were often reworked. William Langland's *Piers Plowman* is the best example of this difficulty—there are over fifty extant manuscripts, and the variations between earlier and later versions suggest Langland continued to revise the work throughout his life. *The Oxford History of Literary Translation in English* has a chapter of biographical sketches of forty-five medieval translators, including their principal translations and further readings. Writers, publishers, and authors such as King Alfred, Caxton, and Chaucer are examples of the variety of translators represented.

PALEOGRAPHICAL TOOLS FOR MANUSCRIPT STUDIES, SCRIPTS, AND HANDWRITING

Owen-Crocker, Gale R. *Working with Anglo-Saxon Manuscripts*. Exeter, UK: University of Exeter Press, 2009.

Pluta, Olaf. *Abbreviationes*. Bochum, Germany: Ruhr-Universität Bochum, Institut für Philosophie, 1993–. abbreviationes.net.

Appreciating how the original manuscript was created and organized is important for the medieval English researcher. While most students and scholars will use modern translated editions of medieval texts for their research, the serious researcher will need to understand how scholars employ codicological and paleographical techniques and methods in deciphering the manuscript and how these processes have contributed directly to our understanding of the modern text. Codicology is the study of the physical characteristics of the manuscript (the codex) while paleography is the study of the handwriting in the manuscript. Glosses are explanations of words that are inserted between the text. Old English glosses can be found in many Anglo-Saxon manuscripts. Since much of our understanding of Old English is derived from Latin texts that have interlinear glosses and contain Latin lemmata followed by Latin and Old English interpretations, the medievalist will find it necessary to have a solid reading knowledge of medieval Latin.

Being able simply to read a Latin manuscript can be an arduous affair. For example, difficulties include interpreting the legibility of letters and words and the abbreviations that scribes used as shorthand to save time and ink. One tool designed to solve these problems of deciphering and transcribing is the subscription database ***Abbreviationes***. First created in 1992 by Olaf Pluta, *Abbreviationes* is a dictionary of medieval Latin paleography consisting of over 70,000 entries to 80,098 references in manuscripts. The manuscripts are pulled from major libraries and archives in Europe and the United States with the period covered from the eighth century to the fifteenth century. Searching has basic and advanced options. The researcher can construct queries and refine searches using abbreviations or words through Boolean, case-sensitive, and wildcard searches. For example, the researcher may read a manuscript and come across "a.t." that appears to be an abbreviation. Searching the database using the *abbreviation at* will find that it is transcribed as "at" and is an abbreviation for "alia translatio." The citation refers to the originating manuscript (codex and folio) and the library (Cambridge, Gonville and Caius). Searching by the word *ut* will retrieve "u," "ut," "ū," "ů," and "vt," and other variations in the abbreviations. Another valuable feature is that searching with a particular abbreviation will show the variations of that abbreviation

found in various manuscripts, often with different meanings. It is incumbent upon the researcher to have a solid grasp of Latin in order to ascertain the best context of the abbreviation's meaning.

Gale Owen-Crocker's ***Working with Anglo-Saxon Manuscripts*** is a delightful introduction for scholars who need to expand their knowledge of accessing, handling, and understanding manuscripts. Owen-Crocker's practical advice includes the importance of seeing the manuscript, when to make a visit to the library, arranging access at the library, what not to do when in the library, and creating images from manuscripts (when allowed). Chapters cover the construction and writing of Anglo-Saxon manuscripts, manuscript sources for Old English poetry and prose, a survey of Latin manuscripts, glosses and notes in Anglo-Saxon manuscripts, and manuscript art. The final chapter, "From Manuscript to Computer," discusses the problems and opportunities of digitizing manuscripts with an introduction and overview of the XML and the TEI (Text Encoding Initiative) prevalent on digital library websites. The work is enhanced immeasurably by 115 color images used as examples for illustrating the many problems of working with manuscripts. An index of manuscripts concludes the text.

TEXT AND DATA MINING

Liu, Alan. *DH Toy Chest: Digital Humanities Resources for Project Building*. 2013. dhresourcesforprojectbuilding.pbworks.com/w/page/69244243/FrontPage (accessed 15 May 2019).

Sinclair, Stéfan, and Geoffrey Rockwell. *Voyant Tools*. 2003–. voyant-tools.org (accessed 15 May 2019).

TAPoR 3.0. Edmonton, Alberta, Canada: University of Alberta. tapor.ca/home (accessed 18 June 2019).

One lament of many scholars working on digital scholarship projects is finding the right tools and datasets. Discovering, identifying, selecting, acquiring, applying, displaying, and curating are essential tasks of the digital scholarship lifecycle. The success of a project will depend upon this crucial first step in selecting the right tool and the quality of the dataset. The resources in this section are provided as starting points for delving into the world of digital humanities. Furthermore, working with database vendors may be necessary for a project. Many vendors have begun opening their data and digitized collections to scholars through free and subscription options. JSTOR Labs (e.g., Text Analyzer), Gale (e.g., Gale's Digital Scholar Lab), and Chadwyck-Healey (e.g., *Early English Books Online*) are accessible through academic institu-

tions; contact your librarian for further details. Self-tutorials are an option for researchers who want to have a deeper understanding of the processes of data analysis. *The Programming Historian* (https://programminghistorian.org/) has many peer-reviewed tutorials for educating the nascent digital humanist.

Alan Liu's ***DH Toy Chest: Digital Humanities Resources for Project Building*** is a comprehensive directory of guides to the digital humanities, tutorials, tools, examples, and data collections and datasets. A researcher who needs a quick snapshot of the variety of digital humanities projects can browse the contents. The page on tutorials is extensive, with scholars able to experiment with digital formats (e.g., data, text, sheet music, audio, video), digital activities (e.g., capture, creation, enrichment, analysis, interpretation, storage, and dissemination), and research techniques (e.g., scanning, encoding, linked open data, topic modeling, geospatial analysis). The page on tools outlines the variety available with Liu emphasizing that they are open source: animation and storyboarding; audio; annotation; code versioning; command-line tools; content-management systems; crowdsourcing; exhibition; mapping; network/social network analysis; programming languages tools; and video analysis. Some highlights of the *DH Toy Chest* include "Getting Started with Digital Humanities" (see http://devdh.org), "Creating and Maintaining an Online Scholarly Presence," and a "Starter Kit of Demo Corpora."

Searching for the right tool and method for a text-analysis project can be a daunting affair. ***TAPoR 3.0*** is a gateway for discovering, identifying, and evaluating tools needed for text analysis and visualization. *TAPoR 3.0* (Text Analysis Portal for Research) is led by Geoffrey Rockwell, Stéfan Sinclair, and Milena Radzikowska and is maintained at the University of Alberta. The gateway is enormous: the main page lists twenty-two categories that catalog 1,495 tools. After selecting a category, one can browse the choices available by moving the cursor over each selection, which will present a short description of the tool. On the "Tools" page, the researcher can narrow the selection by employing filters such as type of analysis, type of license, background processing, web usability, and ease of use. The site has some beneficial filters such as whether the tool is in beta or no longer supported, or to what degree it is used by other members of the community. There are reviews, recommendations, articles, and curated lists. Another convenient option for finding the right tool is to filter by the TaDiRAH Goals and Methods (Taxonomy of Digital Research Activities in the Humanities) such as annotation, archiving, cleanup, conversion, gathering, imaging, spatial analysis, and transcription (for a complete list of TaDiRAH methods, see tadirah.dariah.eu/vocab/index.php).

Another project created by Rockwell and Sinclair is ***Voyant Tools***, a suite of tools for analysis and exploration of digital texts. The tools allow the

researcher to explore texts for word frequency, number of words, lexical density, word collocation, keyword in context (KWIC), three-dimensional display, graphs, linking words, and the change of frequency of a word across a corpus. The researcher can load his corpus directly into the search box on the main page for a quick analysis. If only a specific method is needed, clicking on the link below the search box, "Voyant Tools is a web-based reading and analysis environment for digital texts," will lead the researcher to a longer list. Stop-word lists in a number of languages are built into the software. The code is available through GitHub under a GPL3 license, and the content of the web application and documentation is under a Creative Commons BY Attribution license. The researcher can set up her own Voyant web server.

CONCLUSION

In order to be an effective scholar, the medieval English researcher will need to immerse himself in the languages, manuscript traditions, and lexicographical tools that are part of the arsenal in doing research in this era. Languages long since dead, reference sources that are incomplete or dated, and illegible manuscripts are just some of the hurdles awaiting him. Tools such as dictionaries, lexicons, thesauri, etymologies, and paleographies can ameliorate the problems discussed. Working in the digital humanities can present the researcher with many opportunities for exploring new avenues of scholarship. We hope the sources and strategies given here will steer a path for the medieval English scholar.

Chapter Nine

Web Resources

The previous chapters have shown that much research is mediated through online interfaces. This chapter introduces the researcher to freely available scholarly web resources on medieval English literature that include period and electronic text archives, manuscripts, author/work/genre sites, reference tools, medieval histories, and current awareness sources and associations. While not comprehensive, the chapter gives the researcher an idea of the types of sources available and a foundation for discovering other literary sites.

There are many freely available medieval English resources on the web. The challenge for the researcher is to locate good-quality, current material. In evaluating websites, the researcher is advised to ask the following questions:

- Authority: Is the site affiliated with an academic or government institution? Is the author an expert in the field? What does the domain (e.g., .edu, .gov, .org, .com) tell you about the site? Can you read the "About" section that describes the purpose of the site and establishes the author's credentials?
- Scope: What is the subject matter of the site? What is the coverage? Who is the intended audience?
- Objectivity: Can you determine a bias that the author has which will impact the website's content?
- Currency: When was the site last updated? How frequently is it updated? Are the links to external sources active or broken?
- Accuracy: How accurate is the information presented and can it be verified through other sources?
- Context: What other websites are linked to this website and how does this establish objectivity and authority in the scholarly community?

For even more strategies in evaluating web resources, the researcher can look at research guides at their institutional libraries. These guides, created by librarians and professors, will point researchers to quality websites. One should keep in mind that even good, quality websites can decay, be superseded by better sites, or cease to exist. In the early days of the World Wide Web, medievalists were well represented with such sites as the *ORB: Online Reference Book for Medieval Studies*, *NetSERF: The Internet Connection for Medieval Resources*, HEL on the Web, the *Labyrinth*, and the *Internet Medieval Sourcebook*. Most of these sites have vanished, have succumbed to link rot, have not been updated in years, or contain material that can be acquired elsewhere.

PERIOD AND ELECTRONIC TEXTS ARCHIVES

Corpus of Middle English Prose and Verse. quod.lib.umich.edu/c/cme/ (accessed 22 May 2019).

Corpus Resource Database (*CoRD*). Helsinki: University of Helsinki. www.helsinki.fi/varieng/CoRD/index.html (accessed 22 May 2019).

Google Books. books.google.com (accessed 22 May 2019).

HathiTrust Digital Library. www.hathitrust.org/ (accessed 22 May 2019).

The Middle English Compendium. Ann Arbor, MI: University of Michigan Library. quod.lib.umich.edu/m/middle-english-dictionary (accessed 22 May 2019).

Project Gutenberg. www.gutenberg.org (accessed 22 May 2019).

University of Oxford Text Archive (*OTA*). Oxford: University of Oxford. ota.ahds.ac.uk (accessed 22 May 2019).

The digital archive has become the dominant paradigm in accessing full-text content. Many of these sites are quite stable as they were created by universities such as Oxford and Virginia, by national libraries such as the British Library, or by consortia such as HathiTrust Digital Library. The content on these sites can be facsimile or transcript versions of medieval texts, manuscripts, poems, dramas, and other material.

While there is a plethora of public domain and copyrighted material on the web, the researcher must exercise caution in determining the reliability and quality of any given text. While some sites are meticulous in providing the provenance of a source, other sites will give scant bibliographical information. Some facsimiles may have scanned poorly, transcriptions may contain errors, and other titles may simply not be available online. A thorough search for print and electronic editions, subscription databases, and archives will ensure nothing is missed.

Based out of the University of Helsinki, VARIENG stands for the Research Unit for the Study of Variation, Contacts and Change in English. Members of this group study the English language and its variant uses, specifically, how language fits into social, historical, and linguistic contexts. Of interest to the medieval English researcher is the ***Corpus Resource Database*** (***CoRD***). *CoRD* catalogs the English language corpora available for research. Each entry is submitted by the owner/compiler of a particular corpus with pertinent information, such as a description of the corpus, its contents, how the corpus is organized, names of the compilers, copyright details, availability, how the corpus was compiled, annotation conventions, and a bibliography of research conducted using the corpus. A search for Old English corpora using the "Corpus Finder" feature returned four results: The *Dictionary of Old English Corpus*, the *Helsinki Corpus*, the *Seville Corpus of Northern English*, and the *York-Toronto-Helsinki Parsed Corpus of Old English*. The first two databases are available through subscription, and the rest are open access. Each record lists the start and end dates, the period covered by the corpus, the word count, text samples, whether the corpus is spoken or written, the types of annotations present (e.g., parsing, tagging), and delivery options (e.g., free, subscription, commercial, from the compiler). The *CoRD* bibliographies can be searched separately.

A product of the University of Michigan Library, ***The Middle English Compendium***, offers access to three major Middle English electronic resources: an electronic version of the *Middle English Dictionary* ([MED] see chapter 8), a bibliography of Middle English prose and verse, and the *Corpus of Middle English Prose and Verse*. The bibliography contains the manuscripts, editions, and authors used in the compilation of the *Middle English Dictionary* and can be searched by author, title, external references, *Linguistic Atlas of Late Mediaeval English* (*LALME*), and manuscripts. A quick search for *Chaucer* retrieved 117 hits with the option of limiting the results to the region designated by *LALME*. Selecting "Cambridgeshire" retrieved two records. Each record is wonderfully detailed: external references; manuscript, print, and *LALME* references; editions, facsimiles, and other sources cited; *MED* title stencils and sources; and variants taken from different sources. The *Corpus of Middle English Prose and Verse* is a small collection of 289 texts in the public domain. Although small, it does contain samples of works from underrepresented genres such as recipes, account rolls, inventories, chronicles, and proverbs. Simple, proximity, Boolean, and citation search options are available. In addition, the collection can be browsed alphabetically by author. Texts are shown in modern edition.

The ***Corpus of Middle English Prose and Verse***, created and hosted by the University of Michigan Humanities Text Initiative (HTI), contains more

than 280 items transcribed from Middle English manuscript sources. The goal of the project is to have transcriptions of every work quoted in the *Middle English Dictionary*, which is available online through the HTI. The *Corpus* presents literary and non-literary works and is full-text searchable with options for proximity and Boolean searches. Notable works of the time are well represented, though many of these transcriptions are from public domain editions from the Early English Text Society (EETS) (see chapter 5) and were published before 1923; these volumes may have been superseded by more recent critical editions. This portal does provide value as a good place to start or as an easy reference point to check on a specific reading of a text.

The ***University of Oxford Text Archive*** (***OTA***) was founded in 1976 to collect, catalog, and preserve the electronic literary and linguistic resources for scholarly research and teaching. The *OTA* provides advice on the creation and use of this material as well as the development of standards and infrastructure needed for supporting the resources. The *OTA* is operated by the Bodleian Libraries and IT services at the University of Oxford with the intention of making free the archiving and repository services of the *OTA*. The *OTA* works with other Oxford departments and external organizations, such as the British National Corpus, Digital Humanities at Oxford, faculty of Linguistics, Philology and Phonetics, Oxford e-Research Centre, and the Text Encoding Initiative (TEI). One can search all the fields available in the description of the resource, browse the full text of works that are open access, or limit by searching the metadata. The *OTA* can be especially valuable for cases when other websites cease. A good example is the *Fontes Anglo-Saxonici: A Register of Written Sources Used by Authors in Anglo-Saxon England*. This is a valuable source for locating Anglo-Saxon material incorporated, quoted, translated, or adapted into all English and Latin texts written down in Anglo-Saxon England. The University of Oxford website disappeared. Fortunately, the source is downloadable (purl.ox.ac.uk/ota/2453) as a zip file on the *OTA* site. One can search for TEI texts, corpora, and legacy formats. A search for *Anglo-Saxon* yielded 160 hits, including *Anglo-Saxon Poetic Records*, Helsinki Corpus of English texts, and *King Alfred's Version of St. Augustine's Soliloquies*.

The following electronic book projects can assist the researcher in discovering titles, verifying bibliographical information, and using these sources for text and data-mining tasks. Michael Hart's ***Project Gutenberg*** has been around since 1971 for the purpose of making the world's great literature available to everyone. Consequently, the site is not concerned with providing authoritative editions. The site currently has over 59,000 titles available and is searchable by keyword. One can do a book search by author, title, language, most recently added, or book categories. The book categories have subsections, and quickly browsing this section revealed a number of useful

links for the medieval English researcher, including Arthurian legends, the *Early English Text Society* series (select titles), and *Medieval Town* series. The texts are transcripts (retyped and not digitized) and can be downloaded in several different formats including HTML, EPUB, Kindle, plain text (UTF-8), and zip file.

Probably the best known of these projects is **Google Books**. Google Books began its digitization program in 2004 with the goal of digitizing public domain books, newspapers, journals, and magazines from American and British academic institutions and copyrighted titles from some publishers. You can search the full text and download a public domain copy or examine a preview of a copyrighted title. Since the number of results will be large, you can limit the results by preview, Google eBooks, or free Google eBooks; time period or custom date range; or relevance. Searching by custom date range can be valuable for the medieval English researcher. Since the scholarship on what constitutes medieval English literature has shifted and expanded over the last forty years, the researcher could limit his search to 1975 to the present. Searching for *anglo-saxon literature* and limiting it to the above dates retrieved less than twenty records. This strategy is fine for discovering new material, although a search done again for the dates 1950–1974 yielded more than thirty hits. The advanced search interface includes searching by title, author, subject, publisher, publication date, and ISBN and ISSN fields.

HathiTrust Digital Library is a partnership between research institutions and libraries to digitize, archive, preserve, and share the content of its member institutions. Founded by the Big Ten Academic Alliance and the University of California system in 2008, HathiTrust now boasts six consortia/state systems and a total of 150 academic institutions in the United States (predominately), Canada, Spain, and Australia. Over fifteen million volumes of digitized books and journals, both copyrighted and public domain materials, are preserved. Everything is searchable through the catalog; public domain material is downloadable, but copyright limitations restrict full-text availability to member institutions. Researchers can perform simple or advanced searches in either full text or the catalog. Search options include author, title, subject, publisher, series title, and ISBN/ISSN and can be limited to language, original format, and full view only. There is a "Collections" section that allows the creation of personal collections, viewable either privately or publicly. Over 4,500 collections are listed with titles such as "Old English," "Classics of Medieval Literature," "Middle English," "Middle English Poetry, not EETS," and "Manuscript Collections of the University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign." Knowing that a digitized copy is available for download has altered the collection-development strategies in academic libraries. If a copy of a book or journal is freely available electronically, the library is

less likely to add the print version to the physical collection. Furthermore, many academic library catalogs have records with links to HathiTrust. If the researcher has determined that a particular title is not available through his home institution, a search of HathiTrust may be profitable.

HathiTrust has support services to assist the researcher with a variety of projects including text-mining projects. Datasets, APIs, and structured bibliographical metadata through the OAI (Open Archives Initiative Protocol for Metadata Harvesting, OAI-PMH) are available. HathiTrust records are added to WorldCat as e-resource records for maximum discoverability. The organization even hands out awards that provide technical guidance, resources, and expertise support from staff. The most recent call for proposals includes genre detection, metadata generation for exploration of the corpus, the creation of teaching and instructional modules, and the analysis of HathiTrust content with other data sources.

MANUSCRIPTS

Cotton Manuscripts. British Library. www.bl.uk/collection-guides/cotton-manuscripts (accessed 22 May 2019).

The Cotton Nero A.x. Project. people.ucalgary.ca/~scriptor/cotton/index.html (accessed 22 May 2019).

Discovering Literature: Medieval. British Library. www.bl.uk/medieval-literature (accessed 22 May 2019).

Manuscripts Online: Written Culture 1000 to 1500. www.manuscriptsonline.org/ (accessed 22 May 2019).

Vercelli Book Digitale. Pisa: University of Pisa. vbd.humnet.unipi.it/ (accessed 22 May 2019).

Manuscripts Online: Written Culture 1000 to 1500 is a portal that provides full-text searching of twenty-one linked online resources. These resources range from the *Auchinleck Manuscript* (a single manuscript of various works compiled in the fourteenth century) to the *Middle English Dictionary*. This range of offerings can lead searchers to sources that they might not find in a library catalog or web search, but it can also be a bit overwhelming. Though much of the content is devoted to manuscript studies, this is not intended to be a comprehensive search engine for manuscripts. One is more likely to find secondary references and transcriptions than digital facsimiles. The portal allows registered users to post public comments into search results. This feature is intended to help foster communication and allow researchers to share their personal observations. To date, few comments have been added. The

portal also provides API access to its searching, opening the door to scripted searching and use by other websites. These additions reflect the vision of the project's funding source, Jisc, a non-profit dedicated to using digital technology to enhance education.

The ***Cotton Manuscripts*** constitute one of the most important medieval English libraries in the world. The collection was assembled by Sir Robert Bruce Cotton (1571–1631) and contains 1,429 manuscripts and more than 1,500 charters, rolls, and seals. These items range in date from the fourth century to the 1600s. The largest collection of Anglo-Saxon manuscripts in the world is found in this library, including "the *Lindisfarne Gospels*, the *Beowulf* manuscript, two of the earliest copies of Bede's *Historia ecclesiastica gentis Anglorum*, and five manuscripts of the Anglo-Saxon Chronicle." In addition, there are important biblical manuscripts such as the Cotton *Genesis* and Cotton *Hexateuch*, the Vespasian Psalter, and the *Heliand* (the Gospels in Old Saxon). Medieval cartularies (especially monastic) from England and Ireland are included. A small number of the manuscripts are available for viewing through the British Library. A link near the bottom of the page under the heading "What is available online?" will take the researcher to the catalog of the entire collection containing a finding guide that is 2,500 pages. Each catalog record is highly detailed. For example, clicking on *Cotton MS Julius A VI* provides the following overview: a heading "A calendar, computistical texts and tables, *Expositio Hymnorum*, canticles and poems" (first half of the eleventh century to the second half of the twelfth century); a link to the digitized image; references to the extant manuscript (parchment codex); languages; physical characteristics; access conditions and conditions of use; custodial history; exhibits; and publications.

Because it contains the only surviving copies of the four poems of the so-called Pearl Poet, Cotton Nero A.x/2 is among the most famous Middle English manuscripts. ***The Cotton Nero A.x. Project*** brought scholars together with resources from the British Library and the University of Calgary with a goal of producing high-quality digital scans of the manuscript, along with transcriptions and translations, thereby presenting a full, critical edition of the text. The existing web portal provides access to the digital scans (hosted by the University of Calgary's digital repository), and links to transcriptions, a bibliography, and other scholarly publications that have come out of the project. This is still considered a work in progress, so the envisioned capstone is not yet available. The site can be tricky to navigate, but it should not be overlooked. Besides offering the text and digital facsimiles, articles on the site can offer insights into the transcription process ("Project Transcription Policy"), as well as some techniques used to analyze the physical item ("Report on Scientific Study of Pigments and Inks"). Several pieces are listed as

forthcoming, with recent additions in 2018, providing hope that the project eventually will reach completion.

Discovering Literature: Medieval is the British Library's portal to their medieval manuscript collection. This is not a repository of digital editions, but a true entry point with significant background information about each manuscript and a selection of high-quality scans from each. Some of the examples in this collection are the Lindisfarne Gospels, the *Junius* manuscript, and manuscript editions of Layamon's *Roman de Brut* and *The Owl and the Nightingale*. The portal is designed for use by educators, presenting these artifacts in an engaging way. The collection of articles about the manuscripts and the digital facsimiles present on the site are informative. The articles include introductions to notable works and discussions of genres. Each article utilizes the digital images to highlight examples or to show connections to the manuscripts in the collection. Articles are divided into themes such as "Gender and Sexuality" and "Faith and Religion."

The ***Vercelli Book Digitale*** is the website for the Vercelli Book, a facsimile and diplomatic edition of the Codex Vercellensis CXVII, a late tenth-century manuscript consisting of 136 folia and a total of twenty-nine works. The manuscript was written in the south of England and is currently held at the Biblioteca Capitolare of the cathedral in Vercelli. The *Vercelli Book Digitale* is an ongoing project aiming to provide a digital version of this codex. There are four texts available: *The Dream of the Rood*; Homily 23; Homilies I, II, and III; and the *Soul and Body* poem. The manuscripts can be viewed as a digitized image or as a transcription. By clicking on "Thumbnails," all digitized pages are shown and can be browsed. The site has a "HotSpot" option so that areas on the images can be highlighted with additional information. By activating the "TextLink" option, corresponding lines on the digitized image and on the transcription are highlighted. The project is directed by R. Rosselli Del Turco of the University of Turin, and the website is hosted by the University of Pisa.

AUTHOR/WORK/GENRE SITES

Anglo-Saxon Narrative Poetry Project. anglosaxonpoetry.camden.rutgers.edu/ (accessed 22 May 2019).

Brut Chronicle. University of Michigan Library. quod.lib.umich.edu/b/brut (accessed 22 May 2019).

The Camelot Project. University of Rochester, NY, Robbins Library. d.lib.rochester.edu/camelot-project (accessed 22 May 2019).

Chaucer Bibliography Online. chaucer.lib.utsa.edu/ (accessed 22 May 2019).

Chaucer Metapage. chaucermetapage.org/ (accessed 22 May 2019).
Chaucer Studio. creativeworks.byu.edu/chaucer/ (accessed 22 May 2019).
Database of Middle English Romance. middleenglishromance.org.uk (accessed 22 May 2019).
Electronic Beowulf. ebeowulf.uky.edu/ebeo4.0/start.html (accessed 22 May 2019).
Feminae: Medieval Women and Gender Index. University of Iowa Libraries. inpress.lib.uiowa.edu/feminae/WhatIsFeminae.aspx (accessed 22 May 2019).
International Hoccleve Society. hocclevesociety.org/ (accessed 22 May 2019).
International John Gower Society. www.wcu.edu/johngower/index.html (accessed 22 May 2019).
New Chaucer Society. newchaucersociety.org/ (accessed 22 May 2019).

This section provides some examples of websites devoted to a specific medieval author, work, or genre. These sites often have biographical information, transcriptions or digital works or links to other resources, or a bibliography of primary and secondary sources with links to the full text. Since there is a plethora of websites devoted to medieval writers, works, and genres, the challenge for the researcher is to properly vet each site using the criteria given at the beginning of this chapter.

The ***Electronic Beowulf***, produced by Kevin Kiernan, was launched in 2015 to replace previous CD and DVD-ROM editions. This resource is not merely a digitized manuscript but a specially designed tool for the study of *Beowulf*. The website presents the full manuscript Cotton Vitellius A.xv, a composite manuscript made up of two distinct codices and containing, alongside *Beowulf*, various religious texts and bestiaries. But as the name suggests, the bulk of the material available is related to *Beowulf*. The tool allows side-by-side comparisons between the images of the manuscript page and multiple transcriptions, including eighteenth- and nineteenth-century editions produced from the manuscript when it was less damaged.

Additional options allow readers to see the critical apparatus, grammatical notes, and translations by hovering the cursor over the transcription. Textual notes can also be overlaid onto the manuscript images, showing brief discussions or explanations of the paleographical details and how they might contribute to alternate readings. It should be noted that the interface is not entirely intuitive, and it may take some time to learn to use it effectively. These advanced features go well beyond most of the digitized manuscripts available through sources such as the British Library. The *Electronic Beowulf* provides a great example of how manuscript artifacts can be combined with modern technology to produce something useful to casual readers and serious

scholars alike. As was noted earlier in the chapter, the complete Cotton Manuscripts holdings can be found online through the British Library.

The ***Brut Chronicle*** (also known as the *Prose Brut*) is an Anglo-Norman chronicle compiled around 1272 CE that contains the history and legends of English kings and events. The chronicle begins with the legend of the founding of Britain by Brutus of Troy (hence the title), covers the legend of Arthur, and ends initially with the actual exploits of Kings Henry III and Edward I. The work was translated into Latin and Middle English (about 1400 CE) with continuations being added in Middle English until 1460 CE. There are 50 versions of the Anglo-Norman manuscript, 19 versions in Latin, and 184 Middle English versions. The large number of Middle English manuscripts suggests that the language was becoming dominant by the end of the fourteenth century. Consequently, the *Brut* is an important source of Middle English prose lexicography. One of the challenges of working with chronicles is that no two manuscripts are the same since different scribes have made additions and continuations to each individual manuscript; out of necessity, the researcher must be specific when referencing a particular version. One can appreciate the rich scholarship of the manuscript history by comparing the University of Michigan Library and the Dartmouth College Library digital versions. Both sites have detailed analyses illustrating the descriptive bibliography and paleographic dimensions of the manuscripts. The researcher will immediately find herself immersed in the heritage of this important manuscript and the challenges in studying it. For example, the provenance of the University of Michigan manuscript is not clear. While it was registered in the university's possession in 1945, it was not cataloged in a census done in 1935. The Dartmouth version was the subject of a 2011 conference, with the papers being published in *Digital Philology* in 2014 (www.dartmouth.edu/~library/digital/collections/manuscripts/ocn312771386/). The complete manuscript tradition is covered in detail in Lister Matheson's *The Prose Brut: The Development of a Middle English Chronicle*, published in 1998.

The ***Anglo-Saxon Narrative Poetry Project*** is the work of Aaron Hostetter who has posted his own translations of more than 23,000 lines of Anglo-Saxon poetry. Though many of the more famous works here, including *Beowulf*, *Judith*, and *Dream of the Rood*, have been available in multiple translations for many years, Professor Hostetter seeks to maintain the poetic feel of the works while keeping the translation as close to the original texts as possible. These translations are no substitute for scholarly critical editions—and they are not meant to be—but can be very useful for those who find traditional translations to be awkward or difficult to read.

Because this site presents the works without introductory background information, it may be helpful to refer to another edition or reference work to

provide context and allow better understanding. The website permits users to enter question or comments, many of which are answered by Hostetter. The activity on the site has slowed down in the last couple of years, as the author has embarked on a new project to translate Old English homilies.

The ***Chaucer Metapage*** is a delightful starting point for pursuing Chaucerian studies. Vetted by scholars, this project began after a group of medievalists interested in promoting Chaucer studies met at the 1998 International Congress of Medieval Studies. The goal of the site is to recommend navigation aids for Chaucer resources on the Internet, promote and expand existing resources, and encourage teaching Chaucer studies online. There are links to Chaucer pages on other scholarly websites, a bibliography with references to print and online resources, Chaucer resources that provide background information on Chaucer's English, his life and times, the *Canterbury Tales*, and pages on the individual tales. Webpages of other medieval authors, teaching Chaucer, and media (audio, images, texts, video) are included.

The ***Chaucer Bibliography Online*** covers Chaucer studies from 1966 until the present. In addition, the database contains the bibliography published annually in *Studies in the Age of Chaucer* (1979–present). Several search options are available, including string searching using characters, numerals, spaces, punctuation marks, and phrases. Searches can be refined by specific fields (e.g., author/editor, title, alternative titles) and delimiters (e.g., contains, does not contain, starts with). These options can be used separately or in combination with the character-string searches. Last, the database lists fifty specific Chaucer subjects for quick selection. Using the word *fowls* and limiting to "Chaucer subject" returned 432 hits; the list can be sorted by title, date, published, and author/editor. Some records have short descriptions that mention the contents in WorldCat records. The site is supported by the University of Texas at San Antonio Library and the New Chaucer Society.

For scholars interested in hearing how medieval languages were spoken, the ***Chaucer Studio*** can satisfy that yearning. Founded as a non-profit organization in 1986 by members of the Australian and New Zealand Association for Medieval and Renaissance Studies, the aim of the *Studio* is to produce recordings of texts in their native medieval languages for a small fee. Some of the languages available include Italian, Anglo-Saxon, Middle English, Middle High German, Old High German, Old French, Old Norse, and medieval Latin. The formats cover book, audiocassette, download, CD, VHS, and DVD. The recordings consist of performed readings by scholars, and they serve as teaching aids for understanding the pronunciation of these languages as well as concepts of acting, dramatization, and narrative performance. Some of the Anglo-Saxon and Middle English titles include *Beowulf*, *Anelida and Arcite*, *The House of Fame*, *The Book of the Duchess*, *The Legend of Good*

Women, *Troilus and Criseyde*, *Canterbury Tales*, *Heroic Women in Old and Middle English*, and selections from John Gower's *Confessio Amantis*. To see the full range of titles, select "show all products" on the main page.

The Camelot Project is a creation of Alan Lupack, the former university library director, and Barbara Tepa Lupack at the Robbins Library at the University of Rochester, New York. The project is part of a suite of projects covering the medieval period: *TEAMS Middle English Texts*, *The Robin Hood Project*, *The Crusades Project*, *The Cinderella Bibliography*, and *Visualizing Chaucer*. *The Camelot Project* is a database of Arthurian texts, images, bibliographies, and basic information that was begun in 1995. The website has the following subject links: "Authors and Texts"; "Artists and Images"; "Characters"; "Symbols and Motifs"; "Places"; and "Creatures." Clicking on "Creatures" takes the researcher to a page where he can scroll in alphabetical order the types of creatures mentioned in the Arthurian legends. Clicking on "bird" sends one to a page with an introductory essay, an extensive bibliography, a list of texts, and images. The link for "Artists and Images" returns hundreds of public-domain images from various books with links to the books. Under "Characters," selecting "Tom Thumb" retrieves a lengthy essay with a bibliography covering the historical reception of works beginning in 1621 with the chapbook *The History of Tom Thumbe, the Little, for his small stature surnamed, King Arthvrs Dwarfe: Whose Life and aduentures containe many strange and wonderfull accidents, published for the delight of merry Time-spenders*. Plays, children's books, and animation are cited as well.

Medieval romances were the predominate form of secular literature in late medieval England. The ***Database of Middle English Romance*** at the University of York contains eighty verse romances composed between 1225 CE and 1500 CE. Every record is a detailed, full-page entry that includes, where available, the following information about the romance: a reference number to the *(New) Index of Middle English Verse*; literary form; date of composition; place of composition; author(s); source(s); and a list of extant manuscripts and early prints. Each entry has a plot summary and a list of modern editions. The database is searchable by manuscript, by a set of fifty keywords that represent common motifs and topics, by verse form, and by plot summary. For example, the record for *Amoryus and Cleopes* lists a 1999 copy from the Medieval Institute Publications that is based on the sole manuscript (Princeton University Library, MS Garrett 141). The note accompanying the record states that the publication provides the final lines that were only visible under ultraviolet light.

Feminae: Medieval Women and Gender Index fills a niche in women studies by covering only journal articles, book reviews, book chapters, translations of original texts, and images in books about women, sexuality, and

gender during the Middle Ages. *Feminae* contains more than 40,000 records with publications in English, French, German, Italian, and Spanish from 1980 to the present. Search options include keyword search, title, author, and subject. A researcher can browse records with images (554). The advanced search fields have keyword, author/creator, title, subject, source, geographical area, century, record number, and record number range. There is an advanced search option for images, including primary evidence, evidence, illustrations, article types, abstract, author's affiliation, year of publication, language, ISSN/ISBN, art type category, art type material/technology, current location, original location, related artwork, donor, inscription, and date. A search using *marie de france* on the simple search page yielded fifty results from sources such as *Norton Critical Editions* to journal articles.

Societies are an important source of scholarship. Not only are they meeting places for shared interest on a subject or writer, they offer research, teaching, and presentation opportunities through newsletters, bibliographies, conferences, and pedagogical tools. The **New Chaucer Society**, founded in 1979 and based on the original Chaucer Society that existed from 1868 to 1912, is dedicated to the study of Geoffrey Chaucer and the Middle Ages. Since 1979, the society has published the annual journal *Studies in the Age of Chaucer* and a newsletter (back issues of the newsletter are available online to 2016 when it moved to email and website notifications). The society has held the International Congress of the New Chaucer Society every two years since 1979; locations span the globe. The society is based at the University of Miami. Obituaries, a membership directory, and a blog for news are other features of this site.

The **International John Gower Society** was founded in 1981 and is dedicated to the study of the fourteenth-century poet John Gower. This society promotes and encourages this study through a number of initiatives, including an international conference held every four years; a newsletter published twice a year since 1983; the publication of the *John Gower Series* with Boydell & Brewer; a page on resource links to online editions of Gower's work (original Middle English texts and modern English translations) and to audio files; images on the site and the web dealing with Gower's works, life, and times (many links go to pages in manuscripts); and an annotated bibliography of online sources covering sources and influences, education and the medieval university, religious context, Gower's contemporaries, and the political context of his times. A link to a downloadable file of *A listing of the rhymes in Gower's* Confessio Amantis by Gyöngyi Werthmüller is available. Membership is required yet inexpensive to encourage students and young scholars to join. The society sponsors paper sessions each year at the International Congress on Medieval Studies in Kalamazoo, Michigan.

Societies created around a medieval writer indicate the rising importance of that writer to contemporary scholarship. This point is amply demonstrated by the founding of the **International Hoccleve Society** in 2011. Until recently, Thomas Hoccleve, a contemporary of Chaucer, was considered a minor writer of little scholarly importance. Since the concept of medieval English studies has expanded in the last thirty years to include broader cultural and multidisciplinary perspectives, there has been renewed interest in writers like Hoccleve. The society sponsors events at the International Congress on Medieval Studies, and it publishes a newsletter titled "The Year in Hoccleve" that covers news of published works in Hoccleve scholarship, Hoccleve-related digital projects, and conference papers and sessions. The *Hoccleve Bibliography* is a work in progress with 304 records at last count.

REFERENCE TOOLS

Benskin, M., M. Laing, V. Karaiskos, and K. Williamson. *An Electronic Version of* A Linguistic Atlas of Late Mediaeval English (*eLALME*). Edinburgh: University of Edinburgh. Version 1.1, 2013. www.lel.ed.ac.uk/ihd/elalme/elalme.html (accessed 22 May 2019).

Da Rold, Orietta, Takako Kato, Mary Swan, and Elaine Treharne, eds. *The Production and Use of English Manuscripts 1060 to 1220*. University of Leicester, 2013. www.le.ac.uk/ee/em1060to1220/ (accessed 22 May 2019).

Frantzen, Allen. *Anglo-Saxon Penitentials: A Cultural Database*. www.anglo-saxon.net/penance/ (accessed 22 May 2019).

Laing, Margaret, ed. *A Linguistic Atlas of Early Middle English, 1150–1325* (*LAEME*). Edinburgh: University of Edinburgh. Version 3.2, 2013. www.lel.ed.ac.uk/ihd/laeme2/laeme2.html (accessed 22 May 2019).

Martín Arista, Javier, Laura García Fernández, Miguel Lacalle Palacios, Ana Elvira Ojanguren López, and Esaúl Ruiz Narbona. *NerthusV3. Online Lexical Database of Old English*. Nerthus Project. La Rioja, Spain: Universidad de La Rioja, 2016. www.nerthusproject.com (accessed 22 May 2019).

Mooney, Linne, Simon Horobin, and Estelle Stubbs. *Late Medieval English Scribes*. www.medievalscribes.com (accessed 22 May 2019).

Online Medieval Sources Bibliography. medievalsourcesbibliography.org/index.php (accessed 22 May 2019).

Roberts, Jane, and Christian Kay, with Lynne Grundy, eds. *A Thesaurus of Old English*. Glasgow: University of Glasgow. 2017. oldenglishthesaurus.arts.gla.ac.uk/ (accessed 22 May 2019).

There is a large variety of reference tools available on the web. The quality of these resources can vary widely, so the researcher should follow the evaluation criteria listed at the beginning of the chapter. Bibliographies, indexes, atlases, and other important tools listed here will assist greatly in studying medieval English literature.

Javier Martín Arista's ***NerthusV3. Online Lexical Database of Old English*** contains over 30,000 entries containing information such as predicate, alternative spelling, category, translation, inflectional morphology, and inflectional forms. The database is based on the standard dictionaries in the field: Clark Hall's *A Concise Anglo-Saxon Dictionary* (including supplement), Bosworth-Toller's *Anglo-Saxon Dictionary* (with the supplement by Toller and the addenda by Campbell), Sweet's *The Student's Dictionary of Anglo-Saxon*, and *The Dictionary of Old English* (see chapter 8). The database is freely available and is based out of the Department of Modern Languages at the University of La Rioja in Spain. In addition to the database, the site publishes *Working Papers in Early English Lexicology and Lexicography* and, as of 2018, a new journal titled *Electronic Lexicography of Old English*.

A Thesaurus of Old English is edited by Jane Roberts and Christian Kay with Lynne Grundy. The purpose of this dictionary is to allow the researcher to isolate the range of meanings of a word throughout its history, its synonyms, and its relationship to other words with more general or more specific meaning. The researcher can browse eighteen categories: the physical world; life-and-death; matter and measurement; material needs; existence; mental faculties; opinion; emotion; language and communication; possession; action and utility; social interaction; peace and war; law and order; property; religion; work; and leisure. The search options include looking up an Old English word and restricting a search to a part of speech or category. The source materials for the thesaurus were Bosworth-Toller's *Anglo-Saxon Dictionary* (1898 and the supplement from 1921), Campbell's *An Anglo-Saxon Dictionary: Enlarged Addenda and Corrigenda* (1972), and Clark Hall and Merritt's *A Concise Anglo-Saxon Dictionary* (1960) (see chapter 8).

Ambitious in scope, the ***Online Medieval Sources Bibliography*** provides a comprehensive database of print and online editions of primary texts produced in the Middle Ages. Much of the content is skewed toward material from the British Isles and France, but there are plans to continue expanding into more languages and geographic regions. The annotated records provide a good bit of information about both the original work and the edition in question. The indexed metadata allows some powerful searching options, such as limiting by date, author, region, genre, and language. This source is not limited to literature but also encompasses various religious and legal documents as well as letters, dialogues, and treatises.

Penitentials were handbooks used by priests explaining the process for a confession and lists appropriate penances ascribed to different sins. While these guides are not literary in the typical sense, they acted as something of a vernacular script for the ritual, and they reflect many literary characteristics consistent with drama and poetry of the time.[1] They are also important historical artifacts, opening a window into the social context of the period and illustrating how negative behaviors were viewed relative to one another. With ***Anglo-Saxon Penitentials: A Cultural Database***, Allen Frantzen has created a comprehensive, interactive, digital critical edition of the five extant penitential versions in the Anglo-Saxon language.

These survive in a relatively large number of manuscripts and share quite a bit of common ground. Each of the five unique texts can be studied on its own, with manuscript images, transliteration, and English translations available. A numbering system is used to help align texts where the manuscripts either have conflicting internal numbering or provide the penance lists in a different order. This allows very easy comparison across variants. The "User Guide," though brief, is absolutely necessary to understand the numeration and color-coding found in the transliterated editions. The English translations are mostly limited to single manuscripts of each work, but the cross-referencing allows easy correlation.

A "Cultural Index" compiles individual sins and their proscribed tariffs based on themes such as food, theft, and sex. This feature is key for the English translations and shows some of the differences between versions of the penitential, both by the specificity of the transgressions and the severity of their punishments. A surprisingly lengthy Anglo-Saxon glossary with references back to the works can assist researchers with the transliterations, but it is not meant to be a comprehensive language tool. Though narrow in scope, this project is an outstanding example of digital scholarship on Anglo-Saxon manuscripts and their cultural context.

Late Medieval English Scribes is an extensive online database of scribal hands used in manuscripts of works by Chaucer, Gower, Langland, Hoccleve, and John Trevisa. These five authors were selected based on their significance and the number of surviving manuscript copies, several of which could be linked to specific scribes known to have produced court documents at the London Guildhall. The purpose of this tool is to assist readers in deciphering particular scripts and to show how unique variations can be used to explore the origins of period manuscripts.

The database is arranged by manuscript, using their locations and shelf mark information to identify them. Each of the more than four hundred manuscripts is assigned to a scribe (named or unknown), and most show high-quality images of example letters and digital scans of sample pages. The

scribal profile pages further focus on the letter forms, using commonly variable letters to show the key identifiers (a, d, g, h, r, s, w, y, þ, and ȝ). Some letter forms that are particularly distinctive to that scribe or are difficult to decipher include explanatory comments. The database can be browsed by author and by attributed scribe as well.

Few of the manuscript and scribal profiles contain much background information, and some are lacking the example images. The project was funded by a grant from the Arts and Humanities Research Council of the United Kingdom and was completed in 2011. There are no obvious plans to expand this resource beyond what is currently available. In many ways, this site is comparable to Scragg's *A Conspectus of Scribal Hands Writing English, 960–1100* (described in chapter 6), but with a much different scope and a more user-friendly interface.

The Production and Use of English Manuscripts 1060 to 1220 is a hybrid ebook and database originally conceived as a catalog of literary manuscripts in English written in the period following the Conquest. The project expounded upon the cultural context of these manuscripts and the interactions between text and reader in this multilingual transitional period. The catalog itself draws heavily from the expansive content of the volumes by Ker and Gneuss described in chapter 6 and uses much of the numbering and description conventions of those works. There are more than two hundred manuscript entries, with brief summaries of the contents, physical descriptions, known provenance, and bibliographies of other sources relevant to each one. Links to sample manuscript images are included where available.

Accompanying the catalog is a patchwork collection of secondary sources—a mix of links organized under the "Cultural Contexts" heading to previously published articles and material created specifically for the site. The articles show how the manuscripts of the period disclose the emergence of the English language in literary, legal, and ecclesiastical writings. Special attention is paid to the dissemination of these manuscripts and how English was used alongside Latin, French, or Anglo-Saxon in glosses or marginalia.

Parts of the interface can be awkward for those used to slick research databases from major publishers, but the content is unique. The catalog can be browsed but is more useful to researchers looking for information on a specific manuscript. The secondary material is meant to be read in the order that it is presented, so that the collection of essays builds to a conclusion. Though the content of the website has not been updated since 2013, it is still actively hosted by the University of Leicester.

Linguistic atlases are useful tools for illustrating how languages change over time within a geographical region. The University of Edinburgh has created two online atlases of interest to medieval scholars: ***An Electronic***

Version of **A Linguistic Atlas of Late Mediaeval English** (***eLALME***) by M. Benskin, M. Laing, V. Karaiskos, and K. Williamson and ***A Linguistic Atlas of Early Middle English, 1150–1325*** (***LAEME***) by Margaret Laing. Both databases complement each other by covering the period 1150 CE to 1450 CE. *LALME* was published in 1986 by the University of Scotland as a four-volume set; the original editors were Angus McIntosh, M. L. Samuels, and Michael Benskin. The online version began in 2013 with additions and updates. The database is searchable by twenty-one different fields such as manuscript, date, hands, language, content, diplomatic/MS metadata, facsimile, title, and author. Results can be sorted by repository, county, and linguistic profile.

LAEME, maintained by Margaret Laing at the University of Edinburgh, is described as the "daughter" atlas of *LALME* in that it covers the period of English immediately preceding that of *LALME*, specifically the period 1150 CE to 1325 CE. *LAEME* contains 1,870 maps with the corpus consisting of 167 distinct text languages from 105 manuscripts. The database is useful for searching and retrieving linguistic data from the corpus of lexico-grammatically tagged texts and the index of sources, for viewing maps illustrating the geographical distribution of linguistic features across space, and for making concordances. The researcher can isolate his search to the index of sources, corpus files, a tag dictionary, a form dictionary, maps, county lists, item lists, and concordances. There is a link to a corpus of narrative etymologies on a separate website. As a search example, selecting "Corpus Files" gives the researcher a choice between searching by tag or by county. Selecting county and clicking on Durham lists a detailed profile of the manuscripts used and the tagging system implemented.

MEDIEVAL HISTORIES

Hacken, Richard. *EuroDocs: Online Sources for European History*. eudocs.lib.byu.edu/index.php/Main_Page (accessed 22 May 2019).

Schousboe, Karen. *Medieval Histories*. Holte, Denmark: Kimming ApS. www.medieval.eu/ (accessed 22 May 2019).

Medieval Histories is a Danish-hosted website in English for medieval history scholars and hobbyists. Exhibitions, archaeological finds, anniversaries, concerts, musical performances, current medieval research, book reviews, jobs, conferences, and medieval travel guides are some of the announcements made regularly. Recent book reviews include a reinterpretation of *Beowulf* through artifacts and material culture, *Beowulfkvädet: Den Nordiska Bakgrunden* by

Bo Gräslund (*Acta Academiae Regiae Gustavi Adolphi* 149, 2018), and *Birds in Medieval English Poetry: Metaphors, Realities, Transformations* by Michael J. Warren (Boydell & Brewer, 2018). Readers can subscribe to a weekly newsletter to stay informed of developments in the discipline. The editor-in-chief is Dr. Karen Schousboe, an ethnologist from Denmark.

EuroDocs: Online Sources for European History is maintained by Richard Hacken, the European Studies Librarian at the Harold B. Lee Library at Brigham Young University in Provo, Utah. The site has links to selected transcriptions, facsimiles, and translations. The main page has every European country and another section on other European and manuscript portals (e.g., *Europeana: Connecting Cultural Heritage*) at the bottom of the page. The medievalist will be interested in the main page for the United Kingdom but should understand that relevant pages to medieval research can be found in other countries. The two main links are "Britain from Antiquity through 1065" and "Britain 1066–1485." The first page is divided into the following sections: Pre-Roman Rule, Provincia Britannia (43 CE–410 CE), Anglo-Saxons, Vikings & Germanic Peoples (410 CE –871 CE), Reign of the House of Wessex (871 CE–1013 CE), Conflict Between the Houses of Denmark & Wessex (1013 CE –1066 CE), and Other Collections of the Middle Ages. Many of the links go to scholarly portals (e.g., Anglo-Saxon Cluster), HathiTrust, Google Books, and Internet Archive. "Britain 1066–1485" is divided into the following sections: Pre-Norman Conquest (through 1066 CE), The Reign of the House of Normandy (1066 CE–1135 CE), The Reigns of the Houses of Blois & Anjou (1135 CE–1216 CE), The Reign of the House of Plantagenet (1216 CE–1399 CE), The Reigns of the Houses of Lancaster & York (1399 CE–1485 CE), and Other Medieval Collections. The medieval English researcher will find extensive links with brief descriptions to many gems; examples include the *Anglo-Saxon Chronicle*, *The Brut Chronicle*, and the *PASE: Prosopography of Anglo-Saxon England*.

CURRENT AWARENESS SOURCES AND ASSOCIATIONS

Arizona Center for Medieval and Renaissance Studies (ACMRS). Tempe, AZ: Arizona State University. acmrs.org/ (accessed 22 May 2019).

Call for Papers. The Department of English at the University of Pennsylvania. call-for-papers.sas.upenn.edu/ (accessed 15 May 2019).

International Society of Anglo-Saxonists (ISAS). www.isasweb.net/ (accessed 22 May 2019).

Medieval Academy of America. www.medievalacademy.org/ (accessed 22 May 2019).

MESA: Medieval Electronic Scholarly Alliance. www.mesa-medieval.org/ (accessed 22 May 2019).
Pontifical Institute of Mediaeval Studies (PIMS). www.pims.ca/ (accessed 22 May 2019).
SMFS: Society for Medieval Feminist Scholarship. smfsweb.org/ (accessed 22 May 2019).
Vagantes Conference on Medieval Studies. vagantesconference.org/ (accessed 22 May 2019).

The websites listed here serve the broad discipline of medieval studies. The medieval English researcher should become familiar with many of them as they will be important sources of information, professional contacts, and opportunities for presenting one's own research. A number of the sites have multiple functions: hosting conferences, notifications of future conferences, publishing monographs and series, and social events.

The Department of English at the University of Pennsylvania provides a service titled ***Call for Papers***. Researchers interested in seeing where they can get published and the emerging trends and topics will find this website useful. Editors submit their own CFPs (the Department of English disavows any responsibility for fraudulent requests). Researchers can use the search box, which will return results from a Google search. Viewing the side panel for recent posts yielded more up-to-date results. A quick search *medieval* returned a CFP for a symposium in Skopje, Macedonia, "Days of Justinian I"; a call for participants for a symposium at the University of London, "Maternal Influences in the Medieval and Early Modern World"; and a call for papers at the Sewanee Medieval Colloquium titled "Privilege and Position" in Sewanee, Tennessee.

Pontifical Institute of Mediaeval Studies (**PIMS**) is located at the University of Toronto. It was founded in 1929 by the faculty at St. Michael's College and the Congregation of the Priests of St. Basil. The goal of the institution is to support scholarly research through publications, attract research scholars, and offer academic programs. The institute was so successful that the Vatican conferred pontifical status upon it in 1939. Over the years, the institute has been headed by philologists, historians, and philosophers. The institute has an affiliation with the Centre for Medieval Studies in the School of Graduate Studies of the University of Toronto. PIMS offers a post-doctorate certificate in medieval studies. Publications include (but are not limited to) *Catalogus Translationum et Commentariorum*; *Monumenta Liturgica Beneventana*; *William of Conches: Opera omnia*; and the journal *Mediaeval Studies*. It has a library, gives lectures, provides fellowships, manages a visiting scholar program, and manages a diploma program in medieval manuscripts.

MESA: Medieval Electronic Scholarly Alliance is a community platform for scholars, projects, institutions, and organizations that provides a searchable database of digital resources for medieval studies. The content of the database has 119,372 peer-reviewed digital objects from 32 federated sites. These digital objects include texts, manuscript facsimiles, journal articles, and many others. The objects are accessible via links to the websites that have contributed them. The home page has links for popular topics, recent tags, and news. Scholars can upload and publish their own work. The search interface has simple and advanced pages. A search for *John Lydgate* as author returned 755 records.

The **Arizona Center for Medieval and Renaissance Studies (ACMRS)** is a statewide research center founded in 1981 to "stimulate the interdisciplinary exploration of medieval and Renaissance culture." The ACMRS is located at the Arizona State University campus in Tempe and coordinates the programs at ASU, Northern Arizona University in Flagstaff, and the University of Arizona in Tucson. Activities and programs include sponsorship of lecture and ad-hoc lecture series, an annual distinguished visiting professorship, an annual conference, a public symposium, certificates for undergraduate and graduate students, and summer study-abroad programs in the United Kingdom and Italy. The ACMRS has published or edited significant resources for researchers such as the series *Medieval and Renaissance Texts and Studies*, *Late Medieval and Early Modern Studies*, and *Arizona Studies in the Middle Ages and Renaissance*; the journal *Studies in Medieval and Renaissance History*; the database *Iter: Gateway to the Middle Ages and the Renaissance*; the dictionary *Oxford Dictionary of the Middle Ages*; and the definitive edition of *Beowulf* by Frederick Klaeber.

The **Vagantes Conference on Medieval Studies** was founded in 2002 as an interdisciplinary community of junior scholars. A typical conference will feature about thirty papers on a variety of topics. This intimate setting allows graduate students and post-doc fellows to form new relationships with future colleagues. The location of the annual conference changes every year with the conference highlighting the unique features of the hosting institution through lectures, exhibitions, and special events. The registration fee for graduate students is waived in order to encourage enrollment.

The **International Society of Anglo-Saxonists (ISAS)** has over six hundred members from twenty countries ranging from graduate students to established scholars. The society focuses on English history, archaeology, literature, language, religion, society, and numismatics from 450 CE to 1100 CE. ISAS holds a biennial conference, runs graduate workshops, gives awards, maintains a member listserv and directory, and publishes the series *Essays in Anglo-Saxon Studies*. Membership is required to have access to the entire

site, and benefits include a discount on the journal *Anglo-Saxon England*, eligibility to submit an abstract and give a paper at the ISAS conference, and opportunities to present at the ISAS *New Voices* panels at the International Congress on Medieval Studies and at the International Medieval Congress.

The **Medieval Academy of America** was founded in 1925 and is the largest medieval studies organization in the United States supporting research, publication, and teaching in medieval art, archaeology, history, law, literature, music, philosophy, religion, science, social institutions, and economic institutions. The academy has an annual conference and awards prizes, grants, and fellowships. It publishes the quarterly journal *Speculum* (see chapter 5), and the series *Medieval Academy Books* and *Medieval Academy Reprints for Teaching*. In addition to providing a comprehensive list of regional centers and associations that cover the world, the academy curates a database of peer-reviewed digital materials for the study of the Middle Ages. Users can browse the database using an alphabetical list or search by controlled-vocabulary subject tags. Resources cataloged include image banks, bibliographies, encyclopedias, reference works, pedagogical tools, editions, translations, music and other multimedia collections, and new works of digital scholarship.

The mission of the **SMFS: Society for Medieval Feminist Scholarship** is to promote "the study of the Patristic Age, the Middle Ages, and the Early Modern era from the perspective of gender studies, women's studies, and feminist studies." The society was originally conceived by feminist scholars attending the 1984 International Congress on Medieval Studies. The members are from all over the world, and it actively promotes and supports interdisciplinary exchanges at all levels of higher education. Members represent every continent and every academic discipline within the arts and humanities. The society has established book, article, and graduate-student essay prizes and publishes the journal *Medieval Feminist Forum: A Journal of Gender and Sexuality*, plus has occasional publications in its *Subsidia* series.

CONCLUSION

Research material on the web can often feel like unknown territory. Material that appears enticing at first glance may actually be defective in a number of ways—outdated, superseded editions, shallow scholarship, unusual translations, non-peer-reviewed sources, etc. As more material appears on the web, the confident researcher will have to develop a series of strategies in order to determine the best possible sources. Many of the freely available resources found in these full-text repositories are often out of copyright, and the researcher should know how to track down an authoritative copy of the edition

whether in print, online, or through a subscription database. To this end, librarians have created research guides to assist researchers in tracking down quality sources—check your home institutional library website. The guides list and locate standard reference tools like bibliographies, indexes, chronologies, and encyclopedias and primary sources on authors and their literature. Associations and societies promote their author's work or genre and seek to attract new members. Subscription databases and print tools will continue to be part of the researcher's arsenal for years to come; however, web resources will continue to grow and the challenge will be to corral new content while being cognizant of traditional resources.

NOTE

1. *The "Literariness" of the Penitentials*, Allen J. Frantzen [unpublished elsewhere in English] www.anglo-saxon.net/penance/generated-assets/1990PREF.pdf.

Chapter Ten

Researching a Thorny Problem

> *He was a true Chaucerian as far as love and admiration could make him, but he was unable to imitate worthily his master's skill in poetry. Occleve has left us a body of verse which has its own interest, but none of which, as poetry, can be placed much above mediocrity*.
>
> —"Occleve (or Hoccleve), Thomas." 1912. *The Catholic Encyclopedia*.[1]

> *He ranks, like his more voluminous and better known contemporary Lydgate, among those poets who have a historical rather than intrinsic importance in English literature. Their work rarely if ever rises above mediocrity; in neither is there even any clear evidence of a poetic temperament. Yet they represented for the 15th century the literature of their time, and kept alive, however faintly, the torch handed on to them by their "maister" Chaucer, to whom Occleve pays an affectionate tribute in three passages in the* De Regimine Principum.
>
> —"Occleve, Thomas." 1911. *Encyclopædia Britannica*, Volume 19.[2]

Researching the reputation of a writer can be a thorny problem. Throughout this volume, we have discussed a number of tools, strategies, and best advice in researching topics in Anglo-Saxon and medieval English literature. Tools such as biographies, bibliographies, indexes, dictionaries, and encyclopedias can provide explanations for why a writer's reputation is established and then can fade over time. These tools, however, are merely starting points in the research process. As we move through the process, we see how each tool can be used to discover new resources—journal articles, books, and websites are examples—that are relevant to the topic. Research is rarely a linear process from question to answer. To really investigate a topic, it is necessary to use multiple approaches and to seek out the best sources of information. The goal

of this chapter is to show how some of the different types of resources are employed in exploring a particular problem; in this case, the reputation of the poet Thomas Hoccleve. In a *real* research situation, we would probably not jump from one tool to the next but would more deeply examine each source that we find before looking for more resources.

HOCCLEVE'S REPUTATION

A poet that exemplifies the problem of a shifting reputation is Thomas Hoccleve (1367 CE–1426 CE). His birthdate is guessed, his early life is unknown, and nothing is known of his family. It is suggested that his name possibly derives from the town of Hockliffe, Bedfordshire, located west of London. Most of his works have managed to survive although not in his own handwriting. Having given up becoming a priest, he married in 1410 CE or 1411 CE, but his wife's name is unknown. He suffered a nervous breakdown between 1416 CE and 1421 CE, which he writes about in *The Series* poems. Hoccleve was not only a poet but also a clerk in the Privy Seal for thirty-eight years. He was also a scribe who supplemented his income by working on such manuscripts as John Gower's *Confessio Amantis*. Regarded as a minor poet of a declining, post-Chaucerian period, his work has been cited as a curiosity by most scholars over the centuries. His main work was *The Regiment of Princes* (1410–1411), an elaborate homily on virtues and vices written for Henry V of England. Other poems include *Letter of Cupid* (1402), *La Male Regle* (1406), and the poems known as *The Series*, which combine autobiographical poetry and poetic translations of texts he translated—*Complaint*, *Dialog with a Friend*, *Jereslau's Wife*, *Jonathas*, *Learn to Die*, and *Joys of Heaven*. While the *Regiment* had forty-three surviving whole manuscripts, none are in Hoccleve's own hand, and consequently scribal errors have crept in.[3] Two autograph manuscripts of *The Series* survive. Hoccleve is known for his references to Chaucer and for the autobiographical elements in his own poetry that reflect a rare trait not found in most medieval literature.[4]

The quantity and quality of Hoccleve's manuscripts meant that he avoided many of the problems that afflicted the works of other medieval writers, such as surviving copies, poor transcriptions, and author misattribution. The number of manuscripts of *The Regiment of Princes* that have survived to this day suggests that Hoccleve was well known in his time and that his works must have circulated beyond his circle of acquaintances. Yet Hoccleve's reputation is no better for it. In fact, his work was largely ignored by his contemporaries, and in the subsequent age of printing[5] very few printers took an interest in disseminating his work. Why did Hoccleve's reputation suffer from the

fifteenth to the late twentieth century, and why has his reputation increased greatly in the last fifty years? The quotations that began this chapter reflect the low opinion of Hoccleve that most scholars held in the late eighteenth and early twentieth century, but this view was reflected in earlier eras as well. By understanding how his manuscripts were accessed and passed down through the centuries, we can see a parallel in Hoccleve's reputation being molded and eventually resuscitated.

USING TERTIARY SOURCES

The first step in answering these questions is to find out more about Hoccleve's work and life. To this end, a manageable place to begin the process of building an understanding of the author's works is by examining biographies, encyclopedias, handbooks, and guides. These types of reference works contain bibliographies that point the researcher to quality sources. Biographies and bibliographies are illustrated here, although the same points apply to the other resources mentioned. The *Oxford Dictionary of National Biography* (*ODNB*) and the *Dictionary of Literary Biography* are useful starting points as they will often have an entry on an author, and that entry will usually have a bibliography of standard and critical editions, a list of manuscripts and locations, and citations to biographical monographs (if fortunate). The caveat is that these bibliographies may be dated or incomplete; the researcher is advised to examine multiple biographies while paying close attention to their publication dates. Furthermore, checking multiple biographies will decrease the chance of missing a reference to a book or article that is not cited elsewhere.

Searching for resources by and about an author can be straightforward; however, there can be some challenges, which we have outlined in this volume. "Hoccleve" can be spelled two different ways ("Occleve" and "Hoccleve"), so in searching older resources one will need to keep this in mind. Most modern bibliographies, databases, etc., will have "Hoccleve" and will have the name cross-referenced. However, as we see by the quotes at the beginning of the chapter, if a researcher is examining late nineteenth- and early twentieth-century views of Hoccleve, the alternative spelling will be applicable.

The *ODNB* has a short annotation on Hoccleve citing Exchequer and exchequer of receipt, patent rolls, and issue rolls—no doubt as part of his role as a clerk in the Privy Seal. There are references to Frederick Furnivall's *Hoccleve's Works* (volumes 61, 72, and 73) found in the *EETS* (*Early English Text Society*) series published between 1892 and 1897 (the standard editions for over a hundred years, which we will return to for further examination later). There is also a monograph by J. A. Burrow titled *Thomas Hoccleve*, a list of five manu-

scripts including a citation to a likeness of Hoccleve found in the manuscript BL, Arundel MS 38, fol. 37r. There is no mention of his reputation.

We also notice in the *ODNB* entry for Hoccleve that its summary was updated in 2008 and that an earlier version was written in 2004. Looking at both versions, nothing seems to have changed. However, we do know that the *ODNB* is the revised update of the *Dictionary of National Biography* published 1885 to 1900. Since this set is now in the public domain, a check of HathiTrust or the Internet Archive should bring forth the relevant volume and entry for Hoccleve. Interestingly, we find in volume 27 the entry written by Furnivall, the same editor of the *Early English Text Society* volumes; however, the entry only describes Hoccleve's life and works with little evaluation.

The most useful citation from the *ODNB* appears to be John Burrow's book *Thomas Hoccleve*, published in 1994. The volume is part of the series *Authors of the Middle Ages: English Writers of the Late Middle Ages*. It is an authoritative guide to his life and works with summaries or excerpts of sixty-eight life records from the Chancery and the Exchequer. Burrow's book appears to be the best authoritative guide to bibliographical, biographical, and textual sources up to 1994.

The *Dictionary of Literary Biography* (*DLB*) is more fruitful in revealing new information about the biographical and manuscript tradition. The source of the *DLB* reference to Hoccleve is a print version of the article by Douglas J. McMillan published in *Old and Middle English Literature*, volume 146 in 1994,[6] the same year as Burrow's book. Consequently, Burrow is not mentioned in McMillan's reference. Take the poem *Letter of Cupid* as an example: The poem survived in eleven manuscripts and one early print version based on a twelfth manuscript now lost, and the poem was first published in *The Workes of Geffray Chaucer* by T. Godfrey in 1532. This poem turns out to be the first time one of Hoccleve's works was published—and in another poet's collected works! We also note that Hoccleve's most important composition, *The Regiment of Princes*, written originally in 1410–1411, was not published in a "standard edition" until 1860 by Thomas Wright.

It should be noted that the Hoccleve entry in the *DLB* is from a volume in a monographic series published in 1994. Yet, this source is more comprehensive and informative than the electronic version of the *ODNB* entry published electronically in 2004 and updated in 2008. The takeaway from this incongruity is that recent electronic works and references do not necessarily mean complete, better, or more recent citations. We will need reference sources that were published after 1994.

The next logical step in our project is to consult author-, period-, and genre-specific bibliographies. A period-specific bibliography that is comprehensive and continually updated is the *Oxford Medieval Bibliographies: Medieval*

Studies. Specifically, the article "Thomas Hoccleve" written by Andrew Galloway is a treasure trove of manuscripts, bibliographies, and seminal works. Reviewed in December 2014 and updated in October 2018, the researcher can take comfort that this source is curated in a timely fashion. Galloway provides a narrative bibliography divided into sections: "Introduction"; "Reference Works and Bibliographies"; "Biography"; "Editions"; "Textual and Metrical Scholarship"; "Illustrations in Hoccleve Manuscripts"; and "Critical Studies." Each section has several entries with brief annotations stating why the particular citation is important.

Galloway traces the scholarship from the previous fifty years by stating that "no copies of *The Regiment of Princes*, Thomas Hoccleve's most popular poem, survive from Hoccleve's own hand, but copies exist that were probably supervised by him."[7] In fact, under the "Critical Studies" heading, Galloway discusses how scholars sympathetic to Hoccleve have had to defend their work until the mid-1980s when new insights from Burrow and others began to alter scholars' perception of Hoccleve. Galloway writes: "A wide range of ways have emerged for exploring Hoccleve's achievements, ranging from assessing the relationship of his works to Chaucer to issues of his political partisanship to various thematic elements of his context (from royalist ideology to gender to monetary history) and to poetics more structurally and formally considered."[8]

Galloway writes of recent editions of individual titles that have been published that supersede the *EETS* editions (1892–1897). Such new editions usually have extensive introductions and provide updates on scholarship. Using *The Regiment of Princes* as an example, we can pull out of Galloway's bibliography two editions by Charles Blyth and Nicholas Perkins that help us answer our research questions. Blyth's edition of *The Regiment of Princes* was published in 1999 in the *TEAMS Middle English Texts* series. Perkins's *Hoccleve's* Regiment of Princes: *Counsel and Constraint* was published by D. S. Brewer in 2001.

Perusing the introduction and table of contents in a monograph can reveal important clues, whether general overviews of a subject or minor points. The newer editions by Blyth and Perkins provide new insights into our question of Hoccleve's popularity. Blyth's introduction to *The Regiment of Princes* has a section on *The Regiment*'s manuscripts and earlier editions. Blyth states that his edition is not a critical edition but a full collation of the forty-three manuscripts (and two fragments). His comprehensive strategy deviates from the two printed editions written in 1860 by Wright and in 1897 by Furnivall that both relied on different, single manuscripts. Furthermore, Blyth notes that Furnivall chose the British Library MS Harley 4866 manuscript "because it has the best portrait of Chaucer . . . and some older readings."[9] Again, we see the towering figure of Chaucer overwhelming Hoccleve. Furthermore, the

cavalier and prejudiced attitude that Furnivall presented in other *EETS* volumes of Hoccleve's works was counterproductive to the mission of the Early English Text Society, which was to publish material in order to reach a broader audience: "We wish he had been a better poet and a manlier fellow; but all of those who've made fools of themselves, more or less, in their youth, will feel for the poor old versifier."[10] This biased attitude simply adopted and reinforced Renaissance hostility toward Hoccleve, and it negatively impacted Hoccleve's reputation and subsequent scholarship for the next eighty years.

Perkins's work *Hoccleve's* Regiment of Princes: *Counsel and Constraint* provides another avenue for answering our question of Hoccleve's poor reputation. In perusing the table of contents, we note that chapter 5 is titled "The Afterlife of the Poem: Hoccleve's Manuscripts, Readers and Critics," which seems to be a promising source of information. One early "critical" edition of the *Regiment* was published in 1860 by Wright. A footnote in the chapter mentions an earlier "modern" edition of the *Regiment* (and six other poems) that was published in 1796 by George Mason.[11] In fact, we discover that the lack of printed editions could stem from issues such as Hoccleve's stilted writing style, which many of his contemporaries found antiquated, as well as an influx of new political writings that ushered in the Tudor era. It did not help that Hoccleve's overt Catholic piety would have made his work less desirable after the Reformation in finding a larger audience through publication. In fact, some readers of the manuscripts crossed out Catholic references! These reasons kept his manuscripts from wider circulation. Hoccleve's work was kept alive through antiquarian circles and by his connection with Chaucer.

CASTING A WIDER NET WITH CATALOGS, GENERAL BIBLIOGRAPHIES, AND WEBSITES

At this point, we have established an understanding of Hoccleve's life and works, and now we can shift our attention to finding information that may have been omitted from the dictionaries, encyclopedias, guides, and bibliographies. Looking at catalogs, general bibliographies, and websites, we can see what else has been published. Before searching catalogs, a brief discussion of entry points into catalogs is necessary, namely, subject headings and name authorities. The Library of Congress assigns Hoccleve his own subject heading. He is listed in the Library of Congress Name Authority File (id.loc.gov /authorities/names/n82125108.html) as follows:

Hoccleve, Thomas, 1370?–1450?
Occleve, Thomas, 1370?–1450?
Hoccleue, Thomas, 1370?–1450?

The first thing to note is the variant spellings of his name. The first entry is the standard name authority, which is used in such databases as WorldCat. The second reference is a variant of Hoccleve's name found throughout WorldCat and scholarly sources, namely manuscripts. The last variant of his name, *Hoccleue*, appears to be exclusive to one source: F. Madan's *A Summary Catalogue of Western Manuscripts in the Bodleian Library at Oxford*, 1895: v. 3, p. 319 (under Rawl. poet. 168: Thomas Hoccleue). The second cautionary note is the dated references to 1370(?) as Hoccleve's birth date and 1450(?) as his death date, which suggests that these dates have not been updated in thirty years. Burrow, in an article published in 1995 in the *Review of English Studies*, has reasonably established through a reexamination of the manuscripts that Hoccleve was born in 1367 and that his death occurred in 1426. Even authority files can become outdated, and the researcher should be aware of this fact.

Searching WorldCat can be an arduous affair. A keyword search using *hoccleve* ***or*** *occleve* returned more than 1,400 records (1,048 books, 33 archives); this search was not entirely efficient. Redoing the search with *hoccleve, thomas* in the author field yielded 359 books, 25 archives, and 4 articles. The researcher should spend some time examining individual records as they can suggest multiple access points for further research in the database as well as links to other databases. Scrolling through the results, one comes across Jerome Mitchell's seminal biographical work *Thomas Hoccleve: A Study in Early Fifteenth-Century English Poetic*, which was published in 1968 and began to awaken scholars' interest in Hoccleve. Again, revising the search using *occleve, thomas* in the author field yielded sixty-eight records. Scrolling through the list, we again find a work mentioned earlier: *Poems by Thomas Hoccleve, Never Before Printed: Selected from a Ms. in the Possession of George Mason; With a Preface, Notes, and Glossary*, published in 1796. Of special note in the record is the reference to the *English Short Title Catalog*, ESTC T144475. This reference suggests that the *ESTC* is worth a look as it is an exhaustive catalog of printed books from 1475 to 1700 and can easily identify works authored by Hoccleve. Alas, a quick keyword search using *hoccleve* turned up only this one reference. Revising the search using *occleve* returned two references to another title: a collection of poems titled *The Muses Library; or a Series of English Poetry, from the Saxons, to the Reign of King Charles II*, printed in 1737 and reissued in 1741. The *ESTC* turns out to be a dead end for locating resources, but it does offer some confirmation of the low regard for Hoccleve that his work was not worth printing from manuscript form.

Performing a literature review is a necessary part of building a knowledge base on the author. The review surveys the literature in the chosen area of study, synthesizes that information into a summary, analyzes the information

for gaps in current knowledge, shows the limits of current thinking, and charts areas for further research. Searching secondary sources will bring a wealth of information and will quickly overwhelm the novice scholar. Consequently, it is better to focus on some aspect of the research, in this case, Hoccleve's reputation. A literature review consists of searching library and union catalogs, bibliographical reference works, and databases. Since we have covered reference works and catalogs, we will focus on searching literature databases using the keywords *hoccleve* **and** *reputation*.

Searching *hoccleve* **and** *reputation* in *MLA International Bibliography* (*MLAIB*), we find only two records that reflect our hunch that Hoccleve's reputation is worthy of study. However, both works—a journal article and a dissertation both published in 2002—directly address the issue: "Thomas Hoccleve and the Politics of Tradition," by John Bowers and published in the journal *The Chaucer Review: A Journal of Medieval Studies and Literary Criticism* and *The "Minor" Author and the Major Editor: A Case Study in Determining the Canon*, a dissertation by Christopher Andrew Healy. By reading these works and analyzing their bibliographies, one will no doubt find additional information on the topic. In fact, Bowers's article discusses how Hoccleve, despite the early success of *The Regiment of Princes*, was slowly pushed aside by the triumvirate of Chaucer, Gower, and Lydgate despite Hoccleve's best efforts to belong. Healy's dissertation is a critique of Furnivall's editorial practices that contributed to Hoccleve's lackluster reputation: "Furnivall's text itself is haphazardly irregular, frequently producing—not reproducing—the same flaws the forewords criticize. As these blemished editions have remained the standard for over a century, Furnivall's editorial irresponsibility undoubtedly slowed the critical re-evaluation of Hoccleve which began at the end of the twentieth century."[12] Using the same search terms in the *Annual Bibliography of English Language and Literature* (*ABELL*) retrieves forty-one hits, mostly on Chaucer but nothing directly on our topic.

Although the citations in *MLAIB* and *ABELL* can be found in full-text journal databases, a search of Project MUSE and JSTOR will ensure that relevant material such as book reviews, review essays, and articles that are not indexed in the aforementioned bibliographical databases will not be missed. This is particularly true for articles that are interdisciplinary in nature. As you process the results of your searches, it is important to return to these databases to find new information. Most databases have email alert services that one can subscribe to and an option to save a search for future use—all time-savers for the busy researcher.

As we have seen a number of times in this chapter, discussing any aspect of Hoccleve's thought invariably leads to Chaucer. In fact, one of Hoccleve's poems was first printed in *The Workes of Geffray Chaucer* in 1532. Since

Chaucer and Hoccleve were contemporaries, it behooves the researcher to check bibliographies created for research on Chaucer. Web bibliographies on Chaucer include *The Essential Chaucer*, a selective, annotated bibliography of Chaucer studies from 1900 to 1984 created by Mark Allen and J. H. Fisher, and the *Chaucer Bibliography Online*, the annotated bibliographical entries from the journal *Studies in the Age of Chaucer* from 1975 to the present (updated annually). A search of the *Chaucer Bibliography Online* using *hoccleve* and *reputation* retrieved zero hits, so we expanded our search by using only *hoccleve*. This action retrieved 139 records with a number of citations to Hoccleve and Chaucer on manuscript culture.

Thomas Hoccleve was considered originally to be a mediocre writer and was passed over for serious study, even by his contemporaries. Even William Caxton—whose early English prints shaped the medieval literary canon for modern readers—did not bother to print any of Hoccleve's works. Views of late medieval writing, Hoccleve's autobiographical aspects (e.g., candidly discussing his mental illness and monetary woes) being labeled as "unmanly" by later scholars, his manuscripts being kept in private hands for monetary and religious reasons, and his life and work falling under the shadow of Chaucer—all these contributed to the perception of Hoccleve as a "mediocre" writer. However, as the concept of medieval English literature has expanded, a fresh perspective has been brought to bear upon lesser-known writers, and their reputations have been reevaluated. An example of this reevaluation is the formation of the International Hoccleve Society in 2011. The society publishes an expanding bibliography, which now has 224 entries.

CONCLUSION

Throughout this volume, we have introduced and examined a wide variety of research sources and strategies that the medieval English scholar will find invaluable, including online searching and using library catalogs; author-, period-, and genre-specific reference sources; indexes, bibliographies, abstracts, journals, and websites; and library, archive, and manuscript collections. Researching the Anglo-Saxon and medieval era can be a frustrating experience given the unequal manuscript tradition, the languages to be comprehended, and the special tools required to fully understand an author's work, period, and place. Appreciating the value and limitations of these resources will be beneficial to the scholar until they prove to be fruitless, in which case new strategies will need to be developed. Research is rarely a linear process, and the scholar will need to adopt a recursive approach in discovering and locating relevant material. As the scholar undertakes this

process, he will develop a range of effective strategies for locating information and building a collection of high-quality primary and secondary sources. Consulting your reference librarian is a viable alternative when dead ends appear. We hope this volume provides you with insights into understanding the research process and an appreciation of the search strategies necessary for becoming a medieval English scholar.

NOTES

1. "Occleve (or Hoccleve), Thomas," in *The Catholic Encyclopedia: An International Work of Reference on the Constitution, Doctrine, Discipline, and History of the Catholic Church*, ed. Charles George Herbermann (New York: Gilmary Society, 1912), 197.

2. "Occleve, Thomas," in *Encyclopædia Britannica*, ed. Hugh Chisholm (New York: Cambridge University Press, 1911), 966–67.

3. Andrew Galloway, "Thomas Hoccleve," in *Oxford Medieval Bibliographies: Medieval Studies*. doi: 10.1093/obo/9780195396584-0037. Accessed April 19, 2019.

4. Details of Hoccleve's life were taken from J. Burrow, "Hoccleve [Occleve], Thomas (c. 1367–1426)," in *Oxford Dictionary of National Biography*, online edition ed. Lawrence Goldman (Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2004), doi.org/10.1093/ref:odnb/13415; Douglas J. McMillan, "Thomas Hoccleve (circa 1368–circa 1437)," in *Old and Middle English Literature*, ed. Jeffrey Helterman and Jerome Mitchell, 205–10, *Dictionary of Literary Biography Series*, vol. 146 (Detroit: Gale Research, 1994); Charles Blyth, ed. *Thomas Hoccleve, The Regiment of Princes* (Rochester, NY: University of Rochester, 1999).

5. There are no listings of printed books in the *Early English Books Online*. The *Nineteenth Century Collections Online* lists eighteen catalogs, some of which reference the Mason edition of 1796.

6. McMillan, "Thomas Hoccleve (circa 1368–circa 1437)," 205–10; *Dictionary of Literary Biography*, vol. 146.

7. Galloway, "Thomas Hoccleve."

8. Galloway, "Thomas Hoccleve."

9. Thomas Hoccleve, *Hoccleve's Works: The Regiment of Princes*, ed. Frederick J. Furnivall, *EETS* e.s. 72 (London: K. Paul, Trench, Trübner & Co., 1897), xvii.

10. Thomas Hoccleve, *Hoccleve's Works: The Minor Poems*, ed. Frederick J. Furnivall, *EETS* e.s. 61 (London: K. Paul, Trench, Trübner & Co., 1892), xxxviii.

11. Nicholas Perkins, *Hoccleve's* Regiment of Princes: *Counsel and Constraint* (Rochester, NY: D. S. Brewer, 2001), 152–53.

12. Christopher Andrew Healy, *The "Minor" Author and the Major Editor: A Case Study in Determining the Canon*, diss. (Baton Rouge: Louisiana State University and Agricultural and Mechanical College, 2002), abstract.

Appendix

Given the interdisciplinary nature of studying medieval English literature, the medieval English researcher will need to explore resources outside of literary studies. This appendix presents a selection of additional subject resources that the researcher may find useful in art, history, music, philosophy, religion, science, social sciences, and theater. As in literary studies, reference tools such as guides, dictionaries, encyclopedias, handbooks, indexes, and bibliographies are similar in these disciplines. These resources will, in turn, point you to further research tools. Most of these resources will be accessible through your university library or through interlibrary loan. Consult your research librarian for additional sources and strategies.

GENERAL RESOURCES

Guides

Perrault, Anna H., and Elizabeth Aversa. *Information Resources in the Humanities and the Arts*. 6th edition. Denver, CO: Libraries Unlimited, 2012.

An update of *The Humanities: A Selective Guide to Information Resources*, this guide lists important sources and provides annotations for research tools in the general humanities, philosophy, religion, languages and literatures, performing arts, and the visual arts.

Indexes and Bibliographies

Academic Search Ultimate. Ipswich, MA: EBSCO Publishing. www.ebscohost.com.

This interdisciplinary database indexes over 17,000 general and scholarly journals, going back to 1911 for some titles, with most available in full text. Reports, books, and videos are indexed.

Humanities Search Ultimate. Ipswich, MA: EBSCO Publishing. www.ebscohost.com.

Another product by EBSCO that concentrates on the interdisciplinary nature of the humanities. Roughly 4,500 journals are indexed, with some titles going back to 1880. Subjects covered include archaeology, art, classical studies, communications, dance, film, folklore, gender studies, history, journalism, linguistics, literary and social criticism, literature, music, performing arts, philosophy, and religion and theology.

ProQuest Central. Ann Arbor, MI: ProQuest. https://www.proquest.com/products-services/databases/ProQuest_Central.html.

This interdisciplinary database is a platform for accessing databases across major subject areas, including business, health and medical, social sciences, arts and humanities, education, science and technology, and religion.

ProQuest Dissertations & Theses Global. Ann Arbor, MI: ProQuest. https://www.proquest.com/products-services/dissertations/.

This repository contains over four million graduate dissertations from institutions in eighty-eight countries with over half available in full text.

ART AND ARCHITECTURE

Guides

Marmor, Max, and Alex Ross. *Guide to the Literature of Art History 2*. Chicago: American Library Association, 2005.

This volume is a supplement and revision to the *Guide to the Literature of Art History* (1980). Coverage includes painting, drawing, decorative arts, printmaking, applied arts, sculpture, and architecture. Resources are organized around bibliographies, dictionaries, encyclopedias, handbooks, and visual resources.

Dictionaries and Encyclopedias

Oxford Art Online. New York: Oxford University Press. www.oxfordartonline.com.

This platform is a combination of a number of original print titles: the *Grove Dictionary of Art*; the *Benezit Dictionary of Artists*; *Encyclopedia of Aesthetics*; the *Oxford Companion to Western Art*; and the *Concise Oxford Dictionary of Art Terms*. This is the preeminent art reference tool for finding articles and bibliographies on topics and artists.

Indexes and Bibliographies

Art and Architecture Complete. Ipswich, MA: EBSCO. www.ebscohost.com.

Art and Architecture Complete is an index that covers about 790 journals, magazines, and trade publications; 230 books; and 63,000 images. There are 360 journals in full text. Subjects include architecture, costume design, antiques, conservation, archaeology, decorative arts, graphic arts, interior design, landscape design, painting, photography, printmaking, and sculpture.

Art Index. Ipswich, MA: EBSCO. www.ebscohost.com.

More than 680 art publications (including periodicals, yearbooks, museum bulletins, competition and award notices, exhibition listings, interviews, and more), 14,000 dissertations, and 200,000 art reproductions are indexed in a variety of languages from 1984 to the present. Subject coverage includes advertising, antiques, archaeology, architecture and architectural history, art history, crafts, decorative arts, folk art, graphic arts, industrial design, interior design, landscape architecture, motion pictures, museology, non-Western art, painting, photography, pottery, sculpture, television, textiles, and video. Retrospective coverage is available through the *Art Index Retrospective, 1929–1984*.

HISTORY

Guides

Fritze, Ronald H., Brian E. Coutts, and Louis A. Vyhnanek, eds. *Reference Sources in History*. Santa Barbara, CA: ABC-CLIO, 2004.

Reference Sources in History contains more than nine hundred entries on atlases, encyclopedias, dictionaries, handbooks, sourcebooks, bibliographies, and chronologies.

Dictionaries and Encyclopedias

Cannon, John, and Robert Crowcroft, eds. *The Oxford Dictionary of British History*. 3rd edition. New York: Oxford University Press, 2015.

This dictionary contains more than 3,800 authoritative entries written by more than a hundred specialist contributors covering people and events in the domestic, political, and cultural realms in Britain since 55 BCE.

Panton, Kenneth J. *Historical Dictionary of London*. Lanham, MD: Scarecrow Press, 2001.

London is examined from its foundation in Roman times to its modern place as one of the world's preeminent capitals. Entries cover general themes such as immigration and housing to specific topics like individual historic buildings, financial institutions, museums, and theaters. Panton also wrote *London: A Historical Companion* (2005).

Strayer, Joseph Reese, ed. *Dictionary of the Middle Ages*. 13 volumes. New York: Scribner, 1982–1989. William Chester Jordan, *Supplement* (2003).

Covers all aspects of medieval life in the Latin West, Slavic Europe, Asia Minor, Muslim-Christian parts of North Africa, and the lands of the caliphate in the East from 500 CE to 1500 CE. Topics include daily living, important figures, terms and concepts, countries and provinces, political movements, monuments, and events.

Indexes and Bibliographies

Historical Abstracts. Ipswich, MA: EBSCO. www.ebscohost.com.

This authoritative database covers the history of the world (excluding the United States and Canada) from 1450 CE to the present, with more than 2,300 academic historical journals in more than forty languages going back to 1955. Books and conference proceedings are included as well. Anglo-Saxon and medieval-era topics are represented.

Iter: Gateway to the Middle Ages & Renaissance. www.itergateway.org/.

A bibliography of more than 1.3 million citations to books, articles, reviews, bibliographies, catalogs, abstracts, conference proceedings, Festschriften, and discographies about the Middle Ages and Renaissance, 400 CE–1700 CE.

Historical Sources

Douglas, David C., ed. *English Historical Documents*. New York: Oxford University Press, 1953–.

This collection presents primary source documents from 500 CE to 1914 CE created in England. Four volumes concern the medievalist: volume 1 (500–1042), volume 2 (1042–1189), volume 3 (1189–1327), and volume 4 (1327–1485). Document types include secular narrative sources, charters and laws, wills, letters, grants, guild regulations, manumissions, genealogies, and ecclesiastical sources. Documents published in other languages (Anglo-Saxon, Latin, Old Norse, and Old French) are given in English translation.

Mills, A. D. *A Dictionary of British Place-Names*. Rev. edition. New York: Oxford University Press, 2011.

The revised edition contains 17,000 entries that detail the origins and development of place-names from antiquity to modern times. It chronicles the development of English, Irish, Welsh, and Scottish place-names. It also has a bibliography, maps of Britain showing old and new boundaries, a glossary of common elements in place-names, and an appendix of websites.

Atlases

Cunliffe, Barry, Robert Bartlett, John Morrill, Asa Briggs, and Joanna Bourke, eds. *The Penguin Atlas of British and Irish History: From Earliest Times to the Present Day*. New York: Penguin, 2002.

This atlas has maps and photographs covering Britain and Ireland from the Neolithic period to the present. It provides geographic information about the cultural, social, and economic development of the British Isles. Panoramic reconstructions of historic sites—such as the markets of medieval London, Viking-era York, and medieval Norwich—are included.

Gilbert, Martin. *The Routledge Atlas of British History*. 5th edition. New York: Routledge, 2012.

This atlas presents maps from the Middle Ages until the present. The maps and the essays that accompany them are presented chronologically and touch on politics, war and conflict, trade, religion, industry, society and economics, and immigration.

MUSIC

Guides

Sampsel, Laurie. *Music Research: A Handbook*. 2nd edition. New York: Oxford University Press, 2012.

This is an excellent source for discovering the wide range of reference tools available in music and for providing an overview of the research process. Sources include guides, encyclopedias, dictionaries, library catalogs, indexes to journals, music dissertations, theses, conference papers, Festschriften, thematic catalogs, indexes to music in complete-works editions, musical monuments, historical sets, anthologies, music histories, source readings, chronologies, and discographies.

Dictionaries and Encyclopedias

Oxford Music Online. New York: Oxford University Press. www.oxfordmusiconline.com.

Includes *Grove Music Online*. As the definitive English-language music reference resource, *Oxford Music Online* allows for easy searching of *Grove Music Online* as well as *The Oxford Dictionary of Music*, *The Oxford Companion to Music*, and *The New Grove Dictionary of Music and Musicians*. There are more than 52,000 articles written by nearly 9,000 scholars charting music history around the world.

Indexes and Bibliographies

Music Periodicals Database. Ann Arbor, MI: ProQuest. www.proquest.com.

This database provides indexing and abstracts for several hundred international music periodicals. The database currently has more than 1.3 million records, the majority from the most recent ten years of publication. Indexing goes back to 1874 for some journals. Coverage includes all aspects of music: music education, performance, ethnomusicology, musical theater, theory, popular music forms, and composition.

RILM Abstracts of Music Literature. Ipswich, MA: EBSCO. www.ebscohost.com.

The database has over one million records covering musicology, ethnomusicology, theory, analysis, composition, instruments and voice, performance practice and notation, liturgy, dance, aesthetics, criticism, music therapy and education, and iconography. The database seeks to be comprehensive by abstracting articles, books, conference proceedings, bibliographies, catalogs, dissertations, Festschriften, iconographies, critical commentaries to complete works, ethnographic recordings and videos, and reviews.

PHILOSOPHY

Guides

Bynagle, Hans E. *Philosophy: A Guide to the Reference Literature*. 3rd edition. Englewood, CO: Libraries Unlimited, 2006.

This guide describes resources from the ancient world to the present. The volume is divided into four main sections: general sources, history of philosophy, branches of philosophy, and miscellanea. Bibliographies, dictionaries, encyclopedias, websites, and indexes are described and evaluated.

Dictionaries and Encyclopedias

Marenbon, John, ed. *Medieval Philosophy*. New York: Routledge, 1998.

Part of the set *Routledge History of Philosophy* edited by G. H. R. Parkinson and S. G. Shanker, this volume devotes a chapter to a major philosopher or period. Boethius, Avicenna, the twelfth century, Bacon, Ockham, and Aquinas,

among others, are represented. Each chapter has a detailed bibliography of critical editions, studies, and secondary literature.

Stanford Encyclopedia of Philosophy. Stanford, CA: Stanford University. plato.stanford.edu.

This excellent encyclopedia, begun in 1995, has become the standard-bearer for encyclopedias in philosophy. The entries are peer-reviewed and updated regularly. There is a browsable table of contents and a search box for searching within entries. A detailed bibliography, including links to other web resources, concludes each entry.

Indexes and Bibliographies

The Philosopher's Index: An International Index to Philosophical Periodicals and Books. Bowling Green, OH: Philosophy Documentation Center. Available online through various vendors.

Coverage for *The Philosopher's Index* includes citations to books, journal articles, and conference proceedings in philosophy and its subjects (aesthetics, epistemology, ethics, logic, metaphysics, and the philosophy of selected disciplines) beginning in 1940. The European version of *The Philosopher's Index* is the *International Philosophical Bibliography*, which began in 1949. Both these titles have been the standard-bearers in philosophy for many years.

PhilPapers. The PhilPapers Foundation. philpapers.org/.

PhilPapers is a comprehensive index and bibliography of more than 2.4 million entries in 5,400 categories. Coverage includes journals, books, open-access archives, and personal pages maintained by academics. The site is managed by a community of philosophers. While the website requires institutions in high-GDP countries to subscribe, open-access options for individuals comprise a public API, the archive, listings for events and conferences, and a job site for philosophers.

RELIGION

Dictionaries and Encyclopedias

Jones, Lindsay, ed. *Encyclopedia of Religion*. 2nd edition. 15 volumes. Detroit: Thomson Gale, 2005.

The *Encyclopedia of Religion* has more than three thousand entries on religions from all over the world. There is a synoptic outline of contents (originally created by the first editor, Mircea Eliade) in the final index volume. This outline is divided into a section on religions covering forty-four sections and a second section on religious studies, specifically religious phenomena.

Indexes and Bibliographies

ATLA Religion Database. Chicago: American Theological Library Association. Available online via various vendors.

The *ATLA Religion Database* indexes journal articles, books, reviews, and dissertations from 1949 to the present, with select reporting going back to 1810. The database consists of more than 2.8 million records covering the research literature of religion in more than thirty languages in subjects including the Bible, archaeology, antiquities, human culture and society, world religions and religious studies, church history, missions, ecumenism, pastoral ministry, theology, philosophy, and ethics. *The Catholic Periodical and Literature Index* was incorporated into the *ATLA Religion Database* in 2017.

Index Religiosus. Turnhout, Belgium: Brepols. www.brepolis.net/.

Index Religiosus is a bibliography for academic publications in theology, religious studies, and church history. Begun in 2014, the database is a combination of the bibliography of the *Revue d'histoire ecclésiastique* and the *Elenchus Bibliographicus* from the journal *Ephemerides Theologicae Lovanienses*. Over 600,000 bibliographic and review references are provided in the following subject areas: institutions, orders, congregations, influential figures, hagiography, political history, social and economic history, archaeology, art history, architecture, and music.

SCIENCE

Dictionaries and Encyclopedias

Gossin, Pamela, ed. *Encyclopedia of Literature and Science*. Westport, CT: Greenwood Press, 2002.

This interdisciplinary dictionary has more than 650 entries about literature and science. An introductory essay explains the history of the field.

Methodologies, scientists, writers, and theories are represented. A select bibliography points the researcher to further titles for consultation.

Lindberg, David C., and Michael H. Shank, eds. *The Cambridge History of Science*. Volume 2, Medieval Science. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2013.

Volume 2 in this seven-volume set is devoted to the history of science in the Middle Ages from Europe to the Indus Valley. It examines scientific learning and advancement in the cultures associated with the Arabic, Greek, Latin, and Hebrew languages.

McGraw-Hill Encyclopedia of Science and Technology. New York: McGraw-Hill. www.accessscience.com.

This database pulls material from a number of print resources and websites: *McGraw-Hill Encyclopedia of Science and Technology*; *McGraw-Hill Yearbooks of Science and Technology*; *Hutchinson Dictionary of Scientific Biography*; *McGraw-Hill Dictionary of Scientific and Technical Terms*; and *ScienceNews*. Biographies on medievalists like Roger Bacon are included.

Indexes and Bibliographies

Web of Science. Philadelphia: Clarivate Analytics. clarivate.com/products/web-of-science/.

One of the largest journal-citation indexes available, the *Web of Science* includes *Science Citation Index*, *Social Sciences Citation Index*, and *Arts & Humanities Citation Index*. *Web of Science* provides "Cited Reference Search" and subject searching. The degree of access to content depends upon the subscription tier your institution has acquired. *Web of Science* provides complete bibliographic data, searchable author abstracts, and cited references. For impact-factor information about specific journals, users are directed to the index "Journal Citation Reports."

SOCIAL SCIENCES

Guides

Herron, Nancy L., ed. *The Social Sciences: A Cross-Disciplinary Guide to Selected Sources*. 3rd edition. Englewood, CO: Libraries Unlimited, 2002.

A comprehensive overview of essential reference sources in both print and electronic format. The 1,500 annotated citations are prepared by leading subject specialist librarians and arranged by the following disciplines: general social sciences, political science, economics, business, history, law and justice, anthropology, sociology, education, psychology, geography, and communication.

Dictionaries and Encyclopedias

Wright, James D., ed. *The International Encyclopedia of the Social and Behavioral Sciences*. 2nd edition. 26 volumes. Amsterdam: Elsevier, 2015. www.sciencedirect.com.

The International Encyclopedia of the Social and Behavioral Sciences is the primary reference source for locating social and behavioral sciences. Available in both print and online editions, it comprises over 3,900 articles with 90,000 bibliographic references as well as comprehensive name and subject indexes.

Indexes and Bibliographies

ProQuest Political Science. Ann Arbor, MI: ProQuest. www.proquest.com.

The *ProQuest Political Science* database gives users access to more than 450 leading political science and international relations journals. This collection provides the full text of many core titles that are in another database, *Worldwide Political Science Abstracts*. Citations to medieval politics are included, such as Middle English chronicles, the Crusades, and the law.

PsycINFO. Washington, DC: American Psychological Association. www.apa.org/.

PsycINFO is the largest database of indexed works in psychology with eight million cited references in 185,000 journal articles, books, and book chapters. The sources include more than 1,800 professional journals, chapters, books, reports, theses, and dissertations, many published internationally. Examples of topics on medieval psychology include cognitive psychology; desire in *Piers Plowman*; and pre-melancholia and modern trauma.

Sociological Abstracts. Ann Arbor, MI: ProQuest. www.proquest.com.

Sociological Abstracts is the premier online resource for researchers, professionals, and students in sociology and related disciplines. Over 2,000 journals

are indexed with select books, dissertations, conference papers, and book reviews. Medieval topics on society, culture, family, and marriage can be found here.

THEATER

Guides

Simons, Linda Keir. *The Performing Arts: A Guide to the Reference Literature.* Englewood, CO: Libraries Unlimited, 1994.

This reference work provides an overview of the performing arts with a focus on theater and dance. Resources include bibliographies, catalogs, indexes, dictionaries, encyclopedias, companions, biographical sources, review materials, and professional organizations.

Dictionaries and Encyclopedias

Grantley, Darryll. *Historical Dictionary of British Theatre: Early Period*. Lanham, MD: Scarecrow Press, 2013.

This historical dictionary covers the dates 1311 CE to 1899 CE, with more than 1,183 entries pertaining to playwrights, plays, managers, critics, specific theaters, legislative acts, genres, and technical terms. An extensive bibliography is provided.

Kennedy, Dennis, ed. *The Oxford Encyclopedia of Theatre and Performance*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2003.

The encyclopedia has over nine hundred entries for references to medieval concepts such as mystery plays, medieval theater in Europe, historical literary figures such as Jacques Milet, and terms such as *locus*. Most citations do not have a bibliography.

Thomson, Peter, ed. *The Cambridge History of British Theatre*. 3 volumes. New York: Cambridge University Press, 2004.

This set provides the reader with interpretative essays on the evolution of theater in the British Isles. Volume 1 begins with Roman Britain and ends with the restoration of King Charles II to the throne in 1660 CE.

Trussler, Simon. *Cambridge Illustrated History of British Theatre*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1994.

This resource explores the development of the live performing arts. The work has four chapters for the medievalist: Roman Britain to 950 CE; the Middle Ages 950 CE to 1300 CE; the later Middle Ages 1300 CE to 1485 CE; and the early vestiges of the professional theater, 1485 CE to 1572 CE. A glossary of theater terms, a directory of significant people, and a select bibliography are included.

Indexes and Bibliographies

International Bibliography of Theatre and Dance. Ipswich, MA: EBSCO. www.ebscohost.com.

The *International Bibliography of Theatre and Dance* (*IBTD*) lists books and articles about theater and the performing arts. Subjects include ballet, cinema, comedy, dance, drama, film, mime, opera, puppetry, and theater. Performance and literary aspects of theater are covered.

Bibliography

Barron, W. R. J. *English Medieval Romance*. New York: Longman, 1987.

Beal, Peter. "Palaeography." In *A Dictionary of English Manuscript Terminology 1450–2000*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2008.

Bessinger, J. B., Jr., ed. *A Concordance to the Anglo-Saxon Poetic Records*. Ithaca, NY: Cornell University Press, 1978.

Blyth, Charles, ed. *Thomas Hoccleve, The Regiment of Princes*. Rochester, NY: University of Rochester, 1999.

Burrow, J. "Hoccleve [Occleve], Thomas (c. 1367–1426)." In *Oxford Dictionary of National Biography*, online edition edited by Lawrence Goldman. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2004. doi.org/10.1093/ref:odnb/13415.

Cameron, Angus. "Anglo-Saxon Literature." In *Dictionary of the Middle Ages*, edited by Joseph R. Strayer, volume 1, 274–88. New York: Charles Scribner's Sons, 1982.

Cameron, Angus. "The Boundaries of Old English Literature." In *The Anglo-Saxons: Synthesis and Achievement*, edited by J. Douglas Woods and David A. E. Pelteret, 27–36. Waterloo, Ontario, Canada: Wilfrid Laurier University Press, 1985.

Clemens, Raymond, and Timothy Graham. *Introduction to Manuscript Studies*. Ithaca, NY: Cornell University Press, 2007.

DeZelar-Tiedman, Christine. "The Proportion of *NUC Pre-1956* Titles Represented in *RLIN* and OCLC Databases Compared: A Follow-up to the Beale/Kafadar Study." *College and Research Libraries* 69, no. 5 (September 2008): 401–6.

Donoghue, Daniel. *Old English Literature: A Short Introduction.* Malden, MA: Blackwell, 2004.

Edwards, A. S. G. "The Manuscript: British Library MS Cotton Nero A.x." In *A Companion to the Gawain-Poet*, edited by Derek Brewer and Jonathan Gibson. Rochester, NY: D. S. Brewer, 1997.

Fowler, David C. *The Bible in Middle English Literature*. Seattle: University of Washington Press, 1984.

Galloway, Andrew. "Thomas Hoccleve." In *Oxford Medieval Bibliographies: Medieval Studies*. doi:10.1093/obo/9780195396584-0037.

Goldie, Matthew Boyd. *Middle English Literature: A Historical Sourcebook*. Malden, MA: Blackwell, 2003.

Hidley, Gregory Ray, ed. "Anglo-Saxon Poetic Records." University of Oxford Text Archive, Oxford: University of Oxford, 1993. ota.ox.ac.uk/desc/1936.

Hoccleve, Thomas. *Hoccleve's Works: The Minor Poems*, ed. Frederick J. Furnivall, *EETS* e.s. 61, London: K. Paul, Trench, Trübner & Co., 1892, xxxviii.

Hoccleve, Thomas. *Hoccleve's Works: The Regiment of Princes*, ed. Frederick J. Furnivall, *EETS* e.s. 72, London: K. Paul, Trench, Trübner & Co., 1897, xvii.

Hoover, David L. "Old English Language." In *Dictionary of the Middle Ages*, edited by Joseph R. Strayer, vol. 9, 226–31. New York: Scribner, 1982–1989.

Kelly, S. E. "Æthelberht." In *Encyclopaedia of Anglo-Saxon England*, edited by Michael Lapidge. Malden, MA: Wiley-Blackwell, 2000.

Ker, Neil R. *Catalogue of Manuscripts Containing Anglo-Saxon*. 2nd edition. Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1990.

McMillan, Douglas J. "Thomas Hoccleve (circa 1368–circa 1437)." In *Old and Middle English Literature*, edited by Jeffrey Helterman and Jerome Mitchell, 205–10; *Dictionary of Literary Biography Series*, volume 146. Detroit: Gale Research, 1994.

Mitchell, Jerome. *Thomas Hoccleve: A Study in Early Fifteenth-Century English Poetic*. Chicago: University of Illinois Press, 1968.

Niles, John D. *Old English Literature: A Guide to Criticism with Selected Readings*. Walden, MA: Wiley-Blackwell, 2016.

"Occleve (or Hoccleve), Thomas." In *The Catholic Encyclopedia: An International Work of Reference on the Constitution, Doctrine, Discipline, and History of the Catholic Church*, edited by Charles George Herbermann, 197. New York: Gilmary Society, 1912.

"Occleve, Thomas." In *Encyclopædia Britannica*, edited by Hugh Chisholm, 966–67. New York: Cambridge University Press, 1911.

Preston, Jean, and Laetitia Yeandle. *English Handwriting, 1400–1650: An Introductory Manual*. Binghamton, NY: Center for Medieval and Early Renaissance Studies, 1992.

Robinson, Orrin W. *Old English and Its Closest Relatives*. Stanford, CA: Stanford University Press, 1992.

Theiner, Paul. "Medieval English Literature." In *Medieval Studies: An Introduction*, edited by James M. Powell, 278–313. Syracuse, NY: Syracuse University Press, 1992.

Index

Abbreviationes (Pluta), 172
ABELL. *See Annual Bibliography of English Language and Literature*
Ælfric, Abbot of Eynsham (c. 955–c. 1010), x, 20–21, 22, 23, 33, 41, 42–43, 79, 84, 89, 139
Ælfric: An Annotated Bibliography (Reinsma), 79, 84, 89
Æthelwold, x, 147
Aldhelm, 33
Alexander, Marc, 154, 155, 160
Alfred the Great, x, 38, 103, 113, 144, 171
Allen, Mark, 82, 83, 209
Amodio, Mark, 25, 29
Amos, Ashley Crandell, 164
"and" (Boolean operator). *See* Boolean searching
Andrew, Malcolm, 83, 86–87
Anglia: Journal of English Philology / Zeitschrift für englische Philologie, 107, 108, 110
Anglo-Norman Dictionary (Rothwell), 167, 168
Anglo-Norman Literature: A Guide to Texts and Manuscripts (Dean), 156, 157–58
Anglo-Norman Texts, 115, 117–18
Anglo-Saxon Chronicles (Swanton), 144–45
Anglo-Saxon Chronicles, x, 33, 144, 145, *146*, 183
An Anglo-Saxon Dictionary (Bosworth and Toller), 164, 165–66, 191
Anglo-Saxon England, 81, 86, 101, 102–103, 127
Anglo-Saxon Glosses and Glossaries (Lendinara), 169, 171
The Anglo-Saxon Literature Handbook (Amodio), 25, 29
Anglo-Saxon Manuscripts (Brown), 122, 123
Anglo-Saxon Manuscripts: A Bibliographical Handlist of Manuscripts and Manuscript Fragments Written or Owned in England Up to 1100 (Gneuss and Lapidge), 118, 125, 127
Anglo-Saxon Manuscripts: Basic Readings (Richards), 123
Anglo-Saxon Narrative Poetry Project, 184, 186–87
Anglo-Saxon Penitentials: A Cultural Database, 190, 192
The Anglo-Saxon Poetic Records: A Collective Edition (*ASPR*) (Krapp and Dobbie), 140, 141, 143, 180

Anglo-Saxon Studies in Archaeology & History, 101, 103
Annals of English Drama, 975–1700 (Wagonheim), 147, 148
An Annotated Bibliography of North American Doctoral Dissertations on Old English Language and Literature (Pulsiano), 80, 81–82
Annual Bibliography of English Language and Literature (ABELL), 70, 71, 73–74, *75*, 208
Archibald, Elizabeth, 41, 43–44, 150, 152
Archive Finder, 128, 130
archives:
Archive Finder, 128, 129; *British Library Manuscript & Archive Catalog*, 128, 130; locating, 15, 125–28, 129; web, 178–82
The Arizona Center for Medieval and Renaissance Studies (ACMRS), 116, 195, 197
art and architecture, resources on, 212-13
The Arthurian Handbook (Lacy, Ashe, and Mancoff), 150, 153
Arthurian literature, 84, 86, 113–15, 150, 152–54
Arthurian Literature, 113, 114
Arthurian Studies, 113, 114–15
Arthuriana, 113
Ashe, Geoffrey, 150, 153
atlases; historic, 215–16; linguistic, 190, 193–94
authors: catalog searches on, 50, *51*, 52

Baer, Florence E., 154, 155
Batchelor, Jennie, 33, 37
Bate, Jonathan, 33, 34–35
Beadle, Richard, 147, 148
Beal, Peter, 131, 132
Bede, Venerable, ix, x, 32, 35, 41, 116; *Ecclesiastical History of the English People*, 33, 42, 183
Beidler, Peter G., 26, 28
Bennett, J. A. W., 33, 34
Benskin, M., 190, 194
Beowulf, 20, 21, 37, 42, 43, 46, 52, 78; books on, 84–86; history of, 84; manuscripts, 141, 143, 183, 185, 186, 194, 197
Beowulf and the Fight at Finnsburh: A Bibliography (Fry), 84, 85
Beowulf Scholarship: An Annotated Bibliography (Short), 84, 85
Beowulf Scholarship: An Annotated Bibliography, 1979–1990 (Hasenfratz), 84, 85
Berger, Sidney, 147, 149–50
Bibliographie de civilisation médiévale, 79
bibliographies, 69–89, 212–23 *passim*; author/genre/work, 83–89; Geoffrey Chaucer, 82–83; general literary, 70–79; medieval English, 80–82; medieval studies, 79–80
A Bibliography of Modern Arthuriana, 1500–2000 (Howey and Reimer), 84, 86
A Bibliography of Publications on Old English Literature to the End of 1972 (Robinson and Greenfield), 80, 81, 86, 89
Bibliography of the International Arthurian Society (*BIAS*) (Busch), 84, 86, 114
biographies:
Dictionary of Literary Biography Complete Online, 23, 25, 203, 204; *Oxford Dictionary of National Biography*, 23–24, 203, 204
Birch, Dinah, *The Oxford Companion to English Literature*, 21
The Blackwell Encyclopaedia of Anglo-Saxon England (Lapidge, Blair, Keynes, and Scragg), 33, 38–39
Blair, John, 33
Blake, N. F., 83, 88
Blanch, Robert J., 83, 84, 87
Boitani, Piero, 41, 44

Book and Verse: A Guide to Middle English Biblical Literature (Morey), 137, 138
Boolean searching, 7; "and," 8, *9*; "not," 10; "or," 8, *9*;
Bosworth, Joseph, 164, 165–66, 191
Bracken, James K., *Reference Works in British and American Literature*, 18, 20–21
Brewer, Derek, 150, 154
British Archives: A Guide to Archive Resources in the UK (Foster and Sheppard), 125, 127
British Library Manuscript & Archive Catalog, 128–29
British Library:
Cotton manuscripts, 182, 183; *Discovering Literature: Medieval*, 182, 184; *Explore the British Library*, 63, 64, 65; *Register of Preservation Surrogates*, 62
British Literary Manuscripts Online: Medieval and Renaissance, 128, 130
Brown, Ian, 39
Brown, Michelle P., 122, 123–24, 132
Brown, Peter, 25, 30
Brut Chronicle, 184, 186
Brut. *See* Layamon
Bryn Mawr Medieval Review. *See The Medieval Review*
Burchfield, R. W., 160, 162
Busch, Nathanael, 84

Cædmon, x, 22, 32, 129; *Hymn*, 137
Cain, Christopher M., 33, 36–37
Call for Papers, 195, 196
call numbers, Library of Congress, browsing, 58
The Cambridge Companion to the Arthurian Legend (Archibald and Putter), 150, 152–53
The Cambridge Companion to Bede (DeGregorio), 41, 42
The Cambridge Companion to Chaucer (Boitani and Mann), 41, 44
The Cambridge Companion to Medieval English Literature, 1100–1500 (Scanlon), 26, 31
The Cambridge Companion to Medieval English Theatre (Beadle and Fletcher), 147, 148
The Cambridge Companion to Medieval Romance (Krueger), 150, 151
The Cambridge Companion to Medieval Women's Writing (Dinshaw and Wallace), 41, 45
The Cambridge Companion to Old English Literature (Godden and Lapidge), 25, 27–28
The Cambridge Companion to Piers Plowman (Cole and Galloway), 41, 44, 54
The Cambridge Companion to Scottish Literature (Carruthers and McIlvanney), 39, 40
The Cambridge Guide to Literature in English (Head), 21–22
The Cambridge History of Early Medieval English Literature (Lees), 33, 35–36
The Cambridge History of Medieval English Literature (Wallace), 33, 36
The Cambridge Introduction to Anglo-Saxon Literature (Magennis), 26, 32–33
Cambridge Studies in Medieval Literature, 115, 116
The Camelot Project, 184, 188
Cameron, Angus, xiiin3, 89, 146, 164
Carruthers, Gerard, 39
catalog searches:
author, 50–53; subject, 56–57; title, 54–55
catalogs, library, 49–67; national, 63–65
Catalogue of Manuscripts Containing Anglo-Saxon (Ker), 82, 89, 125, 146

Catalogue. National Library of Ireland/ Leabharlann Náisilúnta na hÉierann, 63, 65
Caxton, William, 46, 59, 83, 88, 145, 171, 209
Center for Research Libraries, 58, 63
Chaucer Bibliographies (Hahn), 82–83
Chaucer Bibliography Online, 184, 187, 209
Chaucer, Geoffrey, x, xi, *6*, 20, 23, 31, 35, 41, *51*, *75*; associations and societies, 111, 185, 189; bibliographies, 82–83; companions to, 44–45; Thomas Hoccleve and, 202, 205, 206, 208–209; journals, 111–12; web resources for, 184, 185, 187–88, 189, 192
Chaucer Metapage, 185, 187
The Chaucer Review: A Journal of Medieval Studies and Literary Criticism, *6*, 111, 112
Chaucer Studio, 185, 187–88
Clark Hall, J. R., 164, 166, 191
Colaianne, A. J., 84, 88
Cole, Andrew, 41, 44
Comitatus: A Journal of Medieval and Renaissance Studies, 101, 103–104
A Companion to Ælfric (Magennis and Swan), 41, 42–43
A Companion to Ancrene Wisse (Wada), 42, 45–46
A Companion to Anglo-Saxon Literature (Pulsiano and Treharne), 26, 32
A Companion to Arthurian Literature (Fulton), 150, 153
A Companion to the Folklore, Myths and Customs of Britain (Alexander), 154, 155
A Companion to the Gawain-Poet (Brewer and Gibson), 150, 154
A Companion to the History of the English Language (Momma and Matto), 33, 38
A Companion to the Lancelot-Grail Cycle (Dover), 156–57
A Companion to Malory (Archibald and Edwards), 41, 43–44
A Companion to Medieval English Literature and Culture, c.1350–c.1500 (Brown), 25, 30
A Companion to the Middle English Lyric (Duncan), 140, 142–43
A Companion to Middle English Prose (Edwards), 144, 145
A Companion to Old and Middle English Literature (Lambdin and Lambdin), 26, 31–32
A Companion to Old Norse-Icelandic Literature and Culture (McTurk), 42, 46
companions, 17–47 *passim*
The Complete Old English Poems (Williamson), 140, 143
A Comprehensive Etymological Dictionary of the English Language, 160, 162
A Concise Anglo-Saxon Dictionary (Clark Hall), 164, 166, 191
A Conspectus of Scribal Hands Writing English, 960–1100 (Scragg), 133, 134
The Continuum Encyclopedia of British Literature (Serafin and Myer), 21–22
Copac, 58, 62–63
Corpus of Middle English Prose and Verse, 145, 178, 179–80
Corpus Resource Database (CoRD), 178, 179
Cotton Exeter manuscript, 139, 141, 143, 144
Cotton manuscripts, 86, 121, 182, 183
The Cotton Nero A.x. Project, 182, 183–84
Cotton Nero manuscript, 86, 121, 135n1, 139, 154, 182, 183–84
Cotton Vitellius manuscript, 43, 84, 124, 139, 141, 185
A Critical Companion to Beowulf (Orchard), 42, 43
A Critical Companion to John Skelton (Sobecki and Scattergood), 42, 46–47

CRL. *See* Center for Research Libraries
Cynewulf, x, 11, 103, 104

Da Rold, Orietta, 190
Dalrymple, Roger, 25, 30–31
Database of Latin Dictionaries, 167, 168–69
Database of Middle English Romance, 185, 188
databases, searching, 3–7, 12–14; vs. Google, 15–16; vs. search engines, 14–15
Dean, Ruth, 156, 157
Death of Arthur. *See* Malory, Sir Thomas
DeGregorio, Scott, 41, 42
DH Toy Chest: Digital Humanities Resources for Project Building (Liu), 173, 174
dictionaries, 211–223 *passim*: biographical, 23–25; etymologies and thesauri, 160–64; glossaries, 132–33; grammars and glosses, 169–71; Latin, French, and Norman, 167–69; medieval English, 164–67; paleographies, 172–73; web, 190, 191
A Dictionary of English Folklore (Simpson and Roud), 154, 155
Dictionary of English Manuscript Terminology 1450–2000 (Beal), 131, 132
Dictionary of Literary Biography Complete Online, 23, 25, 53, 203
Dictionary of Medieval Latin from British Sources, 167, 169
The Dictionary of Old English: A to I Online (*DOE*) (Cameron, Amos, and Healey), xi, 89, 99, 141, 159, 164, 165, 179, 191
Digital Bodleian, 128, 129
digital collections, finding, 128–31, 178–84
Digital Scriptorium, 128, 131
Dinshaw, Carolyn, 41, 45
Discovering Literature: Medieval, 182, 184
DLB. *See Dictionary of Literary Biography Complete Online*
Dobbie, Elliott Van Kirk, 140, 141
Dover, Carol, 156, 157
drama and theater, 147–50
Dramatic Texts and Records of Britain: A Chronological Topography to 1558 (Lancashire), 147, 149
Duncan, Thomas G., 140, 142–43

Early English Text Society, 24, 115–16, 181, 203, 204, 206
Early Medieval Europe, 102, 106
Early Theatre: A Journal Associated with the Records of Early English Drama, 102, 104
EBSCO, 14–15, 91, 119, 212, 213, 214, 217, 223
The Edinburgh History of Scottish Literature (Brown), 39, 40
Editing the Middle English Manuscript (Moorman), 133, 134–35
Edwards, A. S. G., 41, 43–44, 72, *73*, 144, 145
Edwards, Hywel Teifi, 39
Electronic Beowulf, 185–86
An Electronic Version of A Linguistic Atlas of Late Mediaeval English (*eLALME*) (Benskin), 190, 193–94
ELH: English Literary History, 94, 96–97
Ellis, Roger, 169, 171
Encyclopedia of Medieval Literature (Lambdin and Lambdin), 26, 29
Encyclopedia of Medieval Literature (Ruud), 26, 28
encyclopedias, 17–47, 211–23 *passim*
English Cursive Book Hands, 1250–1500 (Parkes), 133–134
English Historical Review, 102, 106
English: The Journal of the English Association, 94, 95

The Essential Chaucer: An Annotated Bibliography of Major Modern Studies (Allen and Fisher), 82, 83, 209
Etymological Dictionary of Old French / Dictionnaire étymologique de l'ancien français (DEAF), 167, 168
EuroDocs: Online Sources for European History (Hacken), 194, 195
Exemplaria: Medieval, Early Modern, Theory, 99, 100
The Exeter Anthology of Old English Poetry: An Edition of Exeter Dean and Chapter MS 3501 (Muir), 140, 141–142
Explore the British Library (British Library Catalogue), 63, 64, 65

Feminae: Medieval Women and Gender Index, 185, 188–89
field searching, search strategy for, 6–7
Fisher, John H., xiiin5, 82, 83, 209
Fletcher, Alan J., 147
folklore, 41, 71, 154–55, 212
Folklore and Literature of the British Isles: An Annotated Bibliography (Baer), 154, 155
Foster, Donald W., 33, 37–38
Foster, Janet, 125, 127
Frantzen, Allen, 32, 190, 192, 199n1
Friedrichsen, George W. S., 160, 162
Fry, Donald K., 84, 85, 86
Fulk, R. D., 33, 36–37
Fulton, Helen, 150, 153

Galloway, Andrew, 41, 44, 205, 210n3, 210n7, 210n8
Garland Reference Library of the Humanities, 70, 78–79
The Gawain Poems: A Reference Guide, 1978–1993 (Blanch), 84, 87
Gawain-poet, 7, 23, 31, 54, 78, 83, 86–87, 150, 154
The Gawain-Poet: An Annotated Bibliography, 1839–1977 (Andrew), 83, 86–87
general research, resources on, 211–12
genres, resources on:
drama and theater, 147–50; folklore, 41, 71, 154–55, 212; hagiographies, x, 117, 137–40, 219; medieval romance and Arthurian literature, 28, 84, 86, 113–15, 150–54, 188; other literatures, 156–58; poetry, 140–43; prose, 144–46
Geoffrey of Monmouth, x, *57*, 152, 153, 156; *Historia regum Britanniae* (*History of the Kings of Britain*), 113, 141, 151, 152
Gibson, Jonathan, 150, 154
A Glossary of Archival & Records Terminology (Pearce-Moses), 132–33
Gneuss, Helmut, 125, 127, 129, 134, 193
Godden, Malcolm, 25, 27–28
Goldie, Matthew Boyd, 33, 35
Google Books, 16, 53, 63, 65, 178, 181
Google Scholar, 16
Google, search strategies, 15–16
A Grammar of Old English (Hogg), 169, 170–71
Gray, Douglas, 25, 29–30, 41, 44–45
Greenfield, Stanley, xiiin4, 80, 81, 86, 89
Gruffydd, R. Geraint, 39
Guide to Scripts Used in English Writings Up to 1500 (Roberts), 133
A Guide to Welsh Literature (Jarman and Hughes), 39, 40–41

Hacken, Richard, 194, 195
hagiography resources, x, 117, 137–40, 219
Hahn, Thomas, 82
Handbook of Middle English (Mossé), 169, 170
Hanna, Ralph, 122, 124

Harner, James L., *Literary Research Guide: An Annotated Listing of Reference Sources in English Literary Studies*, 18–20
Harrison, Brian Howard, *Oxford Dictionary of National Biography* (ODNB), 23–25
Hartung, Albert E., 26, 28
Hasenfratz, Robert J., 84, 85
HathiTrust Digital Library, 63, 178, 181
Head, Dominic, *The Cambridge Guide to Literature in English*, 21–22
Healey, Antonette dePaolo, 164
The Heroic Age: A Journal of Early Medieval Northwestern Europe, 102, 103
Historia regum Britanniae (*History of the Kings of Britain*). See Geoffrey of Monmouth
Historical Thesaurus of English (Alexander), 160, 163–64
Historical Thesaurus of the Oxford English Dictionary (Kay and Samuels), 160, 163–64
A History of Anglo-Latin Literature, 1066–1422 (Rigg), 156
The History of British Women's Writing (Batchelor and Kaplan), 33, 37
A History of Old English Literature (Fulk and Cain), 33, 36–37
History of the Kings of Britain. *See* Geoffrey of Monmouth
history:
histories, 33–39; resources on, 214–16
Hoccleve, Thomas, xii, 192, 201–210; life of, 202; International Hoccleve Society, 185, 190, 209; reputation of, 202–203; searching catalogs and databases for, 206–208; works of, 202–206
Hogg, Richard M., 169, 170
Hollis, Stephanie, 144, 146
Holy Men and Holy Women: Old English Prose Saints' Lives and Their Contexts (Szarmach), 138, 139
Horobin, Simon, 190
Howey, Ann F., 84, 86
Hughes, Gwilym Rees, 39, 40

indexes. *See* bibliographies
The International John Gower Society, 112, 185, 189
International Hoccleve Society, 185, 190, 209
International Medieval Bibliography (*IMB*), 79–80
The International Society of Anglo-Saxonists (ISAS), 103, 195, 197–198
Internet Archive, 53, 65, 148, 195, 204
Introducing English Medieval Book History: Manuscripts, Their Producers and Their Readers (Hanna), 122, 124

Jarman, A. O. H., 39, 40
Jarvis, Branwen, 39
John Skelton, Early Tudor Laureate: An Annotated Bibliography c. 1488–1977 (Kinsman), 84, 87–88
Johnston, Daffydd, 39
Johnston, Michael, 123, 124
Journal of English and Germanic Philology (*JEGP*), 107, 109–110
Journal of Medieval History, 102, 105–106
The Journal of the International Arthurian Society (*JIAS*), 86, 113, 114
journals, 91–119; Anglo-Saxon and medieval literature, 99–101; Anglo-Saxon and medieval studies, 101–107; Arthurian, 113–15; author, 111–12; general literature, 94–99; periodical research sources, 92–94; philology, 107–110; series, 115–19

JSTOR: The Scholarly Journal Archive, 70, 76–77
Julian of Norwich, x, 31, 37, 45, 145
Junius manuscript, 139, 141, 143, 184

Kaplan, Cora, 33, 37
Karlsruhe Virtual Catalog (*KVK*), 63, 65
Kastan, David Scott, 21–22
Kato, Takako, 190
Kay, Christian, 160, 164, 190, 191
Ker, Neil R., 89, 123, 125, 126, 127, 129, 134, 135, 146, 193
Keynes, Simon, 33
keywords:
brainstorming, 3; vs. subject searches, 12–13
Kinsman, Robert S., 84, 87
Klein, Ernest, 160, 162, 163
Klinck, Anne L., 140, 143
Krapp, George Philip, 140, 141
Krueger, Roberta L., 150

Lacy, Norris, 150, 153, 154, 156, 157
Laing, Margaret, 190, 194
Lambdin, Laura Cooner, 26, 29, 31–32
Lambdin, Robert Thomas, 26, 29, 31–32
Lancashire, Ian, 147
Lancelot-Grail: The Old French Arthurian Vulgate and Post-Vulgate in Translation (Lacy), 156, 157
Langland, William, x, 31, 50, *51*, 171, 192; *Cambridge Companion to Piers Plowman*, 41, 44, 54; *Piers Plowman*, 88, 112, 116, 171; *Yearbook of Langland Studies*, 111, 112
Lapidge, Michael, xiiin1, 25, 27–28, 33, 125, 127
Late Medieval English Scribes, 134, 190, 192–93
Later Medieval English Literature (Gray), 25, 29–30
Layamon, x, 72; *Brut*, 113, 115, 144, 151, 154, 184
Leeds Studies in English, 99, 100–101
Lees, Clare, 33, 35–36
Lendinara, Patrizia, 169, 171
Lewis, Robert E., 164
library catalogs:
discovery tools, 66; special characters in, 66–67
Library of Congress:
Library of Congress Online Catalog, 4, *56*, 58, 60, 63, 64, 65; *Library of Congress and the National Union Catalog Subcommittee of the Resources Committee of the Resources and Technical Services Division, American Library Association. National Union Catalog, Pre-1956 Imprints*, 58, 60; MARC records, 3–6, 54; Subject Headings, 206
limiting, search strategy, 14
A Linguistic Atlas of Early Middle English, 1150–1325 (*LAEME*), 190, 194
literary reference sources, general, 17–47
Literary Research Guide: An Annotated Listing of Reference Sources in English Literary Studies (Harner), 18–20
Literature Compass, 94, 98
Liu, Alan, 173, 174
Lupack, Alan, 150, 188
Lydgate, John, x, 28, 31, 138, 141, 148, 197, 201, 208

Machine Readable Cataloging. *See* MARC records
Magazines for Libraries, 92, 93, 94
Magennis, Hugh, 26, 32–33, 41, 42
Main Catalogue (British Library), 63, 64, 65
Malory, Sir Thomas, 28, 31, 41, 43–44, 88, 157; *Death of Arthur* (*Morte d'Arthur*), 30, 113, 144
Mancoff, Debra N., 150, 153

Mann, Jill, 41, 44
A Manual of Old English Prose (Quinn and Quinn), 144, 146
A Manual of the Writings in Middle English, 1050–1500 (Severs, Hartung, and Beidler), 26, 28
Manuscripts from the Anglo-Saxon Age (Brown), 122, 124
Manuscripts Online: Written Culture 1000 to 1500, 182–83
manuscripts, x, xii, 17–47 *passim*, 121–36; digital collections of, 182–84; Hoccleve, Thomas, 202–206; locating, 125–27; repositories and collections of, 128–31; reproductions in series, 115–19; WorldCat, 59–60
MARC records: structure of, 3–6, 54
Marcuse, Michael J., *A Reference Guide for English Studies*, 18, 20
Margery Kempe, 31, 37, 45, 145
Marie de France, x, 45, 117, 157, 189
Martín Arista, Javier, 190, 191
Matthew, H. C. G., *Oxford Dictionary of National Biography* (ODNB), 23–25
Matto, Michael, 33
McIlvanney, Liam, 39
McSparran, Frances, 164
McTurk, Rory, 42, 46
Mediae Latinitatis Lexicon Minus (Niermeyer and van de Kieft), 167, 169
Medieval and Renaissance Texts and Studies, 115, 116, 197
The Medieval Academy of America, 79, 96, 195, 198
Medieval Arthurian Literature: A Guide to Recent Research (Lacy), 150, 153–54
Medieval English Drama: An Annotated Bibliography of Recent Criticism (Berger), 147, 149–50
Medieval English Lyrics and Carols (Duncan), 140, 142
Medieval Histories (Schousboe), 194–95
Medieval Libraries of Great Britain: A List of Surviving Books (Ker), 125, 126–27
The Medieval Manuscript Book (Johnston and Van Dussen), 123, 124
Medieval Manuscripts in British Libraries (Ker), 125, 126
The Medieval Review, 102, 106–107
medieval romance and Arthurian literature, 28, 150–54, 188
Medium Ævum, 102, 104–105
MESA: Medieval Electronic Scholarly Alliance, 196, 197
The Middle English Compendium, 164, 178, 179
The Middle English Dictionary (*MED*) (Lewis), 159, 164, 167, 179, 180, 182
Middle English Literature: A Guide to Criticism (Dalrymple), 25, 30–31
Middle English Literature: A Historical Sourcebook (Goldie), 33, 35
Middle English Prose: A Critical Guide to Major Authors and Genres (Edwards), 144, 145
Middle English Romance: An Annotated Bibliography, 1955–1985 (Rice), 28, 150, 151–52
Middle English Saints' Legends (Scahill), 138–39
MLA Directory of Periodicals, 92–93
MLA International Bibliography of Books and Articles on the Modern Languages and Literatures (*MLAIB*), *8*, *13*, 19, 70, 71–72, *73*, 74, 208
MLAIB. *See MLA International Bibliography of Books and Articles on the Modern Languages and Literatures*
MLN, 94, 97
Modern Language Review, 94, 98
Modern Philology, 107, 108

Momma, H., 33
Mooney, Linne, 190
Moorman, Charles, 133
Morey, James H., 137, 138
Morte d'Arthur. *See* Malory, Sir Thomas
Mossé, Fernand, 169, 170
Muir, Bernard J., 140, 141–42
music, resources on, 216–17
Myer, Valerie Grosvenor, 21–22

national guides and companions, 39–41
national library catalogs, 63–65
National Library of Ireland/Leabharlann Náisilúnta na hÉierann (NLI): Catalogue, 63, 65
National Library of Scotland/ Leabharlann Náisilúnta na h-Alba: Main Catalogue, 63, 65
National Library of Wales/Llyfrgell Genedlaethol Cymru: Full Catalogue, 63, 65
National Union Catalog, Pre-1956 Imprints: A Cumulative Author List Representing Library of Congress Printed Cards and Titles Reported by Other American Libraries (*NUC*), 58, 60
NCBEL. *See The New Cambridge Bibliography of English Literature*
Neophilologus: An International Journal of Modern and Medieval Language and Literature, 107, 110
NerthusV3. Online Lexical Database of Old English, 190, 191
nesting, search strategy, 11
Neuphilologische Mitteilungen, 107, 110
The New Cambridge Bibliography of English Literature (Watson), 70, 74–75
The New Chaucer Society, 111, 185, 187, 189
New Literary History: A Journal of Theory and Interpretation, 94, 96
Niermeyer, J. F., 167, 169
"not" (Boolean operator). *See* Boolean searching
Notes & Queries, 94, 98–99
NUC. *See National Union Catalog, Pre-1956 Imprints: A Cumulative Author List Representing Library of Congress Printed Cards and Titles Reported by Other American Libraries*

ODNB. *See Oxford Dictionary of National Biography*
Old English Biblical Verse: Studies in Genesis, Exodus and Daniel (Remley), 138, 139
The Old English Elegies: A Critical Edition and Genre Study (Klinck), 140, 143
The Old English Martyrology: Edition, Translation and Commentary (Rauer), 137, 139–40
Old English Newsletter, 80, 81, 86, 99–100
Old English Newsletter Bibliography, 79, 80, 99, 100
Old English Prose of Secular Learning (Hollis and Wright), 144, 146
Old and Middle English Language Studies: A Classified Bibliography 1923–1985 (Tajima), 80, 82
Onions, Charles Talbut, 160, 162, 163
Online Medieval Sources Bibliography, 190, 191
online searching, basics of, 1–16
"or" (Boolean operator). *See* Boolean searching
Orchard, Andy, 42, 43
Owen-Crocker, Gale R., 172, 173
Oxford Bibliographies: Medieval Studies, 79, 80
The Oxford Companion to Chaucer (Gray), 41, 44–5
The Oxford Companion to English Literature (Birch), 21

The Oxford Companion to Irish Literature (Welch), 39, 41
The Oxford Dictionary of English Etymology (Onions, Friedrichsen, and Burchfield), 160, 162–63
Oxford Dictionary of National Biography (ODNB) (Matthew & Harrison), 23–25, 210n4
The Oxford Encyclopedia of British Literature (Kastan), 21–22
The Oxford English Literary History (Bate), 33, 34–35
The Oxford Guide to Arthurian Literature and Legend (Lupack), 150, 152
The Oxford Handbook of Medieval Literature in English (Treharne and Walker), 26, 27
The Oxford History of English Literature (Bennett), 33, 34
The Oxford History of Literary Translation in English, Volume 1: To 1550 (Ellis), 169, 171

Paleography:
dictionaries, 172–73; manuscripts, 133–35
PAO. *See* Periodicals Archive Online
Parker Library on the Web, 128, 130–131
Parkes, M. B., 133
Pearce-Moses, Richard, 132
Periodicals Archive Online (PAO), 70, 77–78
periodicals. *See* journals
Philological Quarterly, 107, 108–109
philosophy, resources on, 217–18
phrase searching, search strategy, 12
Piers Plowman. *See* Langland, William
Piers Plowman: An Annotated Bibliography of Editions and Criticism, 1550–1977 (Colaianne), 84, 88
Pluta, Olaf, 172
PMLA: The Publication of the Modern Language Association, 94, 97
poetry, resources, 140–43
Pontifical Institute of Mediaeval Studies, 196
The Production and Use of English Manuscripts 1060 to 1220 (Da Rold, Kato, Swan, and Treharne) 190, 193
Project Gutenberg, 178, 180–81
Project MUSE 70, 77
prose, resources, 144–47
proximity operators, search strategy, 12
Publications of the John Gower Society, 111, 112
Publications of the Manchester Centre for Anglo-Saxon Studies, 115, 116–17
Pulsiano, Philip, xiiin2, 26, 32, 80, 81–82
Putter, Ad, 105, 150, 152

Quinn, Karen J., 144, 146
Quinn, Kenneth P., 144, 146
Quondam et Futurus. *See Arthuriana*

Rauer, Christine, 137, 139–140
Records of Early English Drama, 102, 104, 147, 148–49, 150
A Reference Guide for English Studies (Marcuse), 18, 20
Reference Works in British and American Literature (Bracken), 18, 20–21
Reimer, Stephen R., 84, 86
Reinsma, Luke Mins, 84, 89
relevancy searching, search strategies, 13–14
religion, resources on, 218–19
Remley, Paul G., 138, 139
research guides, 18–21
The Review of English Studies, 94, 95
Rice, Joanne A., 28, 150, 151, 152
Richards, Mary P., 123
Rigg, A. G., 156

Roberts, Jane, 133, 160, 164, 190, 191
Robinson, Fred C., 80, 81, 86, 89
Rockwell, Geoffrey, 173, 174
Rothwell, William, 167, 168
Roud, Steve, 154
Ruud, Jay, 26, 28

Samuels, Michael, 160
Scahill, John, 138–39
Scanlon, Larry, 26, 31
Scattergood, John, 42, 46
Schoenberg Database of Manuscripts, 128, 129, 135
Schousboe, Karen, 194, 195
sciences, resources on, 219–20
Scragg, Donald, 33, 133, 193
search strategies, creating, 6–14
Serafin, Steven R., 21–22
Severs, J. Burke, 26, 28
Sheppard, Julia, 125, 127
Short, Douglas D., 84, 85, 86
Simpson, Jacqueline, 154
Simpson, John, 161
Sinclair, Stéfan, 173, 174
Sir Gawain and the Green Knight: A Reference Guide (Blanch), 83, 87
Skelton, John, 27, 42, 84, 87–88; life of, 46–47
SMFS: Society for Medieval Feminist Scholarship, 196, 198
Sobecki, Sebastian, 42, 46
social science, resources on, 220–22
Speculum: A Journal of Medieval Studies, 94, 95–96, 198
Stubbs, Estelle, 190
The Student's Dictionary of Anglo-Saxon (Sweet), 164, 166–67, 191
Studia Neophilologica, 107, 109
Studies in the Age of Chaucer (*SAC*), 111, 112, 187, 189, 209
Studies in English Medieval Language and Literature, 115, 118–19
Studies in Medieval Romance, 115, 117
Studies in Philology, 107, 108
subject searches, search strategy, 12, 56–57
Swan, Mary, 41, 42, 190
Swanton, Michael James, 144
Sweet, Henry, 164, 166, 167, 191
Szarmach, Paul E., 138, 139

Tajima, Matsuji, 80, 82
TAPoR 3.0, 173, 174
TEAMS Middle English Texts, 25, 115, 118, 188, 205
text and data mining, 173–75
theater, resources on, 222–23
thesauri, 160–64
A Thesaurus of Old English (*TOE*) (Roberts and Kay), 160, 163, 164, 190, 191
Thomas, M. Wynn, 39
titles, catalog searches on, 54–55
Toller, T. Northcote, 164, 165, 166, 191
Toronto Anglo-Saxon Series, 115, 118
Traditio: *Studies in Ancient and Medieval History, Thought, and Religion*, 102, 105
Treharne, Elaine M., xiiin2, 26, 32, 190
truncation searches, search strategy, 11, 60, 74

Ulrich's Periodicals Directory, 93–94
Ulrichsweb Global Serials Directory, 93, 94
Understanding Illuminated Manuscripts: A Guide to Technical Terms (Brown), 132
union catalogs, 58–63
University of Oxford Text Archive, 140, 178, 180

Vagantes Conference on Medieval Studies, 196, 197
Van de, Kieft, C., 167, 169
Van Dussen, Michael, 123, 124

Vercelli Book Digitale, 182, 184
Vercelli manuscript, 139, 141, 142, 143, 184
Voyant Tools (Sinclair and Rockwell), 173, 174–75

Wada, Yoko, 42, 45–46
Wagonheim, Sylvia Stoler, 147, 148
Walker, Greg, 26, 27
Wallace, David, 33, 36, 41, 45
Watson, George, 70, 74
Web resources, 177–199; author/work/genre, 184–90; current awareness sources and associations, 195–198; evaluation of, 177–78; manuscripts, 182–84, 192–93; period and electronic texts archives, 178–82
Weiner, Edmund, 161
Welch, Robert, 39, 41
wildcard searches, search strategy, 11, 60
William Caxton: A Bibliographical Guide, (Blake), 83, 88
Williamson, Craig, 140, 143
women, early writings of, *3*, 8, 10, *13*, 46, 138, 139, 185, 198; *Cambridge Companion to Medieval Women's Writing*, 45; *Feminae: Medieval Women and Gender Index*, 185, 188–89; SMFS: Society for Medieval Feminist Scholarship, 198; *Women's Works*, 37–38
Women's Works (Foster), 33, 37–38
Working with Anglo-Saxon Manuscripts (Owen-Crocker), 172, 173
WorldCat, 58, 59–60
WorldCat.org, 58, 60
Wright, Michael, 144, 146
Wulfstan, x, 27, 144, 146

Yearbook of English Studies, 95
Yearbook of Langland Studies, 111, 112
Year's Work in English Studies (*YWES*), 70, 75–76
YWES. *See Year's Work in English Studies*

About the Authors

Dustin Booher is the coordinator of collection services for the Fairfax County Public Library in Fairfax, Virginia. He has a master of arts degree in biblical studies from the University of Chicago and a master of library and information science degree from the University of Pittsburgh.

Kevin B. Gunn is the coordinator of digital scholarship at the Catholic University of America in Washington, DC, where he is the liaison for English, drama, media studies, modern languages, and philosophy. He has a master of arts degree in philosophy from the University of Manitoba, Winnipeg, Canada, and a master of library and information studies degree from McGill University, Montreal, Canada. His research interests include digital humanities, digital scholarship, emerging technologies, and information ethics.